unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Judges

Version 27

Copyrights & Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 27
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 10
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 12
Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words
Date: 2020-03-25
Version: 14
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 0.12
Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible
Date: 2020-02-20
Version: 2.1.11
Published by: unfoldingWord

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Judges

Introduction to Judges

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Judges

1. History of the judges of Israel (1:1–16:31)
2. Introduction (1:1-3:6)
3. Othniel, Ehud, and Shamgar (3:7–31)
4. Deborah and Barak (4:1–5:31)
5. Gideon (6:1–8:35)
6. Abimelech, Tola, and Jair (9:1–10:5)
7. Jephthah (10:6-12:7)
8. Ibzan, Elon, and Abdon (12:8-15)
9. Samson (13:1–16:31)
10. The account of Micah and his idols (17:1–18:31)
11. The account of Gibeah; the other Israelites take revenge (19:1–21:25)

What is the Book of Judges about?

The Book of Judges tells of events that occurred after the Israelites settled in the Promised Land. The events in this book happened over a period of about 150 years.

This book describes how the Israelites repeatedly sinned against Yahweh during this time. They worshiped false gods and did the same wicked things as the peoples who lived around them. Therefore, God would allow enemies to defeat and oppress the Israelites. Eventually, the Israelites would call to Yahweh for help. Yahweh would then cause someone to help the Israelites defeat their enemies. This person was called a "judge." The Israelites would live in peace until the judge died.

After that judge died, the Israelites would start sinning again. So this pattern of events would repeat.

How should the title of this book be translated?

This book traditionally has the title "Judges" because it gives accounts of some of the main leaders or judges in Israel before there were any kings over the people. Unless there are good reasons for following the title in other Bible versions, the translator should probably use the title "Judges" or a title such as "The Book about the Leaders in Israel." (See: How to Translate Names)

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

What kind of leaders were the judges?

These were men and women whom God chose to help the Israelites defeat their enemies. After defeating their enemies, these leaders usually continued to help the people by deciding disputes among them. They also helped them make important decisions. Many of these leaders served all the people of Israel, but some of these leaders may have served only certain tribes.

What kind of society was Israel during the time of the judges?

During this time, the twelve tribes of Israel were independent of one another. They were not a unified nation with one ruler. The tribes would sometimes help each other when enemies were threatening them.

These tribes were descended from the same ancestors: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. They shared in the same covenant with Yahweh.

What spiritual struggles did Israel experience during the time of the judges?

During this time, Israel struggled to remain faithful to Yahweh. The best judges encouraged Israel to be faithful to him, but some of the judges failed to do so. (See: faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy)

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

What is the meaning of the phrase "in those days there was no king in Israel, and everyone did what was right in his own eyes"?

This phrase occurs twice in the book of Judges. Shorter versions of the phrase occur two other times. These phrases imply that the writer or editor of this book was alive at a later time when there was a king in Israel. They also seem to imply that the writer thought that things were not good in Israel because there was no king.

The translation of these phrases should imply to the reader that the book's writer is looking back into the past.

What is the meaning of the phrase "to this day"?

The narrator used this phrase to refer to the time when he was writing. The translator should be aware that "to this day" refers to a time already passed. The translator must avoid giving the impression that the present day of the translation's readers is meant. The translator might decide to say, "to this day, at the time when this is being written," or, "to this day, at the time of writing." This Hebrew phrase occurs in Judges 1:21, 26; 6:24; 10:4; 15:19; 18:12.

Judges 1

Judges 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

"After the death of Joshua"

This statement creates a seamless transition from the book of Joshua.

Special concepts in this chapter

Finishing the conquest of the Promised Land

Israel fought to clear the land of the Canaanites, but they also made treaties with other peoples and made some of them do hard labor. This was against God's instruction to completely remove the Canaanite people from the land.

Judges 1:1

Connecting Statement:

The book of Judges continues the story about Joshua and is also the beginning of a new part of the story.

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

will attack the Canaanites for us

The word "us" refers to the people of Israel, but not to Yahweh. (See: Exclusive and Inclusive 'We')

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the Canaanite
- Joshua

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- the Canaanites
- Joshua

ULT

1 Now it happened that after the death of Joshua, the sons of Israel asked Yahweh, saying, "Who will go up for us first against the Canaanite, to fight him?"

UST

1 After Joshua died, the Israelite people asked Yahweh, "Which of our tribes should attack the Canaanites first?"

Judges 1:2

Judah will attack

Here "Judah" represents the men of the tribe of Judah. Yahweh is commanding these men to attack first. Alternate translation: "The men of Judah must attack first" (See: Synecdoche)

See

"Look" or "Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

this land

This refers to the land where the Canaanites lived. Alternate translation: "the land of the Canaanites" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

> **ULT**
>
> **2** Yahweh answered, "Judah will go up. Behold, I have given the land into his hand."
>
> **UST**
>
> **2** Yahweh replied, "The men of the tribe of Judah must attack first. I will enable the tribe of Judah to defeat the Canaanites."

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Judah
- into his hand
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- The men of the tribe of Judah
- I will enable the tribe of Judah to defeat the Canaanites
- I will enable the tribe of Judah to defeat the Canaanites

Judges 1:3

their brothers

"their fellow Israelites" or "their relatives"

Come up with us

The people of the tribes of Judah and Simeon were camped with the rest of the Israelite people in the valley of the Jordan River. The land given to Judah was in the hills above the valley. Some languages do not usually indicate whether people were going up or down. Alternate translation: "Come with us" or "Go with us"

that was assigned to us…that was assigned to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that Yahweh assigned to us…that Yahweh assigned to you" (See: Active or Passive)

We will likewise go with you

"We will also go with you" or "In the same way, we will go with you"

Translation Words - ULT

- his brother
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- went to their fellow Israelites, the men from the tribe of Simeon
- The men of Judah

ULT

3 Then Judah said to Simeon, his brother, "Go up with me into my alloted territory, and let us fight together against the Canaanite. I will fight likewise myself, with you in your alloted territory." So Simeon went with him.

UST

3 The men of Judah went to their fellow Israelites, the men from the tribe of Simeon, and said to them, "Come and help us to fight the Canaanites in order that we can take from them the land that Yahweh allotted to us. If you do that, we will go with you and help you conquer the people in the land that Yahweh promised to give to you." So the men from the tribe of Simeon went with the men of the tribe of Judah.

Judges 1:4

The men of Judah attacked

It is implied that the men of Simeon attacked with the men of Judah. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

They killed ten thousand

"They killed about 10,000" or "They killed a large number" (See: Numbers)

of them

"soldiers of the Canaanites and Perizzites" or "enemies"

Bezek

This is an area in the mountains of Canaan. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Judah
- the Canaanite
- and the Perizzite
- into their hand

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the men of those two tribes
- of the Canaanites
- and the Perizzites
- hand

ULT

4 Judah went up, and Yahweh gave the Canaanite and the Perizzite into their hand, and they struck ten thousand men at Bezek.

UST

4 When the men of those two tribes attacked, Yahweh enabled them to defeat ten thousand men of the Canaanites and the Perizzites at the city of Bezek.

Judges 1:5

Adoni-Bezek

This man was the leader of the army of the Canaanites and the Perizzites. (See: How to Translate Names)

they fought against him

Here "him" actually refers to Adoni-Bezek and his army. Alternate translation: "they fought against him and his army" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Canaanite
- the Perizzite

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, Canaanite
- Perizzite

ULT
5 They found Adoni-Bezek in Bezek, and they fought against him. They struck the Canaanite and the Perizzite.

UST
5 During the battle they found Adoni-Bezek, the leader of the city.

Judges 1:6

pursued him

"chased him"

Translation Words - ULT

- his hands

Translation Words - UST

- hand

ULT

6 Then Adoni-Bezek fled, but they pursued after him. They seized him, and they chopped off the thumbs of his hands and the big toes of his feet.

UST

6 Adoni-Bezek tried to run away. The Israelites pursued him and caught him. Then they cut off his thumbs and his big toes.

Judges 1:7

Seventy kings

"70 kings" (See: Numbers)

who had their thumbs and their big toes cut off

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "whose thumbs and big toes I told my men to cut off" or "whose thumbs and big toes we cut off" (See: Active or Passive)

gathered their food from under my table

Forcing these kings to eat scraps of food represents all the ways that Adoni-Bezek humiliated these kings. Here "gathering" food represents eating it. Alternate translation: "ate scraps of food from under my table" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- to Jerusalem
- their hands
- and he died
- kings
- gathering scraps of food

Translation Words - UST

- God
- to Jerusalem
- their thumbs
- and he died
- kings
- to eat scraps

ULT

7 Adoni-Bezek said, "Seventy kings with the thumbs of their hands and the big toes of their feet chopped off were gathering scraps of food beneath my table. Just as I have done, so God has repaid to me." Then they brought him to Jerusalem, and he died there.

UST

7 Adoni-Bezek said, "My army captured seventy kings. We cut off their thumbs and big toes. After that, we forced those kings to eat scraps that fell from our table. Now God has paid me back for what I did." Then the men of Judah took Adoni-Bezek to Jerusalem, and he died there.

Judges 1:8

the city of Jerusalem and took it

Here "city" represents the people. Alternate translation: "the people who lived in Jerusalem and defeated them" (See: Metonymy)

They attacked it

Here "it" refers to the city which represents the people of the city. Alternate translation: "They attacked the people of the city" (See: Metonymy)

with the edge of the sword

"with the point of the sword." Here "sword" represents the swords and other weapons that the soldiers used in battle. Alternate translation: "with their swords" or "with their weapons" (See: Synecdoche)

ULT

8 The sons of Judah fought against Jerusalem and they took it. They struck it with the edge of the sword and they sent the city into fire.

UST

8 The army of Judah fought against the men of Jerusalem, and they captured the city. With their swords they killed the people who lived there and they burned the houses in the city.

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Judah
- against Jerusalem
- the sword
- into fire

Translation Words - UST

- The army
- of Judah
- against the men of Jerusalem
- With their swords
- they burned

Judges 1:9

the men of Judah went down to fight

It was common to use the word "down" when it refers to traveling from Jerusalem. Alternate translation: "the men of Judah went to fight"

in the Negev

"in the southern Judean wilderness"

foothills

hills at the base of a mountain or mountain range

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- the men
- of Judah

ULT

9 Afterwards, the sons of Judah went down to fight them, against the Canaanites living in the hill country, and the southern wilderness, and the western lowland.

UST

9 Later, the men of Judah went down to fight the Canaanites who lived in the hill country, in the southern Judean wilderness, and in the foothills to the west.

Judges 1:10

the name of Hebron was previously Kiriath Arba

This is background information. Some people who first read this book had probably heard of Kiriath Arba but did not know that it was the same as the city that they called Hebron. (See: Background Information)

Sheshai, Ahiman, and Talmai

These are the names of three Canaanite leaders of Hebron. Each leader represents his army. Alternate translation: "Sheshai, Ahiman, Talmai, and their armies" (See: How to Translate Names and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- the Canaanite

Translation Words - UST

- The men of Judah
- the Canaanites

ULT

10 Then Judah went down to the Canaanite that lived in Hebron (the name of Hebron before was Kiriath Arba), and they struck Sheshai, and Ahiman, and Talmai.

UST

10 The men of Judah also went to fight against the Canaanites who lived in the city of Hebron (which used to be named Kiriath Arba). They defeated the armies of kings Sheshai, Ahiman, and Talmai.

Judges 1:11

the name of Debir was previously Kiriath Sepher

The author probably wrote this because his readers knew the city as Debir. But at the time Israel attacked it, it was called Kiriath Sepher. Alternate translation: "which used to be called Kiriath Sepher" (See: Background Information)

was previously

"was in times past" or "was at an earlier time"

ULT

11 He went from there to those living in Debir (the name of Debir before was Kiriath Sepher).

UST

11 Then they left that area and went to fight against the people living in the city of Debir, which was previously named Kiriath Sepher.

Judges 1:12

Whoever attacks Kiriath Sepher and takes it

Here "Kiriath Sepher" represents the people. Alternate translation: "Whoever attacks and defeats the people of Kiriath Sepher and takes their city" (See: Metonymy)

Aksah

This is the name of Caleb's daughter. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

12 Then Caleb said, "Whoever will strike Kiriath Sepher and capture it, I will give him Aksah, my daughter, for a wife."

UST

12 Before they attacked the city, Caleb said to them, "The person who attacks and captures Kiriath Sepher, I will allow him to marry my daughter Aksah."

Judges 1:13

Othniel, son of Kenaz

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

> • the brother of
> • the son of

Translation Words - UST

> • brother
> • who was the son of

Judges 1:14

she urged him

"Aksah urged Othniel"

Translation Words - ULT

- her father
- the donkey

Translation Words - UST

- her father
- the donkey

ULT

14 Now it happened that at her coming she incited him to ask for a field from her father. She descended from atop the donkey, and Caleb said to her, "What can I do for you?"

UST

14 After Aksah married Othniel, she asked him to request her father to give him a field. Then she rode back to her father Caleb's house on her donkey. When she got off the donkey, Caleb asked her, "What do you want?"

Judges 1:15

Give me a blessing

"Do a favor for me" or "Do this for me"

Since you have given me the land of the Negev

Caleb gave Aksah in marriage to Othniel, so she lived with Othniel in the city that he had captured in the Negev. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Since you have given me in marriage to live in the Negev" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Since you have given me the land

This implies that Caleb did give her the field when she asked him for it (verse 14). She is now asking for springs of water in addition to that field. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- a blessing
- the Negev
- the land of

Translation Words - UST

- I want you to do a favor for me
- of the southern Judean wilderness, but it is very dry there
- the land

ULT

15 Then she said to him, "Give me a blessing. Although you have given me the land of the Negev, you shall also me springs of waters." So Caleb gave her the upper springs and the lower springs.

UST

15 She replied, "I want you to do a favor for me. You have given me the land of the southern Judean wilderness, but it is very dry there. So please also give me some land that has springs of water." So Caleb gave her some land on higher ground that had a spring, and some land on lower ground that had a spring in it.

Judges 1:16

of Moses' father-in-law

"of the father of Moses' wife"

father-in-law the Kenite went up

"father-in-law, who was one of the Ken people, went up"

went up from the City of Palms...into the wilderness

"left the City of Palms...and went into the wilderness"

City of Palms

This is another name for the city of Jericho. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Arad

This is the name of a city in Canaan. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- the sons of
- Judah
- Judah (2)
- Moses
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- who were descendants of
- the men of
- Judah
- Judean (2)
- Moses
- them

ULT

16 The sons of the Kenite, the father-in-law of Moses, went up from the city of palm trees with the sons of Judah, to the wilderness of Judah, which is in the south country of Arad. So he went and he lived with the people.

UST

16 The Kenites who were descendants of Moses' father-in-law left Jericho, which was called "The City of Palm Trees." They went with some of the men of Judah to live with them in the southern Judean wilderness, near the city of Arad.

Judges 1:17

the men of Simeon their brothers

Here "brothers" means relatives who were in another tribe of Israel.

Zephath

This is the name of a city in Canaan. (See: How to Translate Names)

The name of the city was called Hormah

After the Israelites destroyed Zephath, they changed its name to "Hormah." The name "Hormah" means "complete destruction." (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- his brother
- the name of
- Judah
- the Canaanite
- So they devoted...to destruction
- and they called

Translation Words - UST

- their fellow Israelites from the tribe of Simeon
- a new name
- The men of Judah
- the Canaanites
- They completely destroyed
- and gave

ULT

17 Then Judah went with Simeon his brother and they struck the Canaanite dwelling in Zephath. So they devoted it to destruction and they called the name of the city Hormah.

UST

17 The men of Judah and their fellow Israelites from the tribe of Simeon defeated the Canaanites who lived in the city of Zephath. They completely destroyed the city and gave it a new name, Hormah, which means "complete destruction."

Judges 1:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- The men of Judah

ULT

18 Judah also captured Gaza and the territory of it, Ashkelon and the territory of it, and Ekron and the territory of it.

UST

18 The men of Judah also captured Gaza, Ashkelon, and Ekron cities and all the land that is near those cities.

Judges 1:19

Yahweh was with the people of Judah

Here "was with" means that Yahweh helped the people of Judah. (See: Idiom)

plains

a very large area of level, treeless ground

Translation Words - ULT

- and he took possession of
- Yahweh
- Judah
- he did...dispossess

Translation Words - UST

- to capture
- Yahweh
- the men of Judah
- they could...force...to leave

ULT

19 Now it happened that Yahweh was with Judah and he took possession of the hill country, but he did not dispossess those living in the valley because of their iron chariots.

UST

19 Yahweh helped the men of Judah to capture the hill country, but they could not force the people who were living in the plains to leave, because they had better weapons—they had iron chariots.

Judges 1:20

Hebron was given to Caleb (like Moses had said)

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses had given Hebron to Caleb" (See: Active or Passive)

three sons of Anak

The leaders of the people groups are used to refer to the entire group. Alternate translation: "three sons of Anak and their people" (See: Synecdoche)

Anak

This is the name of a man. Anak and his descendants were famous for being very tall. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- and he dispossessed
- sons of
- Moses

Translation Words - UST

- And Caleb forced...to leave
- the...clans descended from
- Moses

ULT

20 They gave Hebron to Caleb just as Moses had directed, and he dispossessed from there the three sons of the Anak.

UST

20 The city of Hebron was given to Caleb because Moses had promised him that he could have that city. And Caleb forced the three clans descended from Anak to leave that area.

Judges 1:21

to this day

"until now." This refers to the time the book of Judges was written.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Benjamin
- Benjamin
- Jerusalem
- in Jerusalem
- the Jebusite
- the Jebusite

Translation Words - UST

- the tribe of
- the tribe of
- Benjamin
- Benjamin
- Jerusalem
- in Jerusalem
- the Jebusites
- the Jebusites

ULT

21 But the Jebusite living in Jerusalem, the sons of Benjamin did not dispossess. So the Jebusite have lived with the sons of Benjamin in Jerusalem until this day.

UST

21 But the tribe of Benjamin could not force the Jebusites to leave Jerusalem. So, since that time the Jebusites have lived in Jerusalem with the tribe of Benjamin.

Judges 1:22

The house of Joseph

Here "house" represents descendants. Manasseh and Ephraim were sons of Joseph, and the "house of Joseph" can refer to the descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim. Alternate translation: "The descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim" or "The men of the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim" (See: Metonymy)

to attack Bethel

Here "Bethel" represents the people who live in Bethel. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- and Yahweh
- Joseph
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- and Yahweh
- The men of the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh
- The men of the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh

ULT

22 Likewise, the house of Joseph went up against Bethel, even they, and Yahweh was with them.

UST

22 The men of the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh went to fight against the men of the city of Bethel, and Yahweh helped them.

Judges 1:23

spy

to get information secretly

the city that was formerly called Luz

This is background information. Some people who first read this book had probably heard of Luz but did not know that it was the same as the city that they called Bethel. (See: Background Information and How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph
- The house of

Translation Words - UST

- They
- They

Judges 1:24

spies

people who get information secretly

Translation Words - ULT

- kindness
- going out

Translation Words - UST

- we will be kind to you and we will not kill you
- who was coming

Judges 1:25

they attacked the city

Here "city" represents the people. Alternate translation: "they attacked the people of the city" (See: Metonymy)

with the edge of the sword

"with the point of the sword." Here "sword" represents the swords and other weapons that the soldiers used in battle. Alternate translation: "with their swords" or "with their weapons" (See: Synecdoche)

get away

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "escape" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- his family
- the sword

Translation Words - UST

- his family
- with their swords

ULT

25 So he showed them the entrance of the city, and then they struck the city with the edge of the sword, but they let the man and all his family go free.

UST

25 So the man showed them a way to enter the city. The men of the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh entered the city and killed all the people with their swords, but they did not kill the man who showed them how to get into the city, and they did not kill his family.

Judges 1:26

Luz

This new town started in the land of the Hittites was named after the town of Luz, near Bethel, that the man had left.

which is its name to this day

"which is still its name." Here "to this day" refers to the time when the book of Judges was written.

Translation Words - ULT

- its name
- is its name
- the Hittites
- to the land of
- He called

Translation Words - UST

- He named
- the name of that city
- where the descendants of Heth lived
- to the area
- He named

ULT

26 Then the man went to the land of the Hittites and he built a city. He called its name Luz, which is its name until this day.

UST

26 That man went to the area where the descendants of Heth lived, and he built a city. He named the city Luz, and that is still the name of that city.

Judges 1:27

Beth Shan…Taanach…Dor…Ibleam…Megiddo

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

because the Canaanites were determined to live in that land

To "determine" is to firmly decide something. Alternate translation: "because the Canaanites firmly decided not to leave that land"

Translation Words - ULT

- the Canaanite

Translation Words - UST

- There were Canaanites…the Canaanites

ULT

27 But Manasseh did not take possession of Beth Shan and its daughters, or Taanach and its daughters, or the one living in Dor and its daughters, or those living in Ibleam and its daughters, or those living in Megiddo and its daughters, because the Canaanite had resolved to live in that land.

UST

27 There were Canaanites who lived in Beth Shan, Taanach, Dor, Ibleam, and Megiddo cities and in the surrounding villages. The men of the tribe of Manasseh did not force them to leave those towns, because the Canaanites were determined to stay there.

Judges 1:28

When Israel became strong

Here "Israel" represents the people. Alternate translation: "When the people of Israel became stronger" (See: Metonymy)

they forced the Canaanites to serve them with hard labor

"they forced the Canaanites to do hard work for them"

Translation Words - ULT

- but
- he imposed…upon
- Israel
- the Canaanite
- became strong

Translation Words - UST

- but…all
- and they forced
- the Israelites
- the Canaanites…the Canaanites
- became stronger

ULT

28 Now it happened that when Israel became strong, he imposed tribute upon the Canaanite, but he did not take possession of him.

UST

28 Later, the Israelites became stronger, and they forced the Canaanites to work for them as their slaves, but they did not force all the Canaanites to leave their land.

Judges 1:29

Ephraim did not

Here "Ephraim" the men or the soldiers of the tribe of Ephraim. (See: Metonymy)

Gezer

The name of one of the cities in the Ephraim area. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Canaanite
- the Canaanite

Translation Words - UST

- the Canaanites
- the Canaanites

ULT

29 Neither did Ephraim dispossess the Canaanite who lived in Gezer, so the Canaanite lived in Gezer in the midst of him.

UST

29 The men of the tribe of Ephraim did not force the Canaanites to leave the city of Gezer. So the Canaanites continued to live with the tribe of Ephraim.

Judges 1:30

Zebulun did not drive out

Here "Zebulun" represents the men or the soldiers of the tribe of Zebulun. (See: Metonymy)

Kitron…Nahalol

These are names of cities in the land of Canaan. (See: How to Translate Names)

but Zebulun forced

Here "Zebulun" represents the people of the tribe of Zebulun. (See: Metonymy)

hard labor

"difficult labor"

Translation Words - ULT

- the Canaanite

Translation Words - UST

- the Canaanites

ULT

30 Zebulun did not dispossess those living in Kitron, or those dwelling in Nahalol, so the Canaanite lived in his midst. But they were subject to tribute.

UST

30 The men of the tribe of Zebulun did not force the Canaanites who were living in the cities of Kitron and Nahalol to leave. They stayed there and lived with the tribe of Zebulun, but the people of Zebulun forced them to work for them as their slaves.

Judges 1:31

Asher did not drive

Here "Asher" represents the men or the soldiers of the tribe of Asher. (See: Metonymy)

Akko...Sidon...Ahlab, Akzib, Helbah, Aphek...Rehob

These are names of cities in the land of Canaan. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

31 Asher did not dispossess those living in Akko, or those living in Sidon, or Ahlab, or Akzib, or Helbah, or Aphek, or Rehob.

UST

31 The men of the tribe of Asher did not force the Canaanites who lived in Akko, Sidon, Ahlab, Aczib, Helbah, Aphek and Rehob cities to leave.

Judges 1:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Canaanite
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- the Canaanites
- those who were still there

ULT

32 So the Asherite lived in the midst of the Canaanite who lived in the land, because he did not dispossess him.

UST

32 So the tribe of Asher lived with the Canaanites (those who were still there), and did not make them leave.

Judges 1:33

Beth Shemesh...Beth Anath

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

the inhabitants of Beth Shemesh and Beth Anath were forced into hard labor for Naphthali

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of Naphtali forced the people of Beth Shemesh and Beth Anath to work for them as slaves" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Canaanite
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- the Canaanites
- in those cities

ULT

33 Naphtali did not dispossess those living in Beth Shemesh, or those living in Beth Anath. So he lived in the midst of the Canaanite who lived in the land. However, those living in Beth Shemesh and Beth Anath were subject to tribute to them.

UST

33 The men of the tribe of Naphtali did not compel the people who lived in the cities of Beth Shemesh and Beth Anath to leave, so they continued to live with the Canaanites in those cities, but the Canaanites were forced to work as the slaves of the tribe of Naphtali.

Judges 1:34

not allowing them to come down

"stopping them from coming down"

plain

a very large area of flat land without trees

Translation Words - ULT

• the sons of
• The Amorite

Translation Words - UST

• the tribe of
• The Amorites

ULT

34 The Amorite pressed the sons of Dan to the hill country, for he did not permit him to go down into the valley.

UST

34 The Amorites forced the tribe of Dan to live in the hills. They did not allow them to come down and live on the plain.

Judges 1:35

Mount Heres

This is the name of a large hill on which the city of Aijalon was built. (See: How to Translate Names)

Aijalon...Shaalbim

These are names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

the military might of the house of Joseph conquered them

"the tribes of people who descended from Joseph were able to conquer them because of their powerful army"

house of Joseph

Here "house" represents descendants. Manasseh and Ephraim were sons of Joseph, and the "house of Joseph" can refer to the descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim. Alternate translation: "the descendants of Manasseh and Ephraim" or "the men of the tribes of Manasseh and Ephraim" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

35 The Amorite resolved to live at Mount Heres, in Aijalon, and in Shaalbim, but the hand of the house of Joseph became heavy and they were subject to tribute.

UST

35 The Amorites were determined to stay at Mount Heres and in the cities of Aijalon and Shaalbim. But when the Israelites became stronger, they forced the Amorites to work as their slaves.

Translation Words - ULT

- Joseph
- The Amorite
- the hand of
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites...they
- The Amorites
- But when...became stronger
- the Israelites...they

Judges 1:36

the hill of Akrabbim

This was a pass southwest of the Dead Sea. It is also called the "Scorpion Pass." (See: How to Translate Names)

Sela

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Amorite

Translation Words - UST

- the Amorites

ULT

36 The border of the Amorite was from the ascent of Akrabbim, from the cliff and upward.

UST

36 The land where the Amorites lived extended from Scorpion Pass toward the west beyond Sela, up into the hill country.

Judges 2

Judges 2 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Yahweh tests Israel

Yahweh said, "Because this nation has broken the terms of my covenant." Completely removing the Canaanites from the land was a test from Yahweh. While Yahweh displayed covenant faithfulness, Israel did not. (See: test, tested, testing, testing in the fire and covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love)

Judges 2:1

angel of Yahweh

Possible meaning are 1) "angel who represents Yahweh" or 2) "messenger who serves Yahweh" or 3) it may refer to Yahweh himself, who looked like an angel as he talked to a person. Either one of these meanings would explain the angel's use of "I" as if Yahweh himself were talking.

went up from Gilgal to Bokim

"left Gilgal and went to Bokim"

Bokim

This is what the Israelites named this place in 2:5 after the angel rebukes the people. "Bokim" means "crying." (See: How to Translate Names)

and said

It is understood that the angel of Yahweh is speaking to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "and said to the people of Israel" (See: Ellipsis)

brought you up from Egypt

"led you from Egypt"

your fathers

"your ancestors" or "your forefathers"

break my covenant with you

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "fail to do what I said I would do for you" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- my covenant
- Yahweh
- from Egypt
- to your fathers
- The angel of
- the land
- I have sworn

Translation Words - UST

- the covenant I made
- Yahweh
- from Egypt
- to your ancestors

ULT

1 The angel of Yahweh went up from the region of Gilgal to the region of Bokim, and said, "I am leading you up from Egypt, and I have brought you to the land that I have sworn to your fathers. I have said, 'I will not break my covenant with you for eternity.

UST

1 The angel of Yahweh went up from Gilgal to a place that the people of Israel would soon call Bokim. He said to the Israelite people, "I brought your ancestors up here from Egypt. I led them into this land that I solemnly promised to give to your ancestors. I said to them, 'I will never break the covenant I made with you.

- The angel of
- this land
- I solemnly promised to give

Judges 2:2

you have not listened to my voice

Here "voice" represents what Yahweh said. Alternate translation: "you have not obeyed my commands" (See: Metonymy)

What is this that you have done?

This question is asked to cause the people of Israel to realize they have disobeyed Yahweh and will suffer because of it. Alternate translation: "You have done a terrible thing." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- Their altars
- a covenant
- my voice
- must...cut
- land

Translation Words - UST

- the altars where they make sacrifices to idols
- you must...agree to have peace
- me
- you must...agree to have peace
- land

ULT

2 You must not cut a covenant with those living in this land. Their altars you must surely tear down.' But you have not heeded my voice. What is this you have done?

UST

2 But as for you, you must never agree to have peace with the people who live in this land. You must tear down the altars where they make sacrifices to idols.' But you have not obeyed me.

Judges 2:3

General Information:

The angel of Yahweh continues to speak to the people of Israel.

So now I say, 'I will not...trap for you.'

This has a quotation within a quotation. This direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "So now I tell you that I will not...trap for you.'" (See: Quotes within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

become thorns in your sides

The Canaanites troubling the Israelites is spoken of as if the Canaanites would be thorns in the side of the Israelites. Alternate translation: "cause you trouble" (See: Metaphor)

thorns

sharp pieces of wood up to 7 centimeters long that stick out from some plants

their gods will become a trap for you

The Israelites worshiping the Canaanite gods is spoken of as if the false gods were a hunter's trap that catches an animal and causes it harm. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- and their gods

Translation Words - UST

- their idols

ULT

3 Furthermore, I have said, 'I will not drive them out from before you, but they will be against you as adversaries, and their gods will be against you as a snare'."

UST

3 So now, I am telling you that I will not drive out your enemies as you advance. They will be like thorns in your sides. And they will try to trap you by persuading you to worship their idols."

Judges 2:4

shouted and wept

"cried many tears"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the people
- the angel of

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- he
- the Israelites
- the people
- he

ULT

4 Now it happened that when the angel of Yahweh spoke these words to all the sons of Israel, the people lifted up their voice and wept.

UST

4 After he said that to all the Israelites, the people lamented loudly.

Judges 2:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- the name of
- So they called

Translation Words - UST

- to Yahweh
- They named
- They named

ULT

5 So they called the name of that place Bokim, and they offered a sacrifice there to Yahweh.

UST

5 They named that place Bokim, which means "weeping." There they offered sacrifices to Yahweh.

Judges 2:6

Now when Joshua

Here "Now" is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator begins a summary that explains how the generations of Israelites after Joshua sinned and worshiped false gods so that Yahweh punished them, but then he would send judges to rescue them. This summary ends in 2:23.

when Joshua...of their land

The events of 1:1-2:5 happened after Joshua died. This is recounting events that happened at the end of the book of Joshua. (See: Background Information)

to the place assigned

This statement can be made clearer. Alternate translation: "to the place Yahweh gave them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

6 Then Joshua dismissed the people, and the sons of Israel went each to his inheritance to posses the land.

UST

6 After Joshua sent the people of Israel away, each group went to possess the land that had been permanently assigned to them.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Joshua
- to posses
- the people
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- group
- group
- Joshua
- to possess
- the people of Israel
- the land

Judges 2:7

The background information that begins with the words "Now when Joshua" in verse 6 continues. (See: Background Information)

during the lifetime

This means the time that someone lived. Alternate translation: "during the life"

the elders

Here this means the men who helped lead Israel, participating in matters of social justice and in religious matters such as maintaining the law of Moses.

outlived him

This means to live longer than someone else. Alternate translation: "lived longer than he did"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- of Yahweh
- for Israel
- Joshua
- Joshua
- The people
- the elders

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- for Israel
- Joshua
- Joshua
- They
- the elders

ULT

7 The people served Yahweh all the days of Joshua and all of the days of the elders who had prolonged their days after Joshua, who had seen all of the great deeds of Yahweh that he had done for Israel.

UST

7 They obeyed Yahweh as long as Joshua was alive, and as long as the elders, those who had seen all the great things that Yahweh had done for Israel, were alive.

Judges 2:8

The background information that begins with the words "Now when Joshua" in verse 6 continues. (See: Background Information)

Joshua son of Nun...died at the age of 110 years old

The background information that begins with the words "Now when Joshua" in verse 6 ends. The events of 1:1-2:5 happened after Joshua died. (See: Background Information)

Nun

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

110 years old

"one hundred and ten years old" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- a son of
- Yahweh
- Joshua
- died
- the servant of

Translation Words - UST

- son
- He was...old when he died
- Yahweh
- Joshua
- Then...died
- s servant

ULT

8 Joshua, the son of Nun, the servant of Yahweh, died a son of one hundred ten years.

UST

8 Then Yahweh's servant Joshua died. He was 110 years old when he died.

Judges 2:9

he was assigned

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that God gave him" (See: Active or Passive)

Timnath Heres

This is the name of an area of land. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mount Gaash

This is the name of a mountain. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- his inheritance
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- in the land that he had received from Moses
- the descendants of Ephraim

ULT

9 Then they buried him within the border of his inheritance in Timnath Heres, in the hill country of Ephraim, to the north of Mount Gaash.

UST

9 They buried his body in the land that he had received from Moses, at Timnath Heres, in the area where the descendants of Ephraim lived, north of Mount Gaash.

Judges 2:10

All that generation was also gathered to their fathers

The phrase "was also gathered to their fathers" means that as the people of that generation died, their souls went to the same place as their ancestors who died before them. It is a polite way of saying they died. (See: Euphemism)

fathers

Here this means the ancestors of a certain person or people group.

grew up

"grew older" or "became older"

who did not know Yahweh

Here "did not know" means they had not experienced Yahweh or his power the way the previous generation had.

ULT

10 When all of that generation had also been gathered to his fathers, another generation rose up after them who did not know Yahweh or even the deed that he had done for Israel.

UST

10 After all the people who lived at the same time as Joshua died, more people grew up who did not know Yahweh and had not seen him do the great things he had done for the Israelite people.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- for Israel
- his fathers
- had...been gathered
- generation
- did...know

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- for the Israelite people
- died
- died
- more people
- did...know

Judges 2:11

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: Metaphor)

Baals

This is the plural of Baal. While "Baal" was generally the name of one false god, the word was also used for various other gods that were often worshiped along with Baal. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the wickedness

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- evil, wicked, unpleasant

ULT

11 The sons of Israel did the wickedness in the sight of Yahweh and they served the Baals.

UST

11-13 They did things that Yahweh said were very evil. They worshiped idols that represented the god Baal and the female fertility goddess, the Ashtoreth. They worshiped the various gods that the people groups around them worshiped. They stopped worshiping Yahweh, the God their ancestors worshiped, the one who had brought their ancestors out of Egypt. This caused Yahweh to be very angry.

Judges 2:12

They broke away from Yahweh

The Israelites no longer obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if they physically broke away from him and left him. (See: Metaphor)

their fathers

"their ancestors" or "their forefathers"

They went after other gods

The Israelites starting to worship false gods is spoken of as if the Israelites walked and went after the false gods. (See: Metaphor)

bowed down to them

This is an act of worship and giving honor to someone. (See: Symbolic Action)

They provoked Yahweh to anger

"They caused Yahweh to become angry"

ULT

12 Thus they forsook Yahweh, the God of their fathers, the one who brought them out of the land of Egypt. They went after other gods from the gods of the people groups who were around them, and they bowed down to them. They provoked Yahweh to anger.

UST

Translation Words - ULT

- the God of
- gods
- from the gods of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- and they bowed down
- Egypt
- their fathers
- the people groups

Translation Words - UST

- God
- God
- God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- prostrate, worship
- Egypt, Egyptian
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- people, people group,

Judges 2:13

Ashtoreths

This is the plural of Ashtoroth, who was worshiped as a goddess in many different forms. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT

13 They forsook Yahweh and they served the Baal and the Ashtoreths.

UST

11-13 They did things that Yahweh said were very evil. They worshiped idols that represented the god Baal and the female fertility goddess, the Ashtoreth. They worshiped the various gods that the people groups around them worshiped. They stopped worshiping Yahweh, the God their ancestors worshiped, the one who had brought their ancestors out of Egypt. This caused Yahweh to be very angry.

Judges 2:14

The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel

The anger of Yahweh is described as burning like a fire. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry with the people of Israel" (See: Metaphor)

he gave them to the raiders who stole their possessions from them

"he let raiders steal their possessions"

He sold them as slaves who were held by the strength of their enemies around them, so they could no longer defend themselves against their enemies

Yahweh allowing the enemies to take the Israelites as slaves is spoken of as if he sold them into slavery. The phrase "who were held by" can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "He allowed their enemies to conquer them and take them as slaves, and they could no longer resist their powerful enemies" (See: Metaphor and Active or Passive)

ULT

14 Then the anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, so he gave them into the hand of plunderers, and they plundered them. He surrendered them into the hand of their enemies from all around, so that they were not able any longer to stand before their enemies.

UST

14 Because Yahweh was angry, he allowed people from other groups to attack them and steal their crops and animals. They were no longer able to resist their enemies, and Yahweh allowed all their enemies around them to defeat them.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- against Israel
- into the hand of
- into the hand of
- their enemies
- their enemies

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- he allowed people from other groups to attack them and steal their crops and animals
- They were no longer able to resist
- their enemies
- their enemies

Judges 2:15

Yahweh's hand was against them to defeat them

Here "hand" represents Yahweh's power. Alternate translation: "Yahweh helped their enemies defeat them" (See: Metonymy)

they were in terrible distress

"they were suffering terribly"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the hand of
- Thus he pressed
- had sworn
- they went out

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- he
- he
- Yahweh
- So...were...distressed
- would do
- the Israelites went to fight their enemies

ULT

15 In every way, whenever they went out the hand of Yahweh was against them for calamity, just as Yahweh had spoken and just as Yahweh had sworn to them. Thus he pressed them exceedingly.

UST

15 Whenever the Israelites went to fight their enemies, Yahweh always worked against them and allowed their enemies to defeat them, just as he had said he would do. So the Israelites were greatly distressed.

Judges 2:16

Then Yahweh raised up judges

Yahweh appointing persons to be judges is spoken of as if he were raising or lifting the persons up. (See: Metaphor)

out of the hand of those

Here "hand" refers to power. Alternate translation: "from the power of the enemies" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- from the hand of
- and they saved them

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- from the people who were attacking them
- These leaders rescued the Israelites

ULT
16 Then Yahweh raised up judges, and they saved them from the hand of their plunderers.

UST
16 Then Yahweh brought leaders to them. These leaders rescued the Israelites from the people who were attacking them.

Judges 2:17

they would not listen to their judges

"they would not obey their judges"

gave themselves like prostitutes to other gods and worshiped them

The people betraying Yahweh and worshiping other gods is spoken of as if the people were prostitutes. Alternate translation: "betrayed him by worshiping false gods" (See: Simile)

their fathers

"their ancestors" or "their forefathers"

Translation Words - ULT

- the commands of
- gods
- Yahweh
- and they bowed down
- their fathers
- they pursued adulterously
- had walked

Translation Words - UST

- what...commanded
- idols...gods
- Yahweh
- and they worshiped
- their ancestors. Their ancestors...their ancestors
- they betrayed Yahweh...like prostitutes
- had behaved

ULT

17 Even to their judges they would not listen. For they pursued adulterously after other gods and they bowed down to them. They turned away quickly from the way that their fathers had walked. They did not do likewise to heed the commands of Yahweh.

UST

17 But the Israelites still would not obey their leaders. Instead, they betrayed Yahweh for idols, like prostitutes to other gods and they worshiped those idols. They were not like their ancestors. Their ancestors obeyed what Yahweh commanded, but these new people quickly stopped behaving as their ancestors had behaved.

Judges 2:18

When Yahweh raised up judges

Yahweh appointing persons to be judges is spoken of as if he raised or lifted up the persons. (See: Metaphor)

judges for them...rescued them

The word "them" refers to the Israelites.

the hand of their enemies

Here "hand" refers to power of the enemies to hurt Israel. Alternate translation: "the power of their enemies" (See: Metonymy)

all the days the judge lived

"as long as the judge lived"

pity

to have compassion for someone or something

as they groaned

The sound made by a person who suffers is used to describe the pain of the Israelites as they suffer. Alternate translation: "as they suffered" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

18 When Yahweh raised up judges for them, Yahweh would be with the judges and he would save them from the hand of their enemies all of the days of the judges. For Yahweh would become remorseful on account of their groaning from the presence of those tormenting them and oppressing them.

UST

18 Whenever Yahweh brought a leader to them, he helped that leader and enabled him to rescue the people from their enemies. He did that as long as that leader was alive. Yahweh pitied them as they groaned because they were being oppressed and caused to suffer.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- the judges
- the judges
- from the hand of
- their enemies
- and he would save them
- would become remorseful

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- he
- Yahweh (2)
- that leader
- that leader
- and enabled him to rescue the people from
- their enemies
- and enabled him to rescue the people from
- pitied them

Judges 2:19

they would turn away

The people no longer obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if they would physically turn away from Yahweh. (See: Metaphor)

their fathers

"their ancestors" or "their forefathers"

They would go after other gods to serve them and worship them

The Israelites worshiping other gods is spoken of as if they were walking and going after other gods. Alternate translation: "They would serve and worship other gods" (See: Metaphor)

They refused to give up any of their evil practices or their stubborn ways

"They refused to stop doing evil things and being stubborn." This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "They continued doing evil things and being stubborn" (See: Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

- gods
- they would turn back
- the judge

Translation Words - UST

- gods
- the people always began...had behaved
- that leader

ULT

19 Now it would happen that at the death of the judge, they would turn back and behave corruptly more than their fathers, walking after other gods to serve them and to bow down to them. They did not drop any of their evil deeds or their shameless behavior.

UST

19 But after that leader died, the people always began behaving in more evil ways than their ancestors had behaved. They worshiped other gods and bowed down to them and did all the things that they thought those gods wanted them to do.

Judges 2:20

The anger of Yahweh burned against Israel

The anger of Yahweh is described as burning like a fire. See how you translated this phrase in Judges 2:14. (See: Metaphor)

this nation has broken

Here "nation" represents the people. Alternate translation: "these people have broken" or "the Israelites have broken" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- I had commanded
- my covenant
- Yahweh
- against Israel
- their fathers
- nation

Translation Words - UST

- the covenant that I made
- the covenant that I made
- Yahweh
- with the Israelite people...with
- their ancestors
- These people

ULT

20 As a result the anger of Yahweh burned against Israel, and he said, "In that this nation transgressed my covenant that I had commanded their fathers, but they have not heeded my voice,

UST

20 So Yahweh was very angry with the Israelite people. He said, "These people have disobeyed the covenant that I made with their ancestors. They have not done what I told them to do.

Judges 2:21

any of the nations

Here "nations" represents the people groups that lived in Canaan before the Israelites. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Joshua
- left
- to drive out
- when he died
- the nations

Translation Words - UST

- Joshua
- left in this land
- will...expel
- when he died
- the people groups

ULT

21 I also will not continue to drive out anyone out of their presence from the nations that Joshua left when he died.

UST

21 So I will no longer expel the people groups that Joshua left in this land when he died.

Judges 2:22

they will keep the way of Yahweh and walk in it

How Yahweh wants people to live or behave is spoken of as if it were a way or road. A person obeying Yahweh is spoken of as if they were walking in his way. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel
- their fathers
- observed

Translation Words - UST

- what I want them to do
- the Israelite people
- their ancestors
- did

ULT

22 in order to test Israel by them, whether they are observing the way of Yahweh, walking in them just as their fathers observed, or not."

UST

22 I will use them to test the Israelite people to see whether they will do what I want them to do, as their ancestors did."

Judges 2:23

did not drive them out quickly and give them into the hand of Joshua

These two phrases mean the same thing and can be combined. Alternate translation: "he did not let Joshua quickly conquer them and drive them out" (See: Doublet)

into the hand of Joshua

Here "hand" is a metonym for power, and "Joshua" represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "into the power of Joshua and his army" (See: Metonymy and Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Joshua
- into the hand of
- nations

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Joshua and his men
- by allowing...to defeat them
- people groups

ULT

23 So Yahweh allowed those nations to stay, not dispossessing them hastily and he did not give them into the hand of Joshua.

UST

23 Yahweh allowed these people groups to stay in that land for a long time after the people of Israel had come. He did not expel them by allowing Joshua and his men to defeat them.

Judges 3

Judges 3 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The people worship false gods

Israel worshiped idols and false gods. Because of this, Yahweh allowed Aram and Moab to rule over them. In the period of Judges, when Israel sinned, they were often placed under the rule of a foreign power. (See: god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

"Blew a trumpet"

When Ehud "blew a trumpet," he was calling all of the men to come help him fight. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Judges 3:1

Now Yahweh

Here "Now" begins a new section of the story.

these nations

This refers to the people groups that the narrator will list in 3:3.

who had not experienced any of the wars fought in Canaan

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "who had not fought in any of the wars in Canaan" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel
- Canaan
- nations
- had...known

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- in Canaan
- many people groups
- had...fought

ULT
1 Now those nations which Yahweh allowed to remain in order to test Israel by them, all who had not known any of the wars of Canaan,

UST
1 At that time there were still many people groups in Canaan. Yahweh left them there to test the Israelite people because many of the Israelites in Canaan had not fought in any of the previous wars.

Judges 3:2

He did this to teach warfare to the new generation of the Israelites who had not known it before

This breaks from the main story line. The narrator gives background information about why Yahweh left some of the people groups in Canaan. Alternate translation: "Yahweh left nations among the Israelites to teach the young men who had not fought in battle before how to fight" (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- the generations of
- had...experienced them

Translation Words - UST

- Israelites
- Israelites
- the new generation of
- know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

ULT

2 only for the sake of the generations of the sons of Israel knowing, to teach them warfare, only who formerly had not experienced them,

UST

2 So Yahweh did this to teach the new generation of Israelites how to wage war.

Judges 3:3

the five kings

These five kings represent themselves and their people. Alternate translation: "the five kings and their people" (See: Synecdoche)

Mount Baal Hermon

This is the highest mountain in Israel. (See: How to Translate Names)

Hamath Pass

This is the name of an area at the northern boundary of Canaan. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistines
- the Canaanite
- Lebanon

Translation Words - UST

- The Philistines
- the descendants of Canaan
- Lebanon

ULT

3 the five governors of the Philistines, and all of the Canaanite, the Sidonian, and the Hivite living in the mountain of Lebanon, from Mount Baal Hermon as far as Lebo Hamath.

UST

3 This is a list of the people groups that Yahweh left there to test the Israelites: The Philistines and their five leaders, the people living in the area near the city of Sidon, the descendants of Canaan, and the Hivites who were living in the mountains of Lebanon between Mount Baal Hermon and Lebo Hamath ("the pass of Hamath").

Judges 3:4

These nations were left

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh left these nations in Canaan" or "Yahweh allowed these nations to continue to live in Canaan" (See: Active or Passive)

as a means

"as a way"

whether they would…gave their ancestors

The words "they" and "their" refer to the people of Israel.

the commands he gave

"the commands Yahweh gave"

Translation Words - ULT

- the commandments of
- He had commanded
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Moses
- their fathers
- by the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- commands
- he had told
- his
- the Israelites
- Moses
- them
- to give

ULT

[4] They were to test Israel by them, to know whether they would heed the commandments of Yahweh, which He had commanded their fathers by the hand of Moses.

UST

[4] Yahweh left these people groups there to test the Israelites, to see if they would obey his commands which he had told Moses to give them.

Judges 3:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- So the sons of
- Israel
- the Hittite
- the Canaanite
- and the Amorite
- and the Jebusite
- and the Perizzite

Translation Words - UST

- The Israelites
- The Israelites
- the Hittites
- the Canaanites
- the Amorites
- and the Jebusites
- the Perizites

ULT

5 So the sons of Israel settled in the midst of the Canaanite, the Hittite, and the Amorite, and the Perizzite, and the Hivite, and the Jebusite.

UST

5 The Israelites lived among the people groups of the Canaanites, the Hittites, the Amorites, the Perizites, the Hivites, and the Jebusites.

Judges 3:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to their sons
- their gods

Translation Words - UST

- to those men to marry them
- the gods of those people

ULT

6 Then their daughters they took for themselves as wives, and their daughters they gave to their sons, and they served their gods.

UST

6 But the Israelites took the daughters of those people to be their own wives, and gave their own daughters to those men to marry them. And they worshiped the gods of those people.

Judges 3:7

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in Judges 2:11. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: Metaphor)

forgot Yahweh their God

Here "forgot" is an idiom that means "they stopped obeying." (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- their God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- The Israelites
- their God
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- The Israelites

ULT

7 So the sons of Israel did this evil in the eyes of Yahweh and they forgot Yahweh their God. They served the Baals and the Asherahs.

UST

7 The Israelites did things that Yahweh said were very evil. They forgot about Yahweh, their God, and they started to worship the idols that represented the god Baal and the goddess Asherah.

Judges 3:8

the anger of Yahweh was set on fire

Yahweh becoming very angry is spoken of as if his anger were something that could be set on fire. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry" (See: Metaphor)

sold them into the hand of Cushan-Rishathaim

Allowing the people of Israel to be conquered is spoken of as if Yahweh sold them to Cushan-Rishathaim. Alternate translation: "allowed Cushan-Rishathaim and his army to defeat them" (See: Metaphor)

into the hand of Cushan-Rishathaim

Here "hand" is a metonym that represents power or control. Also, "Cushan-Rishathaim" is a synechdoche that represents himself and his army. (See: Metonymy and Synecdoche)

Cushan-Rishathaim

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Aram Naharaim

This is the name of a country. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Yahweh
- against Israel
- Israel
- into the hand of
- the king

Translation Words - UST

- The people of Israel
- Yahweh
- with Israel
- The people of Israel
- that they might live under the power of
- who was king of

ULT

8 Therefore, the anger of Yahweh blazed against Israel, so he sold them into the hand of Cushan-Rishathaim, the king of Aram Naharaim. The sons of Israel served Cushan-Rishathaim eight years.

UST

8 Therefore Yahweh was very angry with Israel, and he handed them over that they might live under the power of King Cushan-Rishathaim, who was king of Aram Naharaim in Mesopotamia. The people of Israel served Cushan-Rishathaim for eight years.

Judges 3:9

Yahweh raised up someone

Yahweh appointing someone to do a special work for him is spoken of as if Yahweh raised or lifted up the person. (See: Metaphor)

Othniel...Kenaz

See how you translated these men's names in Judges 1:13.

Translation Words - ULT

- the brother of
- the sons of
- for the sons of
- the son of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- When...cried out
- a deliverer
- and he delivered them

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- they...them
- them
- the son of
- Yahweh
- he
- they...them
- them
- But when...pleaded...to help
- a leader to rescue
- deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

ULT

9 When the sons of Israel cried out to Yahweh, Yahweh raised up a deliverer for the sons of Israel, and he delivered them: Othniel, the son of Kenaz, the brother of Caleb younger than him.

UST

9 But when they pleaded to Yahweh to help them, he brought a leader to rescue them. He was Othniel (the son of Caleb's younger brother, Kenaz).

Judges 3:10

empowered him

This phrase means that Yahweh helped Othniel to have and develop the qualities he needed to be a great leader.

he judged Israel

Here "judged" means he led the people of Israel.

he went out to war

Here "he" refers to Othniel who represents himself and the army of Israel. Alternate translation: "Othniel and the Israelite soldiers went to fight against the army of Cushan-Rishathaim" (See: Synecdoche)

Yahweh gave him victory over Cushan-Rishathaim king of Aram

Here "Cushan-Rishathaim" represents his army. Alternate translation: "Yahweh helped the Israelite army defeat the army of Cushan-Rishathaim king of Aram" (See: Synecdoche)

The hand of Othniel

Here "hand" is a metonym for army. Alternate translation: "The army of Othniel" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

10 The spirit of Yahweh came upon him, and he judged Israel. He went forth to battle and Yahweh gave Cushan-Rishathaim, the king of Aram, into his hand. Thus his hand prevailed over Cushan-Rishathaim.

UST

10 Yahweh's Spirit gave him power and insight, and he became their leader. He led an army that fought against the army of Cushan-Rishathaim, and Othniel defeated them.

Translation Words - ULT

- He went forth
- The spirit of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- and he judged
- into his hand
- his hand
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- He led an army
- s Spirit
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- their
- and he became…leader
- hand
- hand
- king, kingdom, kingship

Judges 3:11

The land had peace

"The land" is used to refer to the people who lived in the land. Alternate translation: "The people lived peacefully" (See: Metonymy)

forty years

"40 years" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Then...died
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- Othniel
- until...died
- in the land

ULT

11 So the land had tranquility forty years. Then Othniel the son of Kenaz died.

UST

11 After that, for forty years there was peace in the land, until Othniel died.

Judges 3:12

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in Judges 2:11. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: Metaphor)

Yahweh gave strength to Eglon king of Moab

The abstract noun "strength" can be stated as an adjective. Alternate translation: "Yahweh made Eglon king of Moab strong" (See: Abstract Nouns)

to Eglon king of Moab to overpower the Israelites

Here "Eglon king of Moab" represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "to Eglon king of Moab and his soldiers as they attacked the Israelite army" (See: Synecdoche)

Eglon

This is the name of a king. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel (2)
- Moab
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the Israelites
- the Israelites (2)
- the land of Moab
- who ruled

ULT

12 Then the sons of Israel started again to do this evil in the eyes of Yahweh. So Yahweh strengthed Eglon, the king of Moab against Israel, because they did this evil in the eyes of Yahweh.

UST

12 After that, the Israelites again did things that Yahweh had forbidden them to do, things that were very evil. Yahweh made the army of King Eglon, who ruled the land of Moab, much stronger so that he could defeat the Israelites.

Judges 3:13

the City of Palms

This is another name for the city of Jericho. See how you translated this in Judges 1:16.

Translation Words - ULT

- and they took possession of
- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- They captured
- the leaders of
- Israel

ULT

13 Then he mobilized to himself the sons of Ammon and Amalek and he went and attacked Israel, and they took possession of the city of the palm trees.

UST

13 Eglon persuaded the leaders of the Ammonites and the Amalekites to join their armies with his army to attack Israel. They captured Jericho, which was called "The City of Palm Trees."

Judges 3:14

eighteen years

"18 years" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Moab
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- King

ULT

14 So the sons of Israel served Eglon the king of Moab eighteen years.

UST

14 Then King Eglon ruled the Israelites for eighteen years.

Judges 3:15

called out to Yahweh

Here this means to shout or speak loudly to someone far away. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.

raised up someone

Yahweh appointing someone to do a special service for him is spoken of as if he raised or lifted up the person. (See: Metaphor)

Ehud...Gera

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

left-handed

Ehud was better able to hold a sword with his left hand.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- The sons of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- Moab
- the Benjamite (2)
- in...hand
- by his hand
- When...cried out
- a deliverer
- the king of
- tribute

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- son of
- The Israelites
- Yahweh
- he
- the Israelites
- The Israelites
- Moab, Moabite
- from the descendants of Benjamin (2)
- left-handed
- him
- But then...again pleaded...to help them
- another leader
- King

ULT

15 When the sons of Israel cried out to Yahweh, Yahweh raised up for them a deliverer, Ehud, the son of Gera, the Benjamite, a man impeded in his right hand. The sons of Israel sent tribute by his hand to Eglon, the king of Moab.

UST

15 But then the Israelites again pleaded to Yahweh to help them. So he brought another leader to rescue them. He was Ehud son of Gera, a left-handed man from the descendants of Benjamin. The Israelites sent him to King Eglon to give him the money he required every year so he would not attack them.

• the money he required every year so he would not attack them

Judges 3:16

one cubit

If it is necessary to use a modern measurement of length, here are two ways of doing it. Alternate translation: "46 centimeters" or "about one half meter" (See: Biblical Distance)

he strapped it on under his clothing on his right thigh

"he tied it to his right thigh under his clothing"

thigh

the part of the leg between the knee and the hip

Translation Words - ULT

  • a sword

Translation Words - UST

  • a short...sword

ULT

16 Then Ehud made for himself a sword and it had two edges, a span was its length. He bound it on from beneath his clothing on his right thigh.

UST

16 Ehud had with him a short double-edged sword, one-half meter in length. He hid it under his clothes by strapping the sword to his right thigh.

Judges 3:17

Now Eglon was a very fat man

Here "Now" is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator tells background information about Eglon. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moab
- the king of
- the tribute

Translation Words - UST

- Moab, Moabite
- King
- the money

ULT

17 Then he bought the tribute near to Eglon, the king of Moab. Now Eglon was a very fat man.

UST

17 He gave the money to King Eglon, who was a very fat man.

Judges 3:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the tribute
- the tribute
- he had completed

Translation Words - UST

- with the men
- grain offering
- the money
- consume, devour

ULT

18 Now it happened that when he had completed bringing over the tribute, he sent away the people, the bearers of the tribute.

UST

18 Then Ehud started to go back home with the men who had carried the money.

Judges 3:19

when he reached the place where the carved images were made near Gilgal

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "when he arrived at the place near Gilgal where people made carved images" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- So...went out
- those who were standing
- he...turned back
- O king

Translation Words - UST

- and he sent them out
- servants
- he told the other men to go on, but he himself turned around and went back to the king of Moab
- Your majesty

ULT

19 But he himself turned back from the quarries which were near the Gilgal, and he said, "I have a private message for you, O king." He said, "Silence!" So all those who were standing around him went out from around him.

UST

19 When they arrived at the stone quarries near Gilgal, he told the other men to go on, but he himself turned around and went back to the king of Moab. When he arrived at the palace, he said to the king, "Your majesty, I have a secret message for you." So the king told all his servants to be quiet, and he sent them out of the room.

Judges 3:20

in the coolness of the upper room

This is a room above the lower level that was used for rest and to remain cool during the hot part of the day.

The king got up out of his seat

Standing up was a sign of honoring God will listening to his message. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- God

Translation Words - UST

- from God

ULT

20 So Ehud came to him. Now he was sitting in the roof chamber in the coolness, which was for him alone. Ehud said, "I have a message from God for you," and he rose up from upon the seat.

UST

20 Then, as Eglon was sitting alone in the upstairs room of his summer palace, Ehud came close to him and said, "I have a message for you from God." Just then the king got up from his chair.

Judges 3:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• hand

Translation Words - UST

• hand

ULT

21 Then Ehud stretched out his left hand and took the sword from upon his right thigh, and he thrust it into his belly.

UST

21 As the king got up, Ehud reached with his left hand and pulled the dagger from his right thigh, and plunged it into the king's belly.

Judges 3:22

The tip of the sword came out of his back

"The sharp end of the sword came out of his back"

Translation Words - ULT

• Then he proceeded

Translation Words - UST

• and he went out

ULT

22 Also the handle went in following the blade, and the fat closed up over the handle because he did not pull the sword out of his belly. Then he proceeded to the vestibule,

UST

22 He thrust it in so far that the handle went into the king's belly. Ehud did not pull the dagger out. He left it there, with the handle buried in the king's fat, and he went out from the room.

Judges 3:23

porch

an outside room with low walls and a roof covering

Translation Words - ULT

- and...went out
- the doors of

Translation Words - UST

- Then...left the room...went out
- the doors

ULT

23 and Ehud went out to the porch and he closed the doors of the roof chamber behind him and locked them.

UST

23 Then Ehud left the room. He went out to the porch. He shut the doors to the room and locked them.

Judges 3:24

Surely he is relieving himself

This is a polite way to speak about a person having a bowel movement (defecating) or urinating. (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- the doors of
- his servants
- had gone out

Translation Words - UST

- the doors of
- King Eglon's servants
- had gone

ULT

24 After he had gone out, his servants came. They inspected and see, the doors of the roof chamber were locked. So they said, "Surely he is covering his feet in the chamber in the coolness."

UST

24 After he had gone, King Eglon's servants came back, but they saw that the doors of the room were locked. They said, "The king must be defecating in the inner room."

Judges 3:25

until they felt they were neglecting their duty

They waited until they became worried that something was wrong and it was their duty to open the doors to their king's private room.

took the key and opened them

"took the key and opened the doors"

Translation Words - ULT

- their lord
- it was inappropriate
- the doors of
- to the floor

Translation Words - UST

- their king
- they were worried
- the doors of
- on the floor

ULT

25 They waited until it was inappropriate, but see, he was not opening the doors of the roof chamber. So they took the key and they opened them, and see, their lord had fallen to the floor, dead.

UST

25 So they waited, but when the king did not open the doors of the room, after a while they were worried. They got a key and unlocked the doors. And they saw that their king was lying on the floor, dead.

Judges 3:26

While the servants were waiting...Ehud escaped

This tells what happened before the servants opened the doors to the upper room and found the king dead. Alternate translation: "Meanwhile, as the servants were still waiting outside of the upper room...Ehud escaped" (See: Order of Events)

Seirah

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- had escaped

Translation Words - UST

- escaped

ULT

26 Meanwhile Ehud had escaped during their tarrying and he passed beyond the quarries, then he fled to Seirah.

UST

26 Meanwhile, Ehud escaped. He passed by the stone quarries and arrived at Seirah, in the hill country where the descendants of Ephraim lived.

Judges 3:27

When he arrived

This could be made clearer. Alternate translation: "When he arrived in Seirah" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Ephraim
- on the trumpet

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites...They
- the Israelites...They
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- a trumpet

ULT

27 Now it happened that at his coming in, he blew on the trumpet in the hill country of Ephraim. Then the sons of Israel went down with him from the hill country, and he was before them.

UST

27 There he blew a trumpet to tell everyone that the people should join him to fight the people of Moab. So the Israelites went with him from the hills. They went down toward the Jordan River, with Ehud leading them.

Judges 3:28

General Information:

Ehud speaks to the people of Israel in Ephraim.

for Yahweh is about to defeat your enemies

Yahweh helping the Israelites to defeat their enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh were a warrior who would fight and defeat their enemies. (See: Metaphor)

captured the fords

"gained control of the fords"

fords

the areas of a river where it is shallow and easy to walk across to the other side

did not allow anyone to cross

"did not let anyone cross"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moab
- the Jordan
- into your hand
- your enemies
- Follow

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the people of Moab
- across the river
- hand
- your enemies
- So follow

ULT

28 Then he said to them, "Follow after me, for Yahweh has given your enemies, Moab, into your hand." So they went down after him and they captured the fords of the Jordan opposite Moab. Thus they did not allow anyone to cross over.

UST

28 He said to the men, "Yahweh is going to allow us to defeat your enemies, the people of Moab. So follow me!" So they followed him down to the river, and they stationed some of their men at the place where people can walk across the river, in order that they could kill any people from Moab who tried to cross the river to escape.

Judges 3:29

ten thousand men

"10,000 men" (See: Numbers)

capable men

"able men" or "men able to fight well"

Translation Words - ULT

- escaped
- Moab
- strength

Translation Words - UST

- escaped
- from Moab
- capable

ULT

29 So they routed Moab at that time, about ten thousand men. All were robust and all were men of strength, but not anyone escaped.

UST

29 At that time, the Israelites killed about ten thousand people from Moab. They were all strong and capable men, but not one of them escaped.

Judges 3:30

Moab was subdued by the strength of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the Israelite army defeated the Moabites" (See: Active or Passive)

the strength of Israel

Here "strength" represents the Israelite army. (See: Metonymy)

the land had rest

Here "land" represents the people. Alternate translation: "the Israelites lived peacefully" (See: Metonymy)

eighty years

"80 years" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Moab
- the hand of
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- the people of Moab
- hand
- their land

ULT

30 Moab was subdued on that day under the hand of Israel, and the land was tranquil eighty years.

UST

30 On that day, the Israelites conquered the people of Moab. Then there was peace in their land for eighty years.

Judges 3:31

judge

God appointed judges to lead the people of Israel in times of trouble after they entered the Promised Land and before they had kings. Often judges rescued the Israelites from their enemies.

Shamgar

The name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Anath

The name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

600 men

"six hundred men" (See: Numbers)

a stick used to goad cattle

Cattle farmers would poke their cattle with a sharp stick to make them move. AT "a stick used to urge cattle to move" or "a stick used to direct cattle"

He also delivered Israel from danger

The word "danger" refers to enemies that tried to harm the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "He also delivered the people of Israel from their enemies" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

31 After him was Shamgar, the son of Anath, and he struck Philistines, six hundred men with a cattle prod. Thus he also delivered Israel.

UST

31 After Ehud died, Shamgar became their leader. He rescued the Israelites from the Philistines. In one battle he killed six hundred Philistines with an ox goad.

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Israel
- Philistines
- Thus...delivered

Translation Words - UST

- son
- the Israelites
- Philistines
- rescued...from the Philistines

Judges 4

Judges 4 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Chapters 4 and 5 form one section about Barak and Deborah.

Special concepts in this chapter

Barak's leadership

At this time, it was very unusual for a woman to be a leader, especially a military leader. Barak lacked the strength to go into battle without Deborah. This indicates that Barak was a poor leader. If a woman won the battle for him, it would have brought Barak shame. It also indicates that Deborah was very well respected. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Judges 4:1

Ehud

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 3:15.

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in Judges 2:11. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- Yahweh
- the Israelites

ULT
1 Then the sons of Israel resumed once again to do this evil in the eyes of Yahweh, after Ehud died.

UST
1 After Ehud died, the Israelites again started doing things Yahweh said were very evil.

Judges 4:2

Yahweh sold them into the hand of Jabin king of Canaan

Here "hand" refers to Jabin's power over Israel. Yahweh's decision to give Jabin power over them is spoken of as if Yahweh had sold them to Jabin. Alternate translation: "Yahweh allowed them to be defeated by the power of Jabin king of Canaan" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Jabin...Sisera

These are the names of men (See: How to Translate Names)

Hazor...Harosheth Haggoyim

These are the names of cities or places (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Canaan
- into the hand of
- Haggoyim
- the king of
- Now the commander of

Translation Words - UST

- he
- in the region of Canaan
- the army
- where many of those who were not Israelites lived
- one of the kings
- The commander of

ULT

2 So Yahweh handed them over into the hand of Jabin, the king of Canaan, who reigned in Hazor. Now the commander of his army was Sisera, and he was residing in Harosheth Haggoyim.

UST

2 So he allowed the army of Jabin, one of the kings in the region of Canaan, who ruled in the city of Hazor, to conquer the Israelites. The commander of his army was Sisera, who lived in Harosheth (where many of those who were not Israelites lived).

Judges 4:3

nine hundred iron chariots

"900 iron chariots" (See: Numbers)

twenty years

"20 years"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- they
- the Israelites
- Yahweh
- they
- the Israelites

ULT

3 Then the sons of Israel cried out to Yahweh, because he had nine hundred chariots of iron and he oppressed the sons of Israel with severe might twenty years.

UST

3 Sisera's army had nine hundred chariots made out of iron. For twenty years he cruelly oppressed the Israelites. Then they pleaded to Yahweh to help them.

Judges 4:4

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator tells background information about Deborah. (See: Background Information)

Deborah

This is the name of a woman (See: How to Translate Names)

Lappidoth

This is the name of a man (See: How to Translate Names)

judge

God appointed judges to lead the Israelites in times of trouble. Often the judges rescued them from their enemies.

ULT

4 Now Deborah was a woman, a prophetess, the wife of Lappidoth. She was judging Israel at that time.

UST

4 Now Deborah, a woman who proclaimed the word of Yahweh (who was the wife of Lappidoth), was a leading judge in Israel at that time.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- in Israel

Judges 4:5

palm of Deborah

This tree was named after Deborah.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Ephraim
- Ramah

Translation Words - UST

- people
- people
- the descendants of Ephraim lived
- Ramah

ULT

5 She would sit beneath the palm tree of Deborah between Ramah and Bethel in the hill country of Ephraim, and the sons of Israel came up to her for justice.

UST

5 She would sit under her palm tree (they called it the "palm of Deborah") at a place between Ramah and Bethel, in the hill country where the descendants of Ephraim lived, and people would come to her and ask her to settle their legal disputes. She would determine what was right and fair.

Judges 4:6

General Information:

The writer of Judges refers to men, a city, a mountain, and a river by their names. (See: How to Translate Names)

Barak…Abinoam

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mount Tabor

This is the name of a mountain. (See: How to Translate Names)

ten thousand men

"10,000 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Has…commanded
- the son of
- from the sons of
- and from the sons of
- the God of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Go
- and draft
- and called

Translation Words - UST

- This is what…is commanding you to do
- son of
- some from Naphtali
- and some from Zebulun
- the God…worship
- Yahweh
- we
- and gather all your men together
- and gather all your men together
- and called him to come to her

ULT

6 She sent and called for Barak, the son of Abinoam, from Kedesh Naphtali. She said to him, "Has Yahweh, the God of Israel, not commanded: 'Go and draft at Mount Tabor, and you shall take with you ten thousand men from the sons of Naphtali and from the sons of Zebulun'?

UST

6 One day she sent for Barak son of Abinoam and called him to come to her. He was from Kedesh (in the area where the descendants of Naphtali lived). She said to him, "This is what Yahweh, the God we worship, is commanding you to do: 'Take ten thousand men with you, some from Naphtali and some from Zebulun, and gather all your men together at Mount Tabor.

Judges 4:7

I will draw out

Here "I" refers to God.

draw out Sisera

Here "Sisera" represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "draw out Sisera and his army" (See: Synecdoche)

draw out

to cause people to come away from a safe location

Sisera…Jabin

See how you translated these men's names in Judges 4:2.

Kishon

This is the name of a river. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- into your hand
- I will draw out
- the commander of

Translation Words - UST

- I will enable your men to defeat them there
- Yahweh will make me able to persuade…to come
- the commander of

ULT

7 'I will draw out Sisera, the commander of the army of Jabin, to you along the Kishon River, and his chariot and his multitude, and I will give him into your hand'."

UST

7 Yahweh will make me able to persuade Sisera, the commander of King Jabin's army, to come with his chariots and his army, to the river Kishon, a few miles away. I will enable your men to defeat them there.'"

Judges 4:8

General Information:

Barak has a discussion with Deborah.

Barak

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- you will go
- you will...go
- I will...go

Translation Words - UST

- you go
- you will...go
- I will...go

Judges 4:9

the road on which you are going will not lead to your honor

The choice Barak makes is spoken of as if Barak were choosing a road on which to travel. And, "honor" is spoken of as if it were a destination to which one travels. Alternate translation: "no one will honor you for what you do" (See: Metaphor)

for Yahweh will sell Sisera into the hand of a woman

Here "hand" refers to her power to kill him. Alternate translation: "for Yahweh will cause a woman to defeat Sisera" (See: Metonymy)

Sisera

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:2.

Deborah

See how you translated this woman's name in Judges 4:4.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- with a hand of
- indeed
- I will...go
- are going

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- to defeat
- Indeed
- I will go
- for doing that

ULT

9 She declared, "I will indeed go with you, for naught, since it will not be your honor on the way which you are going, but with a hand of a woman Yahweh will give over Sisera." Then Deborah rose up and she went with Barak to Kedesh.

UST

9 She replied, "Indeed I will go with you. But because that is what you have decided to do, Yahweh will enable a woman to defeat Sisera, and the result will be that no one will honor you for doing that." So Deborah went with Barak to Kedesh.

Judges 4:10

Ten thousand men

"10,000 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

  • Then…summoned

Translation Words - UST

  • There…summoned

Judges 4:11

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the narrator tells background information about Heber the Kenite. (See: Background Information)

Heber...Hobab

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Kenite

See how you translated this in Judges 1:16

Moses' father-in-law

"the father of Moses' wife"

Zaanannim

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- from the sons of
- Moses

Translation Words - UST

- was a descendant of
- Moses

ULT

11 Now Heber the Kenite had separated himself from Cain, from the sons of Hobab, the father-in-law of Moses. He pitched his tent as far as an oak tree in Zaanannim, which is near Kedesh.

UST

11 At that time Heber (the Kenite) had moved away from the Kenites with his wife Jael, and set up his tent near the big oak tree at Zaanannim, near Kedesh. (Heber was a descendant of Moses' father-in-law Hobab.)

Judges 4:12

When they told Sisera

Here "they" does not identify anyone specifically. Alternate translation: "When someone told Sisera"

Sisera

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:2.

Barak...Abinoam...Mount Tabor

See how you translated these names in Judges 4:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of

Translation Words - UST

- son of

Judges 4:13

Sisera called out all his chariots

Here "chariots" represents the soldiers who drove the chariots. (See: Metonymy)

nine hundred iron chariots

"900 iron chariots" (See: Numbers)

Harosheth Haggoyim

See how you translated the name of this city in Judges 4:2.

Kishon River

See how you translated this in Judges 4:7.

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- Haggoyim
- summoned

Translation Words - UST

- his troops
- where the non-Israelites lived
- gathered

ULT

13 Sisera summoned all of his chariots, nine hundred chariots of iron, and all of the people who were with him, from Harosheth Haggoyim to the Kishon River.

UST

13 Sisera gathered his troops with their nine hundred chariots, and they marched from Harosheth (where the non-Israelites lived) to the river Kishon.

Judges 4:14

Yahweh has given you victory

Because Deborah is certain of victory, she speaks as if Barak had already won the battle. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will give you victory" (See: Predictive Past)

Is not Yahweh leading you?

Deborah asks this question to remind Barak that they fight on the side of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "Remember, Yahweh is leading you." (See: Rhetorical Question)

with ten thousand

"with 10,000" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- into your hand
- has...gone forth

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- to defeat
- is going

ULT

14 Then Deborah directed to Barak, "Arise! For this day when Yahweh has given Sisera into your hand, has not Yahweh gone forth before you?" So Barak went down from Mount Tabor along with ten thousand men beside him.

UST

14 Then Deborah said to Barak, "Get going! This is the day that Yahweh will enable your army to defeat the army of Sisera. Yahweh is going ahead of you!" So Barak led his men as they descended from Mount Tabor.

Judges 4:15

Yahweh confused Sisera and all his chariots and all his army

"Yahweh made Sisera and all his chariots and all his army unable to think clearly" or "Yahweh made Sisera and all his chariots and all his army panic"

all his chariots

Here the word "chariots" is a metonym for the soldiers driving the chariots. Alternate translation: "all the men driving chariots" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

  • Yahweh
  • a sword

Translation Words - UST

  • Yahweh
  • sword, swordsmen

ULT

15 Yahweh disturbed Sisera and all of the chariots and all of the army with an edge of a sword before Barak. So Sisera dismounted from atop the chariot and fled away on his feet.

UST

15 As they advanced, Yahweh caused Sisera and all his chariots and his army to have great difficulty maneuvering around. So Sisera jumped down from his chariot and ran away.

Judges 4:16

Barak pursued

Here "Barak" represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "Barak and his soldiers chased" (See: Synecdoche)

Harosheth

Translate this the same way you did in Judges 4:2.

the whole army of Sisera was killed by the edge of the sword

Here "sword" represents the swords and other weapons that the soldiers used in battle. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Barak and his soldiers killed Sisera's whole army with their swords" (See: Synecdoche and Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- pursued
- Haggoyim
- a sword
- and...fell

Translation Words - UST

- pursued
- where the non-Israelites lived
- sword, swordsmen
- They killed

ULT

16 But Barak pursued after the chariots and after the army as far as Harosheth Haggoyim, and the entire army of Sisera fell by an edge of a sword, not even one remained.

UST

16 But Barak and his men pursued the other chariots and the enemy soldiers as far as Harosheth (where the non-Israelites lived). They killed all of the men in Sisera's army. Not one man survived.

Judges 4:17

Sisera...Jabin...Hazor

See how you translated these names in Judges 4:2.

ran away on foot

This is an idiom that means he was walking rather than riding a horse or in a chariot. (See: Idiom)

Jael

This is the name of a woman. (See: How to Translate Names)

Heber

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:11.

Kenite

See how you translated this in Judges 1:16.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- there was peace
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- king, kingdom, kingship
- was a good friend of
- house

ULT

17 However Sisera had fled on his feet to the tent of Jael, the wife of Heber the Kenite, for there was peace between Jabin the king of Hazor and the house of Heber the Kenite.

UST

17 But Sisera ran to Jael's tent. He did that because Sisera's master, Jabin of the city of Hazor, was a good friend of her husband Heber.

Judges 4:18

Turn aside

This means to change course during a journey in order to rest. Alternate translation: "Come here" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

blanket

a large covering for the body to sleep under for warmth, made of wool or animal skins

Translation Words - ULT

- Do...fear
- my lord
- went out

Translation Words - UST

- Do...be afraid
- Sir
- went out

ULT

18 Jael went out to meet Sisera and she said to him, "Turn aside, my lord, turn aside to me. Do not fear." So he turned to her, into the tent, and she concealed him with a covering.

UST

18 Jael went out to greet Sisera. She said to him, "Sir, come into my tent! Do not be afraid!" So he went into the tent and lay down, and she covered him with a blanket.

Judges 4:19

He said to her

"Sisera said to Jael"

ULT

19 He requested of her, "Please give me a little water to drink, for I am thirsty." So she opened the leather bag of milk and gave him drink, and then she covered him.

UST

19 He said to her, "I am thirsty; can you give me some water?" So she opened a leather container of milk, and gave him a drink. Then she covered him with a blanket again.

Judges 4:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Stand

Translation Words - UST

- Stand

ULT

20 Then he directed her, "Stand at the entrance of the tent. It shall be if anyone should come and ask you and say, 'Is there anyone here?', then you shall say 'There is not'."

UST

20 He said to her, "Stand in the entrance of the tent. If someone comes and asks, 'Is anyone else here?', say 'No'."

Judges 4:21

tent peg

a pointed piece of wood or metal, like a large nail, that is hammered into the ground to hold down a corner of a tent

hammer

a heavy tool made of wood used to hit a tent peg into the ground

a deep sleep

Like a person in a deep hole cannot easily climb out, a person in a deep sleep cannot easily wake up. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- and she put
- in her hand
- instead he died

Translation Words - UST

- holding
- hand
- and he died

ULT

21 Then Jael, the wife of Heber, took the peg of the tent and she put the hammer in her hand. She came to him in the silence, and she drove the peg into his temple and pounded down to the ground. For he had been soundly sleeping and weary, instead he died.

UST

21 Sisera was very exhausted, so he soon was asleep. While he was sleeping, Jael crept quietly to him, holding a hammer and a tent peg. She pounded the peg through his skull, and she hammered the peg all the way through his head and it stuck into the ground, and he died.

Judges 4:22

Barak was pursuing

"Barak was chasing" or "Barak was following after"

Translation Words - ULT

- and…went out
- was pursuing
- Come
- are seeking

Translation Words - UST

- went out
- came to Jael's tent to look for
- Come in
- are searching for

Judges 4:23

God defeated Jabin, the king of Canaan, before the people of Israel

God causing the Israelites to defeat Jabin and his army is spoken of as is God himself defeated Jabin as the people of Israel watched. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- God
- Israel
- Canaan
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- God
- the Israelites
- the Canaanites
- one of the kings of

ULT

23 So on that day God vanquished Jabin, the king of Canaan, before the sons of Israel.

UST

23 On that day God enabled the Israelites to defeat the army of Jabin, one of the kings of the Canaanites.

Judges 4:24

The might

"The military power"

they destroyed him

Here "him" refers to Jabin who represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: "they destroyed Jabin and his army" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Canaan
- Caanan
- the hand of
- they had destroyed
- the king of
- the king of (2)
- becoming increasingly

Translation Words - UST

- The Israelites
- The Israelites
- Canaan, Canaanite
- Canaan, Canaanite
- hand
- and they destroyed
- king, kingdom, kingship
- king, kingdom, kingship (2)
- walk, walked

ULT

24 Thus the hand of the sons of Israel had gone on becoming increasingly severe against Jabin, the king of Canaan, up to the point that they had destroyed Jabin, the king of Caanan.

UST

24 The Israelites became stronger and stronger, and they destroyed Jabin and his army.

Judges 5

Judges 5 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The account of Deborah and Barak continues in this chapter.

Some translations prefer to set apart quotations, prayers, and songs. The ULT and many other English translations set the lines of Chapter 5, which is a song, farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

The flood

God caused rain and flooding to bog down Jaban's chariots making them vulnerable to soldiers on foot, even though it is not said. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Judges 5:1

On that day

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "On the day the Israelites defeated the army of King Jabin" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Deborah

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:4.

Barak...Abinoam

See how you translated these names in Judges 4:6.

Translation Words - ULT

  • the son of

Translation Words - UST

  • the son of

ULT

1 So Deborah sang with Barak, the son of Abinoam, on that day, saying:

UST

1 On that day, Deborah and Barak (the son of Abinoam) sang this song:

Judges 5:2

when the people gladly volunteer for war

"when the men agree to fight in battle"

Translation Words - ULT

- everyone bless
- Yahweh
- in Israel
- people

Translation Words - UST

- it is time to praise
- Yahweh
- the Israelite people
- the people

ULT

2 "When long hair flowed freely in Israel, as people enlisted themselves willingly, everyone bless Yahweh!

UST

2 "When the leaders of the Israelite people really lead them, and the people willingly follow them, it is time to praise Yahweh!

Judges 5:3

General Information:

Deborah and Barak's song continues using poetry. (See: Poetry)

Listen, you kings! Pay attention, you leaders

Deborah and Barak speak to the kings and leaders as if they were there listening to the song. (See: Apostrophe)

you kings...you leaders

This refers to kings and leaders in general, not to specific kings or leaders.

Translation Words - ULT

- the God of
- unto Yahweh
- unto Yahweh
- Israel
- I
- even I
- O kings

Translation Words - UST

- the God of
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- I
- pray, prayer
- you kings

ULT

3 Hear, O kings! Give ear, O rulers! I, unto Yahweh, even I, I will sing, I will make music unto Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

3 Listen, you kings! Pay attention, you leaders! I will sing to Yahweh. With this song I will praise Yahweh, the God of Israel.

Judges 5:4

when you went out from Seir, when you marched from Edom

This refers to the time when the Israelites left Edom to start conquering the people in Canaan. Yahweh empowering his people to defeat the people of Canaan is spoken of as if he were a warrior leading the Israelite army. (See: Metaphor)

Seir

Seir is a mountain on the border of the land of Israel and Edom. (See: How to Translate Names)

the earth shook, and the skies also trembled; also the clouds poured down water

Possible meanings are 1) this is poetic language that emphasizes Yahweh's power by describing it as causing earthquakes and storms or 2) the people of Canaan being terrified as the Israelites were about to attack them is spoken of as if the earth and sky were shaking. (See: Metaphor)

ULT

4 Yahweh, because of your going forth out of Seir, because of your marching out of the open land of Edom, the earth quaked, the heavens also dripped, also the dark clouds dripped down water.

UST

4 O Yahweh, when you came from Seir, when you marched from that land, also known as Edom, the earth shook, and rain poured down from the skies.

Translation Words - ULT

- the heavens
- Yahweh
- quaked
- the earth

Translation Words - UST

- rain poured down from the skies
- O Yahweh
- shook
- the earth

Judges 5:5

General Information:

Deborah and Barak's song continues using poetry. (See: Poetry)

The mountains quaked

This probably refers to earthquakes and gives the impression that the mountains quaked because they were very afraid of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "The mountains trembled in fear" (See: Personification and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

before the face of Yahweh

Here "face" refers Yahweh's presence. Alternate translation: "in the presence of Yahweh" (See: Metonymy)

even Mount Sinai quaked

When Moses and Israel were at Mount Sinai, it quaked. Alternate translation: "long ago, even Mount Sinai quaked" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

5 Mountains flowed because of the presence of Yahweh, this Sinai, because of the presence of Yahweh, the God of Israel.

UST

5 The mountains shook when you came, just like Mount Sinai shook when you appeared there, because you are Yahweh, the God of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- the God of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the God of
- when you came
- you are Yahweh
- Israel

Judges 5:6

In the days of

"During the lifetime of"

Shamgar...Anath...Jael

These are the names of people. See how you translated Shamgar and Anath in Judges 3:31 and Jael in Judges 4:18. (See: How to Translate Names)

son of Anath

Shamgar's father is mentioned to help identify Shamgar and when he lived. (See: Background Information)

the main roads were abandoned

This can be stated in active form and you can make explicit why the roads were abandoned Alternate translation: "people stopped using the main roads; because they were afraid of Israel's enemies" (See: Active or Passive and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the winding paths

This refers to smaller roads that fewer people traveled on.

> **ULT**
>
> **6** In the days of Shamgar, the son of Anath, in the days of Jael, main roads were abandoned, and those who walked footpaths would walk crooked paths.
>
> **UST**
>
> **6** When Shamgar was our leader and in the days of Jael, we were afraid to walk on the main roads; instead, caravans of travelers walked on winding, less traveled roads to avoid being molested.

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- would walk

Translation Words - UST

- son
- walked on

Judges 5:7

I, Deborah, arose—arose as a mother in Israel

Deborah speaks of becoming a leader in Israel as if she were a mother taking care of young children. Alternate translation: "I, Deborah, began to lead—I took care of the Israelites as a mother takes care of her children" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Israel
- in Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- to the Israelite people

ULT

7 Rural people ceased to be in Israel, they ceased to be until when I arose, Deborah, when I arose, a mother in Israel!

UST

7 People left their small villages, and moved into the walled cities until I, Deborah, became their leader. I became like a mother to the Israelite people.

Judges 5:8

they chose new gods

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel worshiped new gods" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

there was fighting at the city gates

Here "gates" represents the entire city. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "enemies attacked the people within the Israelite cities" (See: Synecdoche and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

there were no shields or spears seen among forty thousand in Israel

This statement is probably an exaggeration about how few weapons the Israelites had. Alternate translation: "few weapons for battle remained in Israel" (See: Hyperbole)

forty thousand in Israel

"40,000 in Israel" (See: Numbers)

ULT

8 When he chose new gods, then there was fighting at the city gates, neither shield nor spear was seen among forty thousand in Israel.

UST

8 When the Israelite people abandoned Yahweh and chose new gods, enemies attacked the gates of the cities, and then they took away the shields and spears from forty thousand Israelite soldiers. Not one was left with a metal weapon.

Translation Words - ULT

- gods
- in Israel
- at the city gates

Translation Words - UST

- gods
- Israelite soldiers
- the gates of the cities

Judges 5:9

My heart goes out to the commanders of Israel

The word "heart" represents a person's emotions. The phrase "My heart goes out to" is a way of saying that Deborah feels gratitude or appreciation. Alternate translation: "I appreciate the commanders of Israel" (See: Metonymy and Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Everyone bless
- My heart is
- Yahweh
- Israel
- among the people

Translation Words - UST

- I praise you...for them
- I am thankful for
- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- people, people group,

ULT
9 My heart is with those who enact laws in Israel, those who volunteer among the people. Everyone bless Yahweh!

UST
9 I am thankful for the leaders and soldiers who volunteered to fight. I praise you, Yahweh, for them!

Judges 5:10

you who ride on white donkeys...you who walk along the road

This contrast probably refers to rich people and poor people. Alternate translation: "you rich people who ride on white donkeys... you poor people who walk along the road" (See: Merism)

sitting on rugs for saddles

These rugs were probably used as saddles on the donkey's back to make the rider more comfortable.

ULT

10 Riding on white donkeys, sitting on carpets, or walking along a road, sing of this,

UST

10 You wealthy people who ride on donkeys, sitting on nice padded saddles, and you people who just walk on the road, think about all this!

Judges 5:11

General Information:

The song of Deborah and Barak continues.

Hear the voices of those

Here "voices" represents the people singing. Alternate translation: "Listen to those" (See: Synecdoche)

went down to the city gates

Here "gates" represents the whole city. Alternate translation: "returned to their cities" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- in Israel
- the people of

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- when he enabled the Israelite warriors to conquer their enemies
- s people

ULT

11 louder than the sound of those distributing water from watering places. There they continuously celebrate the righteous deeds of Yahweh, the righteous actions of his rural people in Israel. Then the people of Yahweh went down to the gates.

UST

11 Listen to the voices of the singers who gather at the places where the animals drink water. They tell about how Yahweh acted righteously when he enabled the Israelite warriors to conquer their enemies. Yahweh's people marched down to the city gates.

Judges 5:12

General Information:

Deborah and Barak's song continues using poetry. (See: Poetry)

Awake, awake

Possible speakers are 1) the people of Israel or 2) Deborah who is speaking to herself or 3) the poet who wrote the song.

Deborah

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:4.

Barak…Abinoam

See how you translated these names in Judges 4:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Awake
- awake
- Awake
- awake

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- The people came to my house and shouted
- raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up
- wake up
- Wake up

ULT

12 Awake, awake, Deborah! Awake, awake, utter a song! Arise, Barak, and lead away captive your prisoner, the son of Abinoam.

UST

12 The people came to my house and shouted, 'Deborah, wake up! Wake up and start singing!' They also shouted, 'Barak (son of Abinoam), get up, and capture our enemies!'

Judges 5:13

to me with the warriors

The word "me" refers to Deborah.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the people of

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- These were men who belonged to

ULT

13 Then a survivor prevails over nobles, the people of Yahweh prevail at my side against the warriors.

UST

13 Later, some of the Israelite people who survived the battle came down from the highlands to where their leaders were. These were men who belonged to Yahweh and they came down to me to fight their enemies alongside these warriors.

Judges 5:14

from Ephraim, whose root is in Amalek

The people of Ephraim living in the land where the descendants of
Amalek originally lived is spoken of as if the people of Ephraim were
planted and their roots grew into the land. Alternate translation:
"from Ephraim, that land where the descendants of Amalek once
lived" (See: Metaphor)

followed you

Here "you" refers to the people of Ephraim. It can be stated in third
person. Alternate translation: "followed them" (See: Forms of You
and First, Second or Third Person)

Machir

This is the place where the descendants of Machir live. Machir was
the son of Manasseh and the grandson of Joseph. (See: How to
Translate Names)

from Zebulun those who carry an officer's staff

Military leaders are described by the staff, a symbol of their authority. Alternate translation: "military leaders from
Zebulun" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

14 From Ephraim, their root was against
Amalek; after you, Benjamin, among
your peoples. From Machir those with
resolve came down, and from Zebulun
those who wield the scepter of a scribe.

UST

14 Some came from the tribe descended
from Ephraim. They came from land
that once belonged to the descendants
of Amalek. Men from the tribe
descended from Benjamin followed
them. Troops from the group
descended from Machir also came
down, and officers from the tribe
descended from Zebulun came down,
carrying staffs to show they were
important.

Translation Words - ULT

- a scribe
- Ephraim
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- carrying staffs to show they were important
- the tribe descended from Ephraim
- Benjamin

Judges 5:15

My princes in Issachar were with Deborah

Here "My" refers to Deborah. This whole statement can be translated in first person. Alternate translation: "My princes in Issachar were with me" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Deborah

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:4.

Issachar was with Barak

Here "Issachar" refers to the tribe of Issachar. Alternate translation: "the tribe of Issachar was with Barak" (See: Metonymy)

Barak

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:6.

rushing after him into the valley under his command

"obeying his command and rushing after him into the valley"

rushing after

"following after" or "hurrying after"

there were great searchings of heart

Here "heart" represents thoughts. The people discussing with each other but being unable to decide what they should do is spoken of as if they were searching their heart. Alternate translation: "there was a lot of discussing about what they should do" (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

ULT

15 My princes in Issachar were with Deborah; and Issachar was also with Barak into a plain he was sent out on his feet. Among the divisions of Reuben there were great resolutions of heart.

UST

15 Leaders from the tribes descended from Issachar joined Barak and Deborah. They followed Barak, rushing down into the valley. But men from the tribe descended from Reuben could not decide what they should do.

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Reuben
- My princes

Translation Words - UST

- could not decide what they should do
- Reuben
- Leaders

Judges 5:16

Why did you sit between the fireplaces, listening to the shepherds playing their pipes for their flocks?

This question is asked to criticize the people of Reuben because they did not decide to come fight in the battle. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have helped us fight, instead of staying at home and listening to the shepherds playing their pipes for their flocks" (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the fireplaces

Some versions of the Bible have the translation "the sheepfolds" or "the sheep pens."

there were great searchings of heart

Here "heart" represents thoughts. The people discussing with each other but being unable to decide what they should do is spoken of as if they were searching their heart. See how you translated this in Judges 5:15. (See: Metonymy and Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- heart
- Reuben
- flocks

Translation Words - UST

- could not decide...whether they would join us to fight our enemies, or not
- Reuben
- their flocks of sheep to come to the pens

ULT

16 Why did you sit among the campfires, in order to hear signaling for flocks? As for the divisions of Reuben there were great resolutions of heart.

UST

16 Why did you men stay at your fireplaces, waiting to hear the shepherds whistle for their flocks of sheep to come to the pens? Men in the tribe descended from Reuben could not decide whether they would join us to fight our enemies, or not.

Judges 5:17

Gilead stayed

Here "Gilead" the men from Gilead who should have gone to fight in battle. Alternate translation: "The men of Gilead stayed" (See: Metonymy)

the other side of the Jordan

This refers to the east side of the Jordan. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Dan, why did he wander about on ships?

This question is asked to express anger because the people of the tribe of Dan would not fight for Israel. Alternate translation: "the men of Dan should not have remained on their ships!" or "the people of the tribe of Dan did not help us in the battle. Instead they were wandering around on the sea in ships!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Dan, why did he

Here "Dan" represents the men from Dan who should have gone to fight in battle. Alternate translation: "the men of Dan, why did they" (See: Metonymy)

wander about on ships

The tribe of Dan was located near the Mediterranean sea. They sailed on the sea to make money through trade and fishing. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Asher remained on the coast and lived close to his harbors

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "The people of the tribe of Asher also failed to help us, they just remained on the coast near their harbors" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Asher remained

Here "Asher" represents the men who should have gone to fight in battle. Alternate translation: "The men of Asher remained" (See: Metonymy)

harbors

places at the seacoast with deeper water where ships were kept

ULT

17 Gilead settled in the region beyond the Jordan; but Dan, why does he sojourn on ships? Asher lives at the coast of the seas and he resides along his harbors.

UST

17 Similarly, the men living in the Gilead area stayed at home, east of the Jordan River. And the men from the tribe descended from Dan, why did they stay home? The tribe descended from Asher sat by the seashore. They stayed in their coves.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jordan

Translation Words - UST

- the Jordan River

Judges 5:18

Naphtali, also

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "Naphtali was a tribe who would also risk their lives to the point of death" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- its soul
- a people
- willfully scorning
- even to death

Translation Words - UST

- their lives
- people, people group,
- risked
- on the battlefield

ULT

18 Zebulun was a people willfully scorning its soul even to death, also Naphtali on the elevated places of the battlefield.

UST

18 But men from the tribe descended from Zebulun risked their lives on the battlefield, and men descended from Naphtali were ready to do that, also.

Judges 5:19

The kings came, they fought...the kings of Canaan fought

The king of a people group is used to refer to himself and the army he commands. Alternate translation: "The kings and their armies came and fought...the kings of Canaan and their armies fought" (See: Synecdoche)

they fought...fought

The word "us" is understood. Alternate translation: "they fought us... fought us" (See: Ellipsis)

Taanach...Megiddo

Translate the names of these places as you did in Judges 1:27.

no silver as plunder

Here "silver" represents any treasure in general. Alternate translation: "no silver or other treasures as plunder" (See: Synecdoche)

plunder

things taken by force, usually in battle or by thieves

ULT

19 Kings came, they did battle; at that time the kings of Canaan did battle at Taanach along the waters of Megiddo. Plunder of silver they did not take.

UST

19 The kings of Canaan fought us at Taanach, near the springs in Megiddo Valley. But since they did not defeat us, they did not carry away any silver or other treasures from the battle.

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan
- silver
- Kings
- the kings of

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan
- any silver
- king, kingdom, kingship
- The kings of

Judges 5:20

From heaven the stars fought, from their paths across the heavens they fought against Sisera

Yahweh helping the Israelite to defeat Sisera and his army is spoken of as if the stars themselves fought against Sisera and his army. This may refer to Yahweh using natural elements, specifically rain storms, to defeat Sisera. (See: Personification)

against Sisera

Here "Sisera" represents himself and his whole army. Alternate translation: "Sisera and his army" (See: Synecdoche)

Sisera

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:2.

Translation Words - ULT

  • heavens the

Translation Words - UST

  • the heavens

ULT

[20] From the heavens the stars did battle, from their courses they did battle against Sisera.

UST

[20] It was as though the stars in the heavens fought for us and as though those stars in their paths fought against Sisera.

Judges 5:21

The Kishon River swept them away

Because of the heavy rain the river flooded quickly causing the chariots to be stuck in the mud and drowning many soldiers. Alternate translation: "The Kishon River flooded and swept away Sisera's soldiers" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Kishon

See how you translated this in Judges 4:6.

March on my soul, be strong

Here "soul" refers to the whole person. The word "my" refers to Deborah. Alternate translation: "I tell myself to march on and to be strong" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- O my soul

Translation Words - UST

- I will tell myself to be brave

ULT

21 The Kishon River swept them away, the ancient river, the Kishon River. Tread on, O my soul, in strength!

UST

21 The river Kishon swept them away— that river that has been there for ages. I will tell myself to be brave and continue marching on.

Judges 5:22

Then came the sound of horses' hooves—galloping, the galloping of his mighty ones

This describes the sound of many horses running away from the battle. Alternate translation: "Then I heard the sound of horses running away. Sisera's mighty horses were running away" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

galloping

runninb quickly

Translation Words - ULT

- a horse

Translation Words - UST

- the horses of Sisera's army

ULT

22 Then hooves of a horse beat down, from rushing, the rushing of his valiant ones.

UST

22 The hooves of the horses of Sisera's army pounded the ground. Those powerful horses kept galloping along.

Judges 5:23

Curse Meroz

Here "Meroz" represents the people who lived there. Alternate translation: "Curse the people of Meroz" (See: Metonymy)

Meroz

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Yahweh
- Curse
- You shall…curse
- surely
- the angel of

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Yahweh
- I curse
- curse, cursed, cursing
- curse, cursed, cursing
- The angel sent by

ULT

23 'Curse Meroz!' said the angel of Yahweh. 'You shall surely curse those living in it, because they did not come to the aid of Yahweh— to the aid of Yahweh against the mighty men.'

UST

23 The angel sent by Yahweh said, 'I curse the people of the town of Meroz because they did not come to help Yahweh to defeat the mighty warriors of Canaan.'

Judges 5:24

Jael

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:18.

Heber

See how you translated this name in Judges 4:11.

Kenite

Translate the name of this people group as you did in Judges 1:16.

Translation Words - ULT

- is...blessed
- she is blessed

Translation Words - UST

- But God is very pleased with
- He is more pleased with her

Judges 5:25

brought him butter

Here "butter" refers to curdled milk. This was the best milk and a favorite drink among Jael's people. Alternate translation: "brought him yogurt" or "brought him curds"

a dish fit for princes

This phrase means the dish was of the best quality because princes were given the best things. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

   • nobles

Translation Words - UST

   • was suitable for kings

ULT

25 Water he requested, milk she gave, in a bowl suitable for nobles, she brought curdled milk.

UST

25 Sisera asked for some water, and Jael gave him some milk. She brought him some yogurt in a bowl that was suitable for kings.

Judges 5:26

She put her hand to the tent peg

"Jael grabbed the tent peg with her left hand"

tent peg

This is a pointed piece of wood or metal, like a large nail, that is hammered into the ground to hold down a corner of a tent. See how you translated this in Judges 4:21.

her right hand to the workman's hammer

This can be stated as a complete sentence. Alternate translation: "she grabbed a hammer with her right hand" (See: Ellipsis)

hammer

This is a heavy tool made of wood used to hit a tent peg into the ground. See how you translated this in Judges 4:21.

Sisera

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 4:2.

Translation Words - ULT

- her hand
- his head

Translation Words - UST

- with her left hand
- his head

ULT

26 They reached out, her hand to the tent peg, and her right hand to a hammer of workmen; she struck Sisera, she shattered his head. She struck through and she pierced his temple.

UST

26 Then, when he was asleep, she reached for a tent peg with her left hand, and she reached for a hammer with her right hand. She hit Sisera hard with it and crushed his head. She pounded the tent peg right through his head.

Judges 5:27

limp

without strength or movement

he was violently killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "she killed him" or "he died" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- violently destroyed
- he bowed
- he bowed
- he bowed

Translation Words - UST

- He was dead
- He collapsed
- he sank down
- limp

ULT

27 Between her feet, he bowed, he fell, he lay down. Between her feet he bowed, he fell; at the place where he bowed, there he fell violently destroyed.

UST

27 He collapsed at her feet and he fell and he layed there and did not move. At her feet he sank down, and there he fell limp. He was dead.

Judges 5:28

the lattice

This is a frame in the window made of crossed wood.

Why has it taken his chariot so long to come? Why have the hoofbeats of the horses that pull his chariots been delayed?

Both of these questions mean the same thing. These two statements can be combined. Alternate translation: "Why is it taking Sisera so long to arrive home" (See: Parallelism)

taken his chariot...Why have the hoofbeats of the horses that pull his chariots

Both of these represent Sisera. Alternate translation: "taken Sisera... Why has he" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- has...delayed
- of his chariots

Translation Words - UST

- is he taking so long
- of the wheels of his chariot

ULT

28 Through the window she had looked down and lamented, the mother of Sisera through the lattice window. 'Why has his chariot delayed in coming? Why are the hoofbeats of his chariots late?'

UST

28 Sisera's mother looked out from her window. She said, 'Why is he taking so long to come home in his chariot? Why do I not hear the sound of the wheels of his chariot?'

Judges 5:29

wisest princesses

A "princess" is the daughter of a king, but a "princess" can also mean female advisers to the king's family. Alternate translation: "wisest ladies"

she gave herself the same answer

"she said to herself the same thing"

Translation Words - ULT

- answered
- continued
- The wisest of

Translation Words - UST

- replied to her
- kept consoling
- wisest

ULT

29 The wisest of her princesses answered, yet she continued her utterance to herself:

UST

29 Her wisest princesses replied to her, and she kept consoling herself by repeating those words:

Judges 5:30

Have they not found and divided up the plunder—a womb...plunder?

The women use a question to emphasize that they believe this is what certainly happened. Alternate translation: "They must have so much plunder that it is taking a long time to divide it. They have... plunder." (See: Rhetorical Question)

a womb, two wombs for every man...of those who plunder?

The women use a question to emphasize that they believe this is what certainly happened. Alternate translation: "There must be a womb, two wombs for every man...of those who plunder." (See: Rhetorical Question)

a womb, two wombs for every man

Here "womb" represents a woman. Sisera's mother believes Sisera's men have captured many women. Alternate translation: "Each soldier will receive a woman or two" (See: Synecdoche)

dyed fabric

"colored cloth" or "colored clothes"

embroidered

having designs made of colored threads

for the necks of those who plunder

Here "necks" represents Sisera's soldiers. Alternate translation: "for the soldiers who plunder to wear" (See: Synecdoche)

ULT

30 'Are they not finding, are they dividing up spoil, a maiden, two maidens for every warrior, spoil of dyed fabrics for Sisera, spoil of dyed fabrics, embroidered, dyed fabric embroidered on both sides for the necks as spoil?'

UST

30 'Perhaps they are dividing up the things and the people they captured after the battle. Each soldier will get one or two women who will bear them children. Sisera will get some beautiful robes, and some beautiful embroidered robes for me.'

Judges 5:31

like the sun when it rises in its might

The people of Israel wish to be like the sun that rises because no nation's army is powerful enough to stop the sunrise. (See: Simile)

the land had peace

Here "the land" represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "and the people of Israel lived peacefully" (See: Metonymy)

for forty years

"for 40 years" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- may...perish
- But may those who love him
- Yahweh
- your enemies
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- I hope that...will die as Sisera did
- And I desire that all those who love you...be
- Yahweh
- your enemies
- in the land

ULT

31 So may all of your enemies perish, Yahweh! But may those who love him be as the coming forth of the sun in its strength." Then the land was tranquil forty years.

UST

31 But that is not what happened! Yahweh, I hope that all your enemies will die as Sisera did! And I desire that all those who love you, Yahweh, be as strong as the sun when it rises! There was peace again in the land for forty years.

Judges 6

Judges 6 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section about Gideon. (Chapters 6-8)

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel's punishment

In Judges, Israel's actions are connected to their obedience to Yahweh. When Israel does evil, they are oppressed. (See: evil, wicked, unpleasant and oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor)

Judges 6:1

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in Judges 2:11. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: Metaphor)

the hand of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Also, "hand" represents control. Alternate translation: "the control of the people of Midian" or "the control of the Midianites" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- into the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- Yahweh
- he
- the Israelites
- the people of

ULT

[1] The sons of Israel did this evil in the eyes of Yahweh, so Yahweh gave them over into the hand of Midian seven years.

UST

[1] Again the Israelites did what Yahweh said was very evil. So he allowed the people of Midian to conquer them and rule them for seven years.

Judges 6:2

The power of Midian oppressed Israel

Here "the power of Midian" refers to the people of Midian. Alternate translation: "The people of Midian were more powerful than the people of Israel and they oppressed them" (See: Metonymy)

dens

places in the rocky cliffs that would provide shelter

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Israel
- the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- The people of Midian

ULT

2 Then the hand of Midian prevailed over Israel. On account of the presence of Midian, the sons of Israel made the dens for themselves which were in the mountains, the caves, and the strongholds.

UST

2 The people of Midian treated the Israelites so cruelly that the Israelites fled to the mountains. There they made places to live in caves and places to be safe.

Judges 6:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- even sons
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- and people from the east
- the Israelites

ULT

3 Now it would happen whenever Israel sowed, that Midian and Amalek would come up, even sons of the east would come up against him.

UST

3 At the time when the Israelites planted their crops in the fields, the people of Midian and Amalek and people from the east attacked the Israelites.

Judges 6:4

They would set up their army

"The army would encamp" or "The army would set up their tents"

Translation Words - ULT

- in Israel
- nor donkey
- the land
- neither sheep

Translation Words - UST

- for the Israelites
- and the donkeys
- the crops
- and took away the sheep

ULT

4 They encamped around them and they ruined the produce of the land as far as your coming into Gaza. As a result means of sustaining life would not remain in Israel, neither sheep, nor cattle, nor donkey.

UST

4 They set up tents in the area, and then destroyed the crops as far south as Gaza. They did not leave anything for the Israelites to eat and took away the sheep, the cattle and the donkeys.

Judges 6:5

Whenever they and their livestock and tents came up

The land of Midian was south of the land of Israel, near the Red Sea. It was common to use the phrase "came up" when speaking of traveling from Midian to Israel. Alternate translation: "Whenever the Midianites brought their livestock and tents to the land of Israel"

they would come as a swarm of locusts

The Midianites are compared to a swarm of locusts because they came in with a great number of people and their livestock ate everything that grew. (See: Simile)

it was impossible to count

This is an exaggeration, a hyperbole, showing the number is very great. (See: Hyperbole)

ULT

5 When they and their livestock would come up, along with their tents, they would come up as an abundance of a locust swarm because of the multitude. Of them and of their camels there was no counting thus they came into the land in order to destroy it.

UST

5 They came into Israel with their tents and their livestock like a swarm of locusts. There were so many of them that arrived riding on their camels that no one could count. They stayed so they could ruin the Israelites' livelihoods.

Judges 6:6

Midian weakened

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. (See: Metonymy)

called out to Yahweh

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "prayed to Yahweh for help" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- so...cried out

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- Yahweh
- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- So finally...pleaded for...to help them

ULT

6 Israel was severely impoverished because of the presence of Midian, so the sons of Israel cried out to Yahweh.

UST

6 The people of Midian took almost everything the Israelites owned. So finally the Israelites pleaded for Yahweh to help them.

Judges 6:7

called out to Yahweh

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "prayed to Yahweh for help"
(See: Idiom)

because of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Alternate translation:
"because of the Midianites" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- Yahweh
- the Israelites

ULT
7 Now it happened that when the sons of Israel cried out to Yahweh on account of Midian,

UST
7 When the Israelites pleaded with Yahweh to help them because of what the people from Midian had done to them,

Judges 6:8

I brought you up from Egypt

"I led you out of Egypt"

the house of slavery

Moses speaks of Egypt as if it were a house where people keep slaves. Alternate translation: "the place where you were slaves" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- and I have brought...out
- the sons of
- a prophet
- the God of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- myself
- out of Egypt
- slavery
- of the house of

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- them
- a prophet
- the God of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- them
- Israel
- I
- out of Egypt
- you all were slaves
- out of the places where

ULT

8 that Yahweh sent a man, a prophet to the sons of Israel. He said to them, "Thus says Yahweh, the God of Israel: 'I myself, have brought you up out of Egypt, and I have brought you out of the house of slavery.

UST

8 Yahweh sent to them a prophet, who said, "This is what Yahweh the God of Israel says, 'I brought your ancestors out of Egypt, out of the places where you all were slaves.

Judges 6:9

from the hand

In this phrase "hand" represents power or control. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- from the hand of
- I rescued
- their land

Translation Words - UST

- from
- But I rescued
- this land...it

ULT

9 I rescued you from the hand of Egypt, and from the hand of all of those oppressing you. I drove them out of your presence, and I have surely given to you their land.

UST

9 But I rescued them from the leaders of Egypt and from all the others who oppressed you. I expelled their enemies from this land, and gave it to you.

Judges 6:10

obeyed my voice

- Here "my voice" represents what Yahweh commanded. Alternate translation: "obeyed my command" or "obeyed me" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- you shall...revere
- your God
- the gods of
- Yahweh
- the Amorite
- my voice

Translation Words - UST

- you must...worship
- your God
- the gods they worship
- Yahweh
- of the Amorites
- me

ULT

10 I said to you, "I am Yahweh your God; you shall not revere the gods of the Amorite, when you are living in their land." But you have not heeded my voice.'"

UST

10 I told you and your ancestors, "I am Yahweh, your God. You are now in the land of the Amorites, but you must not worship the gods they worship here in this land in which you are living." But you did not obey me.'"

Judges 6:11

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the story line. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

Ophrah

This is the name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

Abiezrite

This is a people group named after their ancestor Abiezer. (See: How to Translate Names)

was separating out the wheat by beating it on the floor

This is a process called "threshing." Gideon was beating the wheat against the floor to separate the wheat grain from the rest of the wheat plant.

Translation Words - ULT

- his son
- Yahweh
- the angel of
- wheat

Translation Words - UST

- Joash's son
- Yahweh
- the angel of
- wheat…the grain

ULT

11 Now the angel of Yahweh came and sat beneath the oak which was in Ophrah, which belonged to Joash, the Abiezrite. Meanwhile Gideon, his son, was threshing out wheat at the winepress in order to hide from the presence of Midian.

UST

11 One day the angel of Yahweh appeared and sat under a big oak tree at the town of Ophrah. (That tree belonged to Joash, who was from the clan of Abiezer.) Joash's son Gideon was threshing wheat in the pit where they pressed grapes to make wine. He was threshing the grain there in order to hide it from the people of Midian.

Judges 6:12

appeared to him

"went to him"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- O warrior of
- the angel of

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- You mighty warrior
- messenger

ULT

12 Then the angel of Yahweh appeared to him and declared to him, "Yahweh is with you, O warrior of valor!"

UST

12 Yahweh went over to Gideon and said to him, "You mighty warrior, Yahweh is helping you!"

Judges 6:13

my master

Gideon uses the word "master" as a polite way to greet a stranger. He does not realize he is speaking to Yahweh in the form of an angel or a man.

Where are all his wonderful deeds that our fathers told us about, when they said, 'Did not Yahweh bring us up from Egypt?'

Gideon uses a question to challenge the stranger's statement that Yahweh was with him. Also, the direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "We have not seen any wonderful deeds like the ones our fathers told us about when Yahweh brought them up from Egypt." (See: Rhetorical Question and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

gave us into the hand of Midian

The phrase "gave us into" means Yahweh allowed the Israelites to be defeated. Alternate translation: "allowed the Midianites to defeat us" (See: Idiom)

gave us into the hand

Here "hand" represents power or control. (See: Metonymy)

of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Alternate translation: "of the Midianites" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

13 Gideon said to him, "With me, my lord? If Yahweh is with us, then why has all of this come to us? Where are all of his miraculous workings that our fathers recounted to us, saying, 'Did not Yahweh bring us up out of Egypt?' But now Yahweh has forsaken us and given us over into the grasp of Midian."

UST

13 Gideon replied, "Sir, if Yahweh is helping us, why have all these bad things happened to us? We heard about all the miracles that Yahweh performed for our ancestors. We heard people tell us about how he rescued them from being slaves in Egypt. But now Yahweh has abandoned us, and we are ruled by the people from Midian."

Translation Words - ULT

- my lord
- his miraculous workings
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- out of Egypt
- our fathers

Translation Words - UST

- Sir
- the miracles that Yahweh performed for
- Yahweh
- he
- Yahweh (2)
- from being slaves in Egypt
- our ancestors...people

Judges 6:14

Yahweh looked at him

"Yahweh looked at Gideon"

from the hand

Here "hand" represents power or control. (See: Metonymy)

of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Alternate translation:
"of the Midianites" (See: Metonymy)

Have I not sent you?

Yahweh uses a question to ensure Gideon that he is sending him. Here "sent" means Yahweh has appointed
Gideon with a specific task. Alternate translation: "I, Yahweh, am sending you!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

> **ULT**
> **14** Then Yahweh turned to him and said,
> "Go in this strength of yours and you
> shall deliver Israel from the grasp of
> Midian. Have I not sent you?"
>
> **UST**
> **14** Then Yahweh turned toward him and
> said, "You have the strength to rescue
> the Israelites from the people of Midian.
> I am sending you to do that!"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel
- from the grasp of
- and you shall deliver
- in...strength of yours
- Go

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the Israelites
- from
- to rescue
- You have the strength
- walk, walked

Judges 6:15

Please, Lord

Gideon now calls the person "Lord" instead of "my master" as in
Judges 6:13. Here it seems Gideon either knows or suspects that he
is speaking with Yahweh.

how can I deliver Israel?

Gideon uses a question to emphasize that he does not think he can
rescue the Israelites. Alternate translation: "I cannot possibly rescue
the Israelites!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

See, my family

"Look at my family and me and you will see that it"

in Manasseh

"in the tribe of Manasseh"

in my father's house

Here "house" represents a family. Alternate translation: "in my father's family" or "in my family" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

15 Then he replied to him, "Please, my lord! In what manner will I deliver Israel? See, my clan is the weakest in Manasseh, and I am the most insignificant in the house of my father."

UST

15 Gideon replied, "But Lord, how can I rescue the Israelites? My clan is the least significant in the whole tribe descended from Manasseh, and I am the least significant person in my whole family!"

Translation Words - ULT

- my lord
- Israel
- in the house of
- my father
- will I deliver

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- the Israelites
- in my whole family
- in my whole family
- can I rescue

Judges 6:16

I will be with you

Here "be with you" is an idiom that means Yahweh will help and bless Gideon. (See: Idiom)

as one man

You can state the full meaning explicitly. Alternate translation: "as easily as if you were fighting only one man" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh

ULT

16 Then Yahweh said to him, "Because I will be with you, indeed you shall destroy Midian as one man."

UST

16 Yahweh said to him, "I will help you. So you will defeat the Midianite army as easily as if you were fighting only one man!"

Judges 6:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a sign
- favor

Translation Words - UST

- which will prove that
- you are truly pleased with me

ULT

17 He replied to him, "If indeed I have found <u>favor</u> in your eyes, then perform <u>a sign</u> for me that it is you speaking to me.

UST

17 Gideon replied, "If <u>you are truly pleased with me</u>, do something <u>which will prove that</u> you who are speaking to me are really Yahweh.

Judges 6:18

set it before you

"place it in front of you"

Translation Words - ULT

- then I will bring out
- your returning
- Myself
- my offering

Translation Words - UST

- and bring back
- you return
- Very well, I
- an offering

ULT

18 Please, do not depart from this place, until my coming to you then I will bring out my offering and I will set it before you." So he said, "Myself, I will stay until your returning."

UST

18 But do not go away until I go and bring back an offering to you." Yahweh answered, "Very well, I will stay here until you return."

Judges 6:19

from an ephah of flour

If it is necessary to use a modern measurement; here is one way of doing it. Alternate translation: "with 22 liters of flour" (See: Biblical Volume)

broth

water that has had food, such as meat, cooked in it

them to him

"them to the angel of God"

Translation Words - ULT

- and brought them out
- unleavened bread

Translation Words - UST

- and took it
- and baked some bread without yeast

ULT

19 Then Gideon went and he prepared a young goat and from an ephah of flour, unleavened bread. He placed the meat in a basket, and he put the broth in a pot and brought them out to him to beneath the oak tree, and he presented them.

UST

19 Gideon hurried to his home. He killed a young goat and cooked it. Then he took a about twenty-two liters of flour and baked some bread without yeast. Then he put the cooked meat in a basket, and put the broth from the meat in a pot, and took it to Yahweh, who was sitting under the tree.

Judges 6:20

angel of God

This is the same as the angel of Yahweh. Alternate translation: "God, who was in the form of an angel" or "God"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the angel of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the angel of

ULT

20 Then the angel of God said to him, "Take the meat and the unleavened bread and place them on this rock, and pour out the broth," and he did so.

UST

20 Then the angel of God said to him, "Put the meat and the bread on this rock. Then pour the broth on top of it." So Gideon did that.

Judges 6:21

angel of Yahweh

In 6:11-24 Yahweh appears to Gideon in the form of an angel. See how you translated this in Judges 6:11.

went away

"disappeared"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- in his hand
- and consumed
- the angel of
- the fire
- went away

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- in his hand
- and burned up
- messenger
- A fire
- disappeared

ULT

21 Then the angel of Yahweh stretched out the edge of the staff that was in his hand. He touched the meat and the unleavened bread; the fire went up out of the rock and consumed the meat and the unleavened bread. Then the angel of Yahweh went away out of his sight.

UST

21 Then Yahweh reached out and touched the meat and bread with the walking stick that was in his hand. A fire flamed up from the rock and burned up the meat and the bread that Gideon had brought! And then Yahweh disappeared.

Judges 6:22

angel of Yahweh

In 6:11-24 Yahweh appears to Gideon in the form of an angel. See how you translated this in Judges 6:11.

Ah, Lord Yahweh!

The word "Ah" here shows that Gideon was very frightened. (See: Exclamations)

seen the angel of Yahweh face to face

This phrase refers to two people being close to each other. Alternate translation: "really seen the angel of Yahweh" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- O my Lord
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the angel of
- the angel of
- face
- face

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- Yahweh
- you
- who had appeared in the form of an angel and talked with him
- when you had the form of an angel
- face
- face

ULT

22 When Gideon saw that he was the angel of Yahweh, Gideon lamented, "Alas, O my Lord Yahweh, for because of this I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

UST

22 When Gideon realized that it was really Yahweh who had appeared in the form of an angel and talked with him, he exclaimed, "O, Yahweh, I have seen you face-to-face when you had the form of an angel! So I will surely die!"

Judges 6:23

Yahweh said to him

Apparently Yahweh spoke to Gideon from heaven. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Do...be afraid
- Yahweh
- Peace be

Translation Words - UST

- Do...be afraid
- Yahweh
- peace, peaceful, peacemakers

ULT

23 But Yahweh replied to him, "Peace be unto you! Do not be afraid, you will not die."

UST

23 But Yahweh called to him and said, "Do not be afraid! You will not die!"

Judges 6:24

To this day

This means to the time when the book of Judges was written.

Ophrah

Translate the name of this town as you did in Judges 6:11.

the clan of Abiezer

Translate the name of this people group as you did in Judges 6:11.

Translation Words - ULT

- an altar
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh is
- Peace
- and he named

Translation Words - UST

- an altar
- to worship Yahweh
- Yahweh
- is Peace
- He named

ULT

24 So Gideon built an altar there to Yahweh and he named it Yahweh is Peace. To this day it still stands at Ophrah of the Abiezerite.

UST

24 Then Gideon built an altar to worship Yahweh there. He named it 'Yahweh is Peace.' That altar is still there at the town of Ophrah, in the land of the Abiezrites.

Judges 6:25

a second bull

The word "second" is the ordinal number for "two." Alternate translation: "another bull" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

that is beside it

"that is beside the altar of Baal"

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar of
- Yahweh
- belongs to your father
- belongs to your father (2)
- the young bull
- cut down

Translation Words - UST

- the altar that
- Yahweh
- belongs to your father
- your father built (2)
- the...bull
- cut down

ULT

25 Now it happened on that night that Yahweh said to him, "Take the young bull that belongs to your father, and the second bull seven years old, break into pieces the altar of Baal that belongs to your father, and cut down the Asherah that is beside it.

UST

25 That night Yahweh said to Gideon, "Take the second-best bull that belongs to your father, the bull that is seven years old, and tear down the altar that your father built to worship the god Baal. Also cut down the pole for worshiping the goddess Asherah that is there beside it.

Judges 6:26

on the top of this place of refuge

The city of Ophrah was on top of a hill. Israelites fled there for refuge from the Midianites.

construct it the correct way

"place the stones in an orderly manner" or "and build it properly"

Translation Words - ULT

- an altar
- your God
- to Yahweh
- you shall cut down
- the top of
- a whole burnt offering

Translation Words - UST

- a stone altar
- your God
- to worship me...Yahweh
- you cut down
- hill
- and make a fire to burn...as a burnt offering to me

ULT

26 You shall build an altar to Yahweh your God on the top of this place of refuge in the usual arrangement. Then you shall take the second bull and you shall offer a whole burnt offering, on the wood pieces from the Asherah that you shall cut down."

UST

26 Then build a stone altar to worship me, your God Yahweh, here on this hill. Take the wood from the Asherah pole you cut down and make a fire to burn the meat of the bull as a burnt offering to me."

Judges 6:27

did as Yahweh had told him

This refers to Yahweh's command in Judges 6:25-26.

Translation Words - ULT

- he was afraid of
- Yahweh
- his father
- the household of

Translation Words - UST

- he was afraid what...would do to him if they found out that he had done that
- Yahweh
- the other members of his family
- the other members of his family

Judges 6:28

got up

"got up out of bed" or "woke up"

the altar of Baal was broken down, and the Asherah that was beside it was cut down, and the second bull had been offered on the altar that had been built

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they noticed that someone had broken down the altar of Baal, cut down the Asherah that was beside it, and built an altar and sacrificed the second bull on it" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar of
- the altar
- had been cut down

Translation Words - UST

- the altar to
- a…altar…it
- was gone

ULT

28 When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal was torn down, the Asherah that was beside it had been cut down, and the second bull had been offered on the altar that had been built.

UST

28 Early the next morning, as soon as the men got up, they saw that the altar to Baal was in ruins, and the Asherah pole was gone. They saw that there was a new altar there, and on it was what remained from the bull they had sacrificed.

Judges 6:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- and searched

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- After they investigated

Judges 6:30

he may be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we may kill him as punishment" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar of
- your son
- he cut down
- so that he may die
- Bring out

Translation Words - UST

- s altar
- your son
- cut down
- He must be put to death
- Bring...out here

ULT

30 Then the men of the city said to Joash, "Bring out your son so that he may die, because he tore down the altar of Baal, and because he cut down the Asherah that was beside it."

UST

30 The men of the town said to Joash, " Bring your son out here! He must be put to death, because he destroyed our god Baal's altar and cut down the Asherah pole where we worship!"

Judges 6:31

Will you plead the case for Baal?

Joash uses a question to emphasize that a human should not have to defend a god. Alternate translation: "You should not have to defend Baal." (See: Rhetorical Question)

plead the case

"make a defense" or "give an excuse"

Will you save him?

Joash uses a question to emphasize that a human should not have to rescue a god. Alternate translation: "You should not have to save Baal." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- his altar
- a god
- stood
- Will...really help

Translation Words - UST

- his altar
- truly a god
- came
- who tries to defend

ULT

31 Joash said to all who stood against him, "Will you really contend on behalf of Baal? Will you really help him? Whoever contends for him, he will be put to death while it is still the morning. If he is a god, let him contend for himself when someone tears down his altar."

UST

31 But Joash replied to those who came against him, "Are you trying to defend Baal? Are you trying to argue his case? Anyone who tries to defend Baal should be executed by tomorrow morning! If Baal is truly a god, he ought to be able to defend himself, when someone tears down his altar!"

Judges 6:32

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. It means "let Baal defend himself." (See: How to Translate Names)

because he said

"because Joash said"

Translation Words - ULT

- his altar
- Therefore...he called

Translation Words - UST

- Baal's altar
- people called

ULT

32 Therefore on that day he called him "Jerub Baal," saying, "May the Baal contend against him," because he had torn down his altar.

UST

32 From that time, people called Gideon Jerub Baal, which means "Baal should defend himself," because he had torn down Baal's altar.

Judges 6:33

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the story line. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

gathered together

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "gathered together as an army" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- and the sons of the
- and they crossed over
- assembled themselves

Translation Words - UST

- and the people from
- They crossed the Jordan River to attack the Israelites
- gathered

ULT

33 Now all of Midian, Amalek, and the sons of the east assembled themselves together, and they crossed over and they camped in the Valley of Jezreel.

UST

33 Soon after that, the armies of the people of Midian and of Amalek and the people from the east gathered together. They crossed the Jordan River to attack the Israelites. They set up their tents in the Valley of Jezreel.

Judges 6:34

came over Gideon

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "took control of Gideon" (See: Idiom)

clan of Abiezer

Translate the name of this people group as you did in Judges 6:11.

so they might follow him

The words "to battle" are understood. Alternate translation: "so they might follow him to battle" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- But the Spirit of
- Yahweh
- thus he summoned
- the trumpet

Translation Words - UST

- Then...s Spirit
- Yahweh
- So...came to him
- a ram's horn

ULT

34 But the Spirit of Yahweh clothed Gideon. As a result he blew the trumpet, thus he summoned Abiezer after him.

UST

34 Then Yahweh's Spirit took control of Gideon. He blew a ram's horn to summon the men to prepare to fight. So the men of the clan of Abiezer came to him.

Judges 6:35

and they too, were called out to follow him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "calling them out to follow him" (See: Active or Passive)

to Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali

These all represent the people of each tribe. Alternate translation: "to the tribes of Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- and he summoned

Translation Words - UST

- cry, cry out, outcry

ULT

35 Then he sent messengers in all of Manasseh, <u>and he summoned</u> him also after him. He also sent messengers to Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali, and they went up to meet them.

UST

35 He also sent messengers throughout the tribes descended from Manasseh, Asher, Zebulun, and Naphtali to tell their soldiers to come, and all of them came.

Judges 6:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the true God
- Israel
- by my hand
- delivering

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the Israelite people
- are truly going to enable me
- to rescue

ULT

36 Then Gideon said to the true God, "If it is you delivering Israel by my hand, just as you have spoken,

UST

36 Then Gideon said to God, "If you are truly going to enable me to rescue the Israelite people as you promised,

Judges 6:37

woolen fleece

the woolly coat of a sheep

dew

water that forms on plants during the night

then I will know that you will

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "this will be a sign from you, and then I will know that you will" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- I
- by my hand
- you will deliver
- the ground
- then I will know

Translation Words - UST

- the people of Israel
- I
- I am the one you will enable
- to rescue
- the ground
- then I will know

ULT

37 Look, I am putting this fleece of wool on the threshing floor. If dew shall be upon the fleece, only it, but on all of the ground it is dry, then I will know that you will deliver Israel by my hand, just as you have spoken."

UST

37 confirm it by doing this: Tonight I will put a dry wool fleece on the ground where I thresh the grain. Tomorrow morning, if the fleece is wet with dew but the ground is dry, then I will know that I am the one you will enable to rescue the people of Israel as you promised."

Judges 6:38

Gideon rose

"Gideon got out of bed"

wrung

twist and squeeze something to remove water

ULT

38 Now it happened afterwards that he rose early on the next day, and he pressed the fleece together. He wrung out dew from the fleece, the amount that fills the basin with water.

UST

38 And that is what happened. When Gideon got up the next morning, he picked up the fleece, and squeezed out a whole bowlful of water!

Judges 6:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the true God
- the ground

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the ground

ULT

39 Then Gideon said to the true God, "Do not let your anger burn against me, but may I speak only this time. May I please test only this time with the fleece? May it be, I pray, dry on the fleece, only it, but on all of the ground may there be dew."

UST

39 Then Gideon said to God, "Do not be angry with me, but let me ask you to do one more thing. Tonight I will put the fleece out again. This time, let the fleece remain dry, while the ground is wet with the dew."

Judges 6:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- the ground

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the ground

ULT

40 So God did this during that night. It was dry on the fleece, only it, but on all of the ground there was dew.

UST

40 So that night, God did what Gideon asked him to do. The next morning the fleece was dry, but the ground was covered with dew.

Judges 7

Judges 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The account of Gideon continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

God gets all of the credit

God said, "There are too many soldiers for me to give you victory over the Midianites. Make sure that Israel will not boast against me, saying, 'Our own power has saved us.'" By lowering the number of fighting soldiers, it emphasizes that the victory is achieved through God's power. (See: glory, glorious, glorify)

Judges 7:1

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated his name in
Judges 6:32.

they encamped

"they set up their camp"

spring of Harod...hill of Moreh

These are the names of places. (See: How to Translate Names)

The camp of Midian was to their north

Here "Midian" represents the Midianite army. Alternate translation:
"The Midianite army set up their camp to the north of the Israelite
army" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people

Translation Words - UST

- his men

ULT
1 Then Jerubbaal (that is, Gideon), rose
up early, and all of the people who were
with him, and they encamped beside
the spring of Harod. The camp of
Midian was northward from him,
toward the hill of Moreh in the valley.

UST
1 The next morning, Jerub Baal (his
name is also Gideon) and his men got
up early and went as far as the spring of
Harod. The army of Midian was camped
north of them, in the valley near the hill
of Moreh.

Judges 7:2

for me to give you victory over the Midianites

The word "victory" is an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb or an adjective. Alternate translation: "for me to allow you to defeat the Midianites" or "for me to cause you to be victorious over the Midianites" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Our own power has saved us

Here "power" represents the people themselves. Alternate translation: "We have saved ourselves without God's help" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel
- ino their hand
- My own hand
- the people
- has saved

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- all of you to fight…and your army defeats them
- that they defeated their enemies by themselves, without my help
- soldiers
- that they defeated their enemies by themselves, without my help

ULT

2 Yahweh said to Gideon, "Too many are the people who are with you for my giving Midian ino their hand, lest Israel get glory themselves over me, saying, ' My own hand has saved me.'

UST

2 Yahweh said to Gideon, "You have too many soldiers with you. If I allow all of you to fight the army of Midian and your army defeats them, they will boast to me that they defeated their enemies by themselves, without my help.

Judges 7:3

Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

proclaim in the ears of the people

Here "the ears" refers to the whole person. Alternate translation: "proclaim to the people" (See: Synecdoche)

Whoever is afraid, whoever trembles

Both of these phrases have the same meaning. (See: Parallelism)

trembles

This word describes fear that causes a person to uncontrollably shake. Alternate translation: "shakes with fear"

let him return

You can make explicit where he will go. Alternate translation: "let him return to his home" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Mount Gilead

This is the name of a mountain in the region of Gilead. (See: How to Translate Names)

twenty-two thousand

"22,000" (See: Numbers)

ten thousand remained

The word "people" or "men" is understood. Alternate translation: "10,000 people remained" or "10,000 men remained" (See: Ellipsis)

ten thousand

"10,000" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- announce
- let him return
- Gilead
- the people
- the people
- So...turned back

ULT

3 Now therefore, announce in the ears of the people saying, 'Whoever is afraid and trembling, let him return and depart from Mount Gilead.'" So twenty-two thousand of the people turned back, but ten thousand remained.

UST

3 So tell the men, 'Whoever among you is timid or afraid may leave us and depart from Mount Gilead.'" So after Gideon told that to them, twenty-two thousand of them went home. Only ten thousand men were left there.

Translation Words - UST

- tell
- may leave us
- Gilead
- the men
- them
- So after Gideon told that to them...went home

Judges 7:4

I will make their number smaller for you there

Here "number" represents the army. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "there, I will show you who to send home so the army will have less men" (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the people
- will go
- will go (2)
- will...go (3)
- will...go

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- men
- walk, walked
- will go (2)
- walk, walked (3)
- will...go

ULT

4 Then Yahweh said to Gideon, "Still the people are too numerous. Bring them down to the water, and I will further refine him for you there. So it will be whoever I will say to you, 'This one will go with you,' he will go with you. But anyone of whom I will say to you, 'This one will not go with you,' he will not go."

UST

4 But Yahweh told Gideon, "There are still too many men! Take them down to the spring, and there I will choose from among them, which ones will go with you and which ones will not go."

Judges 7:5

Gideon brought

The word "brought" can be translated as "took" or "led." (See: Go and Come)

laps

to drink by licking with the tongue

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the people
- kneels down

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the men
- down

Judges 7:6

Three hundred men

"300 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- with their hand
- the people
- knelt down

Translation Words - UST

- used their hands
- the others
- down

ULT

6 Now it happened that the number of those who lapped with their hand to their mouth was three hundred men, but all of the rest of the people knelt down on their knees to drink water.

UST

6 So when they drank, only three hundred men used their hands to bring water to their mouths. All the others drank by kneeling down and putting their mouths into the water.

Judges 7:7

three hundred men

"300 men" (See: Numbers)

I will rescue you and give you victory

Here "you" is plural and refers to Gideon and the Israelites. (See: Forms of You)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- into your hand
- the...people
- I will deliver
- So let...go back

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- the others
- I will help
- Let...go

ULT

7 Then Yahweh said to Gideon, "With the three hundred men those who lapped, I will deliver you and I will give Midian over into your hand. So let the other people go back each one to his own place."

UST

7 Then Yahweh told Gideon, "The three hundred men who lapped the water from their hands will be your army! I will help them defeat the Midianite army. Let all the others go home!"

Judges 7:8

So those who were chosen

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So those whom Yahweh chose" (See: Active or Passive)

took their supplies and their trumpets

Here "their" refers to the Israelite soldiers who were leaving the army.

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the story line. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- into their hand
- the people
- their trumpets
- he retained

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- hand
- Gideon's…men
- rams' horns (used as trumpets
- strength, strengthen, strong

ULT

8 Then the people took provision into their hand and their trumpets but the other men of Israel he sent away, each man to his tents, except for the three hundred of the men he retained. Now the camp of Midian was below him in the valley.

UST

8 So Gideon's three hundred men collected the food and rams' horns (used as trumpets) from all the other men, and then he sent them home. The men of Midian were camping in the valley below Gideon.

Judges 7:9

Attack the camp, for I am going to give you victory over it

Here "camp" refers to the whole Midianite army. The word "victory" is an abstract noun that can be translated as a verb or an adjective. Alternate translation: "Attack the Midianites at their camp, for I am going to help you defeat them" or "Attack the Midianites at their camp, for I am going to cause you to be victorious over them" (See: Metonymy and Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- into your hand

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- I will enable your men to defeat them

ULT

9 Now it happened during that night Yahweh said to him, "Arise! Go down into the camp, for I have given him over into your hand.

UST

9 During that night, Yahweh said to Gideon, "Get up and go down to their camp, and you will hear something that will convince you that I will enable your men to defeat them.

Judges 7:10

afraid to go down

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "afraid to go down to attack" (See: Ellipsis)

Purah

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

• your armor bearer

Translation Words - UST

• your servant

ULT

10 But if you are afraid to go down, go down, you and Purah your armor bearer to the camp,

UST

10 But if you are afraid to go by yourself, take your servant Purah with you.

Judges 7:11

your courage will be strengthened

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "what you hear will be encourage you" (See: Active or Passive)

guard posts

places around the edge of an area where soldiers stand to watch for an enemy army

Translation Words - ULT

- your hands
- will be encouraged
- his armor bearer

Translation Words - UST

- you will be very encouraged
- you will be very encouraged
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

11 and you shall hear what they are speaking, and afterwards your hands will be encouraged and you shall go down against the camp." So he went down, he and Purah his armor bearer, to the edge of the fifty who were in the camp.

UST

11 Go down and listen to what some of the Midian soldiers are saying. Then you will be very encouraged, and you will be ready to attack their camp." So Gideon took Purah with him, and they went down to the edge of the enemy camp.

Judges 7:12

as thick as a cloud of locusts

Here "cloud" means a swarm. The author speaks of the army as if it were a swarm of locusts to emphasize how many soldiers there were. (See: Simile)

Their camels were more…in number than the grains of the sand on the seashore

The author uses a hyperbole, an exaggeration, to emphasize that there were very many camels. (See: Hyperbole)

Their camels were more than could be counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Their camels were more than anyone could count" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of

Translation Words - UST

- from

ULT

12 Now Midian, Amalek, and all of the sons of the east were lying down in the valley, as a locust swarm in abundance. As far as their camels they were innumerable, as the sand that is along the edge of the sea in abundance.

UST

12 The armies of the people of Midian and Amalek and from the east had set up their tents and looked like a swarm of locusts. It seemed that their camels were too many to count, like the grains of sand on the seashore.

Judges 7:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- barley
- a dream
- a dream
- I have dreamed
- so that it fell
- so that...collapsed

Translation Words - UST

- bread
- barley
- a dream
- a dream
- I just had
- so hard that
- and collapsed

ULT

13 Gideon came, and look, a man was telling a dream to his neighbor. He said, "Look! I have dreamed a dream, and look, a round loaf of barley bread was tumbling into the camp of Midian. It came as far as the tent, and struck it so that it fell and turned it upside down, so that the tent collapsed."

UST

13 Gideon crept closer and heard one man telling a friend about a dream. He said, "I just had a dream, and in the dream I saw a round loaf of barley bread tumble down into our Midian camp. It struck a tent so hard that the tent turned upside down and collapsed!"

Judges 7:14

This is nothing other than the sword of Gideon

Here "the sword of Gideon" refers to Gideon's army attacking. Alternate translation: "The loaf of barley bread in your dream must be the army of Gideon" (See: Metonymy)

God has given him victory over Midian

This future event is spoken of as if it were a past event. This emphasizes that it will certainly happen. Alternate translation: "God will certainly help the Israelites defeat the Midianites" (See: Predictive Past)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- God
- Israel
- into his hand
- the sword of

Translation Words - UST

- son
- God
- Israel
- hand
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

14 His neighbor answered and said, "There is nothing else this can be if not the sword of Gideon, the son of Joash, the man of Israel. God has given Midian into his hand and all of the camp."

UST

14 His friend said, "Your dream can mean only one thing. It means that God will enable Gideon, the man of Israel, to defeat all of the armies that are here with us men from Midian."

Judges 7:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel
- that he bowed down in worship
- into your hand
- He returned

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israelite
- he thanked God
- to defeat
- Then he and Purah returned

ULT

15 Now it happened when Gideon heard the narration of the dream and its interpretation, that he bowed down in worship. He returned to the camp of Israel and said, "Rise up! For Yahweh has given the camp of Midian into your hand."

UST

15 When Gideon heard the man tell about his dream and the meaning of that dream, he thanked God. Then he and Purah returned to the Israelite camp, and he shouted to the men, "Get up! Because God is enabling you to defeat the men from Midian!"

Judges 7:16

three hundred men

"300 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- into the hand of
- companies
- trumpets

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- groups
- a ram's horn (as a trumpet

ULT

16 Then he divided the three hundred men into three companies, and he put trumpets into the hand of all of them as well as empty jars, with torches inside of the jars.

UST

16 He divided his men into three groups. He gave each man a ram's horn (as a trumpet) and an empty clay jar. He also gave each of them a torch to carry.

Judges 7:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- I

Translation Words - UST

- we

ULT

17 He said to them, "You shall look to me and thus you shall do. Watch! When I am coming along the edge of the camp, it shall be just as I do, thus you must do.

UST

17 Then he said to them, "Watch me. When we come close to the enemy camp, spread out to surround the camp. Then do exactly what I do.

Judges 7:18

For Yahweh and for Gideon!

The words "we fight" are implied. Alternate translation: "We fight for Yahweh and for Gideon!" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- For Yahweh
- I
- the trumpet
- the trumpets

Translation Words - UST

- We are doing this for Yahweh
- my men
- their ram's horns
- your horns

ULT

18 When I blow the trumpet, I and everyone who is with me, then you shall blow the trumpets, also you around all of the camp. Then you shall shout, 'For Yahweh and for Gideon!'"

UST

18 As soon as my men blow their ram's horns, you men in the other two groups surrounding the camp blow your horns and shout, 'We are doing this for Yahweh and for Gideon!'"

Judges 7:19

hundred men

"100 men" (See: Numbers)

right at the beginning of the middle watch

The beginning of the middle watch would be around 10 o'clock at night.

Translation Words - ULT

- in their hand
- at the beginning of
- the trumpets

Translation Words - UST

- they were carrying
- A while before midnight at the start
- their horns

ULT

19 So Gideon and one hundred men who were with him came to the edge of the camp, at the beginning of the middle nightwatch. They had only just stationed the guards, when they blew the trumpets and they shattered the jars that were in their hand.

UST

19 A while before midnight at the start of the "middle watch," just when a new group of guards took the places of the previous guards, Gideon and the hundred men with him arrived at the edge of the Midian camp. Suddenly he and his men blew their horns, and broke the jars that they were carrying.

Judges 7:20

The sword of Yahweh and of Gideon

Here "sword" refers to their fighting. Alternate translation: "We fight for Yahweh and for Gideon" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- for Yahweh
- in…hand
- and
- A sword
- the trumpets
- the trumpets
- the…companies
- They shouted out

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- with…hands
- and…with…hands
- We have swords to fight for
- their horns
- the horns
- groups
- and shouted

ULT

20 Then the three companies blew the trumpets and they broke the jars. They held the torches in their left hand and the trumpets in their right hand to blow. They shouted out, "A sword for Yahweh and for Gideon."

UST

20 Then the men in all three groups blew their horns and smashed their jars. They held the torches high with their left hands, and held up the horns with their right hands and alternatively blew them and shouted, "We have swords to fight for Yahweh and for Gideon!"

Judges 7:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• They shouted

Translation Words - UST

• and shouting

21 Each man stood in his place around the camp and all of the camp ran. They shouted and fled away.

21 Each of Gideon's men stood in his position around the enemy camp. As they watched, all the Midian men started running around and shouting in a panic.

Judges 7:22

three hundred trumpets

"300 trumpets" (See: Numbers)

Yahweh set every Midianite man's sword against his comrades

Here "sword" refers to their attack with the use of the sword. Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused every Midianite man to fight against his fellow soldiers" (See: Metonymy)

Beth Shittah...Zererah...Abel Meholah...Tabbath

These are the names of towns and cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- set
- Yahweh
- the sword of
- the...trumpets

Translation Words - UST

- caused...to start fighting
- Yahweh
- with their swords
- their horns

ULT

22 When they blew the three hundred trumpets, Yahweh set the sword of each man against his comrade and against all of the camp. As a result the army fled as far as Beth Shittah toward Zererah, as far as the edge of Abel Meholah, towards Tabbath.

UST

22 While the three hundred Israelite men kept blowing their horns, Yahweh caused the Midianites to start fighting each other with their swords. Some of them killed each other. The rest fled. Some fled south to Beth Shittah. Some fled to the town of Zerarah, as far as the border of Abel Meholah, near Tabbath.

Judges 7:23

The men of Israel from Naphtali, Asher, and all Manasseh were called out

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Gideon called out the Israelites from the tribes of Naphtali, Asher, and all Mannasseh" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- to the soldiers in the areas where...lived

ULT

23 Then the men of Israel from Naphtali, and from Asher, and from all of Manasseh were summoned, and they pursued after Midian.

UST

23 Then Gideon sent messages to the soldiers in the areas where the descendants of Naphtali, Asher, and Manasseh lived, to tell them to come and pursue the army of Midian.

Judges 7:24

Beth Barah

This is the name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

took control of the waters, as far as Beth Barah and the Jordan River

"took control of the area of the Jordan River as far south as Beth Barah"

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jordan
- the Jordan
- Ephraim
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- to the Jordan River
- did what Gideon told them to do
- where the descendants of Ephraim lived
- Ephraim

ULT

24 Also Gideon sent messengers throughout all of the hill country of Ephraim, saying, "Go down opposite Midian and seize before them the waters, as far as Beth Barah and the Jordan." Thus all of the men of Ephraim were summoned and they captured the waters, as far as Beth Barah and the Jordan.

UST

24 Gideon sent messengers throughout the hill country where the descendants of Ephraim lived, saying, "Go down and attack the army of Midian. Go down to the Jordan River, to the places where people can wade across, to prevent enemy troops from crossing it! Station men as far south as Beth Barah." So the men of Ephraim did what Gideon told them to do.

Judges 7:25

at the rock of Oreb…at the winepress of Zeeb

The places were given these names after the Israelites killed Oreb and Zeeb there. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Oreb…Zeeb

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- and…the head of
- they killed
- princes of

Translation Words - UST

- the heads of
- they killed
- generals of

ULT

25 They captured the two princes of Midian, Oreb and Zeeb. They killed Oreb at the rock of Oreb, and they killed Zeeb at the winepress of Zeeb. They pursued after Midian, and they brought the head of Oreb and Zeeb to Gideon, from across the Jordan.

UST

25 They also captured Oreb and Zeeb, the two generals of the Midian army. They killed Oreb at the big rock which is now called the rock of Oreb, and they killed Zeeb at the place where they crush grapes that is now called the winepress of Zeeb. Afterwards, the Israelites cut off the heads of Oreb and Zeeb and brought them to Gideon, who was on the other side of the Jordan River.

Judges 8

Judges 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The account of Gideon concludes in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Succoth's refusal to help Gideon

The men of Succoth feared the Midianites more than Gideon. This is why they refused to help Gideon. By allying themselves with the Midianites, they aligned themselves against Yahweh. Because of this, Gideon treated them like he treated the Midianites. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Gideon refuses to be king

Gideon said to them, "I will not rule over you, neither will my son rule over you. Yahweh will rule over you." Although the book of Deuteronomy anticipates a king in Israel, it was sinful for Israel to desire to have a king. He did though take a share of everyone's plunder as a king would have done through taxes. This may serve as a warning to Israel about their desire to have a king. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Judges 8:1

What is this you have done to us?

The people of the tribe of Ephraim were rebuking Gideon with this rhetorical question for not including them in his army. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have not treated us fairly." (See: Rhetorical Question)

against Midian

Here "Midian" represents the Midianite army. (See: Metonymy)

they had a violent argument with him

they argued angrily with him" or "they rebuked him severely"

Translation Words - ULT

- summoning
- Ephraim
- you went
- Then they complained

Translation Words - UST

- call...to help you
- Ephraim
- you went out
- They argued

ULT

1 The men of Ephraim said to him, "What is this thing you have done to us, not summoning us when you went to fight against Midian?" Then they complained forcefully against him.

UST

1 Then the soldiers from the tribe of Ephraim said to Gideon, "Why have you acted toward us like this? When you went out to fight against the army of Midian, why did you not call us to help you?" They argued very much with Gideon.

Judges 8:2

General Information:

Gideon replies to the men from Ephraim.

What have I done now compared to you?

Gideon uses this question to honor the people of Ephraim. Alternate translation: "I have done very little compared with what you have done!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Are not the gleanings of Ephraim's grapes better than the full grape harvest of Abiezer?

Gideon was calming the people of Ephraim with this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "Certainly the grapes you people of Ephraim gleaned are better than what we the descendants of Abiezer gathered from the whole harvest!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

ULT

2 He said to them, "What have I done now according to you? Are not the grape gleanings from Ephraim better than the grape harvest of Abiezer?

UST

2 But Gideon replied, "I have done very little compared with what you have done! The grapes you do not bother to pick in the land of Ephraim are much better than the whole harvest among the descendants of Abiezer!

Are not the gleanings of Ephraim's grapes better than the full grape harvest of Abiezer?

Gideon and his army defeating the Medianites is spoken of as if it were a grape harvest. The people of Ephraim killing Oreb and Zeeb at the end of the battle is spoken of as if they were gleaning grapes at the end of the harvest. Alternate translation: "What you people of Ephraim did at the end of the battle is more important than what we descendants of Abiezer did at the beginning." (See: Rhetorical Question and Metaphor)

Abiezer

This is the name of one of Gideon's ancestors. Gideon used his name to refer to Abiezer's descendants and their land. (See: Metonymy and How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Are...better
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- much better
- the land of Ephraim

Judges 8:3

Oreb and Zeeb

See how you translated these names in Judges 7:25.

What have I accomplished compared to you?

Gideon uses this question to honor the people of Ephraim. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "What you have done is more important than what I have done." (See: Rhetorical Question)

died down

"became less"

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- their spirit
- into your hand
- the princes of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- they no longer resented
- helped you defeat
- the generals of

ULT

3 God has given over the princes of Midian into your hand, Oreb and Zeeb! So what was I able to do compared to you?" Then their spirit concerning him abated when he was speaking this word.

UST

3 God helped you defeat Oreb and Zeeb, the generals of the army from Midian. That is much more important than what I did!" After Gideon told them that, they no longer resented what he had done.

Judges 8:4

the three hundred men

"the 300 men" (See: Numbers)

kept up the pursuit

The word "pursuit," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "continued to chase their enemies" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

> • to the Jordan

Translation Words - UST

> • to the Jordan River

ULT

4 Then Gideon came to the Jordan, crossing over, he and the three hundred men who were with him. They were weary, yet they continued pursuing.

UST

4 Then Gideon and his three hundred men went east. They came to the Jordan River and crossed it. Although they were very tired, they continued to pursue their enemies.

Judges 8:5

Zebah and Zalmunna

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- to the people
- pursuing
- the kings of

Translation Words - UST

- bread that they may eat it
- men
- are pursuing
- the kings of

ULT

5 Then he said to the men of Succoth, "Please give round loaves of bread to the people who are at my feet, for they are weary, yet I am pursuing after Zebah and Zalmunna, the kings of Midian."

UST

5 When they arrived at the town of Succoth, Gideon said to the town leaders, "Please give my men bread that they may eat it! They are very tired. We are pursuing Zebah and Zalmunna, the kings of Midian."

Judges 8:6

Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna now in your hand?

The leaders use a question to emphasize that the Israelites have not yet captured Zebah and Zalumnna. Alternate translation: "You have not captured Zebah and Zalmunna yet." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Are the hands of Zebah and Zalmunna

Here "hands" refer to the whole body. (See: Synecdoche)

now in your hand

Here "hand" represents power or control. (See: Metonymy)

Why should we give bread to your army?

The leaders use a question to emphasize that they have no reason to give bread to the Israelites. Alternate translation: "We see no reason to give bread to your army." (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

6 The princes of Succoth replied, "Is the palm of Zebah and Zalmunna now in your hand that we should give bread to your army?"

UST

6 But the leaders of Succoth replied, "You have not caught Zebah and Zalmunna yet. So why should we give food to your troops now? Catch them first, and then we will give you food."

Translation Words - ULT

- in your hand
- bread
- The princes of

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- food
- the leaders of

Judges 8:7

I will tear your skin with the desert thorns and briers

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I will make whips out of desert thorns and briers and use them to beat you and cut you" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

thorns and briers

sharp, pointed pieces on vines or tree limbs that stick out and can cut people and animals

Translation Words - ULT

- your flesh
- Yahweh
- into my hand

Translation Words - UST

- the flesh off your bones
- Yahweh
- hand

ULT

7 So Gideon declared, "Assuredly when Yahweh has given Zebah and Zalmunna into my hand, I will thresh your flesh with the thorns of the wilderness and briers."

UST

7 Gideon replied, " Because you said that, after Yahweh enables us to defeat Zebah and Zalmunna, we will return. And then we will make whips from thorns from the desert, and with them we will rip the flesh off your bones!"

Judges 8:8

He went up from there

Here "He" refers to Gideon. Gideon represents himself and the soldiers following him. Alternate translation: "They left there" or "Gideon and his 300 men left there" (See: Synecdoche)

Peniel

The name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

spoke to the people there in the same way

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "asked for food there in the same way" or "he also asked them for food" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- answered...had

Translation Words - UST

- the same

ULT

8 Then he went up from there to Penuel and also spoke to them in this manner, but the men of Penuel answered him just as the men of Succoth had answered.

UST

8 Gideon and his three hundred men went up to Peniel and asked for food there in the same way. But the people gave him the same answer.

Judges 8:9

When I come again in peace

This is a polite way of referring to the defeat of his enemies. Alternate translation: "After I have completely defeated the Midian army" (See: Euphemism)

I will pull down this tower

Here "I" refers to Gideon and represents himself and his men. Alternate translation: "My men and I will pull down this tower" (See: Synecdoche)

ULT

9 So he declared also to the men of Peniel saying, "When I return in peace, I will tear down this tower."

UST

9 So he said to the men of Peniel, "After I defeat those kings and make peace, then I will come and pull down this tower!"

Judges 8:10

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the story line. Here the narrator starts to tell a new part of the story.

Zebah and Zalmunna

See how you translated these names in Judges 8:5.

Karkor

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

fifteen thousand men

"15,000 men" (See: Numbers)

had fallen

This is a polite way of referring to people who died in battle. Alternate translation: "had been killed" or "had died in battle" (See: Euphemism)

120,000 men

"one hundred thousand men" (See: Numbers)

men who drew the sword

Here drawing the sword represents using the sword in battle. Possible meanings are 1) this phrase refers to soldiers who use swords in battle. Alternate translation: "swordsmen" or "men who fought with swords" or 2) this phrase refers to any soldiers. Alternate translation: "soldiers" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- a sword

Translation Words - UST

- from the people of
- sword, swordsmen

ULT

10 Now Zebah and Zalmunna were in Karkor and their troops were with them, about fifteen thousand, all the remaining out of all of the camp of the sons of the east, for the fallen were one hundred twenty thousand men drawing a sword.

UST

10 By that time, Zebah and Zalmunna had gone to Karkor town with fifteen thousand troops. They were all that were left of the armies that had come from the people of the East, and 120,000 of their men had already been killed.

Judges 8:11

Gideon went up

Here "Gideon" represents himself and all of his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Gideon and his soldiers went up" (See: Synecdoche)

He defeated

Here "He" refers to Gideon and represents himself and all of his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Gideon and his soldiers defeated" (See: Synecdoche)

Nobah and Jogbehah

These are names of towns. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

11 Then Gideon went up the road of those living in the tents, from the east to Nobah and Jogbehah. He struck the camp, when the camp was feeling secure.

UST

11 Gideon and his men went east along the road on which caravans travel. They went past the villages of Nobah and Jogbehah and arrived at the enemy camp by surprise.

Judges 8:12

Zebah and Zalmunna

See how you translated these names in Judges 8:5.

panic

extreme fear or worry that makes someone unable to think or act normally

Translation Words - ULT

- kings of

Translation Words - UST

- kings of

Judges 8:13

the pass of Heres

This is the name of a road that passes between two mountains. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Then...returned

Translation Words - UST

- son
- After that...and his men took Zebah and Zalmunna with them and started to return

ULT

13 Then Gideon, the son of Joash, returned from the battle, going through the ascent of Heres.

UST

13 After that, Gideon and his men took Zebah and Zalmunna with them and started to return, going through the pass of Heres.

Judges 8:14

questioned him

It can be stated explicitly what Gideon asked the young man. Alternate translation: "he asked him to identify all the names of the leaders in the town" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

seventy-seven officials

"77 officials" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- its elders
- the princes of
- a young man

Translation Words - UST

- elder, older, old
- the names of all of the leaders in
- a young man...The young man

ULT

14 He captured a young man out of the men of Succoth and he interrogated him. He wrote down for him the princes of Succoth and its elders, seventy-seven men.

UST

14 There he captured a young man from Succoth, and demanded that he write down the names of all of the leaders in the town. The young man wrote down seventy-seven names.

Judges 8:15

Zebah and Zalmunna

See how you translated these names in Judges 8:5.

Have you already conquered Zebah and Zalmunna?

Gideon quotes the people of Succoth as using a question to mock him. Alternate translation: "You have not yet conquered Zebah and Zalmunna." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- Is...in your hand
- bread
- you taunted

Translation Words - UST

- You have not caught
- some food
- you made fun of

ULT

15 Then he came to the men of Succoth and he said, "Look at Zebah and Zalmunna, about whom you taunted me saying, 'Is the palm of Zebah and Zalmunna now in your hand that we should give bread to your weary men.'"

UST

15 Then Gideon and his men returned to Succoth and said to those leaders, "Here are Zebah and Zalmunna. When we were here before, you made fun of me and said 'You have not caught Zebah and Zalmunna yet! After you catch them, we will give your exhausted men some food.'"

Judges 8:16

Gideon took...he punished

Here "Gideon" represents himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Gideon and his soldiers took...they punished" (See: Synecdoche)

thorns and briers

These are sharp, pointed pieces on vines or tree limbs that stick out and can cut people and animals. See how you translated this in Judges 8:7.

Translation Words - ULT

- the elders of
- and he made...undergo

Translation Words - UST

- the...leaders
- and whipped...to teach them that they deserved to be punished for not giving them food

ULT

16 He took the elders of the city and the thorns of the wilderness and the briers, and he made the men of Succoth undergo them.

UST

16 Then Gideon's men took the town leaders and whipped them with whips made from briers from the desert, to teach them that they deserved to be punished for not giving them food.

Judges 8:17

he pulled

Gideon and his soldiers pulled. Alternate translation: "Gideon and his soldiers pulled" (See: Synecdoche)

Peniel

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 8:8.

ULT

17 Then he tore down the tower of Peniel and he killed the men of the city.

UST

17 Then they went to Peniel and tore down the tower, and killed all the men in the town.

Judges 8:18

Zebah and Zalmunna

See how you translated these names in Judges 8:5.

Tabor

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 4:6.

As you are, so were they

"They were just like you"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons
- you killed
- of the king

Translation Words - UST

- they were sons of
- you killed
- a king

ULT

18 Next he said to Zebah and Zalmunna, "What sort were the men who you killed at Tabor?" They replied, "As you are, so were they. Each one was as the form of the sons of the king."

UST

18 Then Gideon said to Zebah and Zalmunna, "The men you killed near Mount Tabor, what did they look like?" They replied, "They were like you; they all looked like they were sons of a king."

Judges 8:19

As Yahweh lives

This idiom is a religious oath used for emphasis that what he is about to say is true. Alternate translation: "I promise you that" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- As...lives
- you had let...live
- my brothers
- the sons of
- Yahweh
- I would...have killed

Translation Words - UST

- Just as surely as...lives
- you had not killed
- my brothers
- son
- Yahweh
- I would...kill

ULT

19 So he said, "They were my brothers, the sons of my mother. As Yahweh lives, if only you had let them live, I would not have killed you."

UST

19 Gideon replied, "They were my brothers! Just as surely as Yahweh lives, I would not kill you if you had not killed them."

Judges 8:20

Jether

This is the name of Gideon's son. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- he was afraid
- kill
- his sword
- the young man
- a youth
- his firstborn

Translation Words - UST

- he was afraid
- Kill
- his sword
- Jether
- a boy
- his oldest son

ULT

20 Then he said to Jether his firstborn, "Arise, kill them!" But the young man did not pull out his sword because he was afraid, for he was still a youth.

UST

20 Then he turned to his oldest son, Jether. He said to him, "Kill them!" But Jether was only a boy, and he was afraid, so he did not pull out his sword to kill them.

Judges 8:21

For as the man is, so is his strength

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "It is a job for a man to do" (See: Idiom)

crescent

This is a curved shape with two points. This shape occurs when the moon is mostly covered in shadow.

ornaments

decorations

Translation Words - ULT

- of their camels

Translation Words - UST

- their camels

ULT

21 Then Zebah and Zalmunna said, "Arise yourself and fall upon us! Truly like a man with his own power." So Gideon rose up and he killed Zebah and Zalmunna. He also took the crescent-shaped ornaments that were on the necks of their camels.

UST

21 Then Zebah and Zalmunna said to Gideon, "Do not ask a young boy to do the work that a man should do!" So Gideon killed both of them. Then he took the golden crescent-shaped ornaments from the necks of their camels.

Judges 8:22

out of the hand of Midian

Here "hand" represents the power of Midian over Israel. Alternate translation: "from the power of Midian" or "from Midian" (See: Metonymy)

of Midian

Here "Midian" represents the people of Midian. Alternate translation: "of the Midianites" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Rule
- your son
- the son of
- your son
- Israel
- out of the hand of
- you have delivered us

Translation Words - UST

- be...ruler! We want...to be...rulers
- your son
- your grandsons
- your grandsons
- Israelite
- from
- you rescued us

ULT

22 Then the men of Israel said to Gideon, "Rule over us, both you and your son, and even the son of your son, because you have delivered us out of the hand of Midian."

UST

22 Then a group of Israelite men came to Gideon and said to him, "You be our ruler! We want you and your son and your grandsons to be our rulers, because you rescued us from the Midian army."

Judges 8:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- I will...rule
- will...rule
- will rule (2)
- my son
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- will...rule
- will...rule
- will rule (2)
- my son
- Yahweh

ULT

23 But Gideon said to them, "I will not rule over you myself, neither will my son rule over you. Yahweh will rule over you."

UST

23 But Gideon replied, "No, I will not rule over you, and my son will not rule over you. Yahweh will rule over you."

Judges 8:24

Gideon said to them

"Gideon said to the men of Israel"

earrings

jewelry worn on the ear

plunder

things stolen by force or taken off of people killed in war

The Midianites had golden earrings because they were Ishmaelites

Here the narrator tells background information about the Midianites. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

  • gold

Translation Words - UST

  • gold

ULT

24 Then Gideon said to them, "Let me ask a request of you, that each man give me the earring from his spoil." For they had earrings of gold because they were Ishmaelites.

UST

24 Then he said, "I request only one thing. I request that each of you give me one earring from the things you captured after the battle." Now all the men descended from Ishmael wore gold earrings.

Judges 8:25

cloak

clothing made from a large piece of fabric and worn over the shoulders as a coat

25 They replied, "We will surely give them." So they spread out the garment and each man threw the earring from his spoil onto there.

25 They replied, "We will be glad to give the earrings to you!" So they spread a cloth on the ground, and each man threw on it the gold earrings that he had taken from those whom he had killed in the battle.

Judges 8:26

1,700 shekels of gold

"one thousand seven hundred shekels of gold." If it is necessary to use modern weight units, here are two ways of doing it. Alternate translation: "18.7 kilograms of gold" or "about 20 kilograms of gold" (See: Numbers and Biblical Weight)

crescent ornaments

See how you translated this in Judges 8:21.

pendants

pieces of jewelry that hang at the end of the chains or cords of necklaces

that was worn by the kings of Midian

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the kings of Midian wore" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the kings of
- their camels
- gold
- pieces of gold

Translation Words - UST

- kings
- their camels
- gold, golden
- twenty kilograms

ULT

26 Now the weight of the earrings of gold that he requested was one thousand seven hundred pieces of gold, besides that of the crescent-shaped ornaments, and the pendants, and the dyed purple garments that were upon the kings of Midian, and besides that of the collars that were around the necks of their camels.

UST

26 The weight of all the earrings was twenty kilograms. That did not include other things that they gave to Gideon— the other ornaments or the pendants or the clothes that their kings wore or the gold chains that were on the necks of their camels.

Judges 8:27

Gideon made an ephod out of the earrings

"Gideon used the gold from the earrings to make an ephod"

Ophrah

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 6:11.

all Israel prostituted themselves by worshiping it there

This speaks of worshiping a false god as if it were prostitution. Alternate translation: "the Israelites sinned against Yahweh by worshiping the ephod there" (See: Metaphor)

all Israel

Here "all" is an exaggeration to emphasize that very many worshiped the garment. Alternate translation: "very many people in Israel worshiped the garment" (See: Hyperbole)

It became a trap for Gideon and for those in his house

This speaks of Gideon and his family being tempted to worship the ephod as if the ephod were a hunter's snare that would trap them. Alternate translation: "It became a temptation for Gideon and his family" or "Gideon and his family sinned by worshiping it" (See: Metaphor)

for those in his house

Here "his house" represents Gideon's family. Alternate translation: "for his family" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- for the people...the people

> **ULT**
> **27** Then Gideon made it into an ephod and placed it in his city, in Ophrah, and all of Israel pursued adulterously after it there. It became as a snare for Gideon and for his house.
>
> **UST**
> **27** Gideon made a sacred garment for the people and put it in his hometown of Ophrah. Soon the people worshiped it instead of worshiping only God. Gideon and all his family sinned by worshiping it.

Judges 8:28

So Midian was subdued before the people of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "So Yahweh subdued the Midianites before the people of Israel" or "So Yahweh helped the Israelites defeat the Midianites" (See: Active or Passive)

they did not raise their heads up again

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "they did not attack Israel again" (See:Idiom)

So the land had peace

Here "land" represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "So the Israelites lived peacefully" (See: Metonymy)

forty years

"40 years" (See: Numbers)

in the days of Gideon

"during the life of Gideon"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- their heads
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- did...become strong enough to attack Israel
- in the land

ULT

28 So Midian was subdued before the sons of Israel and they did not continue to raise up their heads. So the land was tranquil forty years during the days of Gideon.

UST

28 That is how the Israelites defeated the people from Midian. The people of Midian did not become strong enough to attack Israel again. So while Gideon was alive, there was peace in the land for forty years.

Judges 8:29

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated his name in [Judges 6:32](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- in his house

Translation Words - UST

- son
- back home

Judges 8:30

seventy sons

"70 sons" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- coming forth from

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- and they bore him

ULT

30 Now Gideon had seventy sons coming forth from his loins, for he had many wives.

UST

30 He had many wives, and they bore him seventy sons.

Judges 8:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- and he made
- his name

Translation Words - UST

- a son
- whom he
- named

ULT

31 His concubine, who was in Shechem, even she bore him a son, and he made his name Abimelech.

UST

31 He also had a slave wife in the city of Shechem, who bore him a son whom he named Abimelech.

Judges 8:32

a good old age

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "when he was very old" (See: Idiom)

was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him" (See: Active or Passive)

Ophrah

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 6:11.

the clan of Abiezer

Translate the name of this people group as you did in Judges 6:11.

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- good
- his father
- died

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- when he was very old
- his father
- died

ULT

32 Gideon, the son of Joash, died at a good old age and he was buried in the tomb of Joash his father, at Ophrah of the Abiezerite.

UST

32 Gideon son of Joash died when he was very old. They buried his body in the grave where his father Joash was buried, at Ophrah, in the land of the Abietherites.

Judges 8:33

It came about

This phrase is used here to mark the beginning of a new part of the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

turned again

The people rejecting Yahweh is spoken of as if they physically turned away from him. Alternate translation: "they stopped worshiping Yahwheh" (See: Metaphor)

prostituted themselves by worshiping the Baals

This speaks of worshiping false gods as if it were prostitution. Alternate translation: "they sinned against Yahweh by worshiping the Baals" (See: Metaphor)

Baal-Berith

This is the name of a false god. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- as a god
- They made
- Israel
- turned back again

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- the god
- They made
- the Israelites
- return

ULT

33 Now it happened that when Gideon had died, the sons of Israel turned back again and pursued adulterously after the Baals. They made Baal-Berith for themselves as a god.

UST

33 But as soon as Gideon died, the Israelites left God and gave themselves to worship the images of the god Baal, like adulteresses leave their husbands and go to other men. They made Baal-Berith the god they worshiped.

Judges 8:34

from the hand of all their enemies

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "from the power of all their enemies" or "from all their enemies" (See: Metonymy)

on every side

"who surrounded them"

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- their God
- Yahweh
- Israel
- from the hand of
- their enemies

Translation Words - UST

- They
- God
- Yahweh
- They
- from
- their enemies

ULT

34 The sons of Israel did not remember Yahweh, their God, the one who had delivered them from the hand of all of their enemies all around.

UST

34 They forgot about Yahweh, the one who had rescued them from all their enemies that surrounded them.

Judges 8:35

the house of Jerub Baal

Here "the house of" represents a person's family. Alternate translation: "the family of Jerub Baal" (See: Metonymy)

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

Translation Words - ULT

- lasting loyalty
- Israel
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- kindly
- for the Israelites
- s family

Judges 9

Judges 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Jotham's curse

Gideon's son, Abimelech, killed all of his brothers except Jotham in order to become king of Shechem. Jotham cursed Abimelech for having murdered Gideon's other sons. "Let fire come out from Abimelech and burn up the men of Shechem and the house of Millo. Let fire come out from the men of Shechem and Beth Millo, to burn up Abimelech." (See: curse, cursed, cursing)

=##### Important figures of speech in this chapter

Tree metaphor

This chapter contains an extended metaphor about trees. This metaphor functions as a parable instructing Israel about their sinful desire to have a king. (See: Metaphor and sin, sinful, sinner, sinning)

Judges 9:1

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

Translation Words - ULT

- the brothers of
- the son of
- the father of
- the family of
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- s brothers
- s son
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather
- s relatives
- house

Judges 9:2

Please say this, so that all the leaders in Shechem may hear, 'Which is better for you, that all seventy sons of Jerub Baal rule over you, or that just one rule over you?'

This has a quotation within a quotation. A direct quotation can be stated as an indirect quotation. Alternate translation: "Please ask the leaders of Shechem if they would rather have all seventy sons of Jerub Baal rule over them, or if they would rather have just one of his sons rule over them." (See: Quotes within Quotes and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

seventy

"70" (See: Numbers)

I am your bone and your flesh

Here "your bone and your flesh" represents being someone's relative. Alternate translation: "I am a member of your family" (See: Metonymy)

ULT

2 "Please speak in the ears of all of the citizens of Shechem, 'What is better for you, seventy men ruling over you, all of the sons of Jerubbaal, or one man ruling over you? Remember that I am your bone and your flesh."

UST

2 "Ask all the leaders of Shechem: 'Do you think it would be good for all seventy of Gideon's sons to rule over you? Or would it be better to have only one man, Abimelech, to rule over you?' And do not forget that I am a part of your family! "

Translation Words - ULT

- ruling
- the citizens of
- sons of
- better

Translation Words - UST

- to rule
- the leaders of
- s sons
- good

Judges 9:3

His mother's relatives spoke for him to the leaders

This means that the relatives of the mother of Abimelech spoke to the leaders, suggesting that they make Abimelech their king.

they agreed to follow Abimelech

"they agreed to let Abimelech be their leader"

Translation Words - ULT

- the citizens of
- The brothers of
- our brother
- their heart

Translation Words - UST

- the leaders of
- s brothers
- our relative
- heart

ULT

3 The brothers of his mother spoke all of these things on his behalf in the ears of all of the citizens of Shechem, and their heart turned aside after Abimelech, for they said, "He is our brother."

UST

3 So Abimelech's mother's brothers spoke to all the leaders of Shechem about what Abimelech had said. They said to each other, "We should allow Abimelech to rule over us, because he is our relative."

Judges 9:4

the house

Here "house" represents a temple. (See: Metonymy)

seventy pieces of silver

This means seventy shekels of silver. A shekel weighs 11 grams. If it is necessary to translate this with modern measurements, you can translate it like this. Alternate translation: "almost one kilo of silver" (See: Biblical Money)

seventy

"70" (See: Numbers)

Baal-Berith

This is the name of a false god. See how you translated it in Judges 8:33.

worthless and reckless

"violent and foolish"

Translation Words - ULT

- silver
- from the house of

Translation Words - UST

- one kilo of silver…it
- from the temple of

ULT

4 Then they gave him seventy pieces of silver from the house of Baal Berith, and Abimelech hired with them unprincipled and undisciplined men, so they went after him.

UST

4 So the leaders of Shechem took from the temple of their god Baal-Berith one kilo of silver and gave it to Abimelech. With that silver he paid some worthless troublemakers to help him, and they went with Abimelech wherever he went.

Judges 9:5

Ophrah

Translate the name of this city as you did in Judges 6:11.

one stone

"1 stone" (See: Numbers)

seventy

"70" (See: Numbers)

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

Translation Words - ULT

- his brothers
- the sons of
- the...son of
- his father
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- his...brothers
- the sons of
- s...son
- his father
- s town

ULT

5 Then he went to the house of his father at Ophrah, and he killed his brothers, the sons of Jerubbaal, seventy men upon one stone. But Jotham was left, the youngest son of Jerubbaal, for he had hidden himself.

UST

5 Abimelech and his followers went to Ophrah, his father's town, and they murdered his seventy brothers, the sons of his father Gideon. They killed all those men on one huge rock. But Gideon's youngest son Jotham hid from Abimelech and his men, and he escaped.

Judges 9:6

Beth Millo

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the prominent citizens of
- and installed
- as king
- Beth

Translation Words - UST

- the leaders of
- There they appointed
- to be their leader
- Beth

ULT

6 Then all of the prominent citizens of Shechem and all of Beth Millo assembled themselves and they went and installed Abimelech as king beside an oak tree near the standing pillar that was in Shechem.

UST

6 Then all the leaders of the towns of Shechem and Beth-Millo gathered under the big sacred tree at Shechem. There they appointed Abimelech to be their leader.

Judges 9:7

General Information:

Jotham begins telling a parable in which the trees try to find someone to rule them. The trees represent the Israelites. (See: Parables)

When Jotham was told about this

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "When Jotham heard that Abimelech had murdered his brothers" (See: Active or Passive)

Mount Gerizim

This is a mountain. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- citizens of
- God
- on the top of
- and cried out

Translation Words - UST

- You leaders of
- God
- at the top of
- and shouted

ULT

7 When they told Jotham, he went and stood on the top of Mount Gerizim. He lifted up his voice and cried out and said to them, "Listen to me, citizens of Shechem, so God will listen to you.

UST

7 When Jotham heard about that, he climbed up Mount Gerizim. He stood at the top of the mountain and shouted to the people down below, "You leaders of Shechem, listen to me, in order that God will listen to you!

Judges 9:8

The trees once went out to anoint a king over them. For they said to the olive tree, 'Reign over us.'

In this parable Jotham describes the trees doing things that humans do. (See: Parables and Personification)

to anoint a king over them

Here, to anoint with oil is a symbolic action that represents appointing a person to be king. Alternate translation: "to appoint a king to rule over all of them" (See: Symbolic Action)

Reign over us

"Be our king"

Translation Words - ULT

- a king
- Once...went about
- Once...went about

Translation Words - UST

- a king
- One day
- decided

ULT

8 Once the trees went about in order to anoint a king over themselves. So they said to the olive tree, 'Reign over us.'

UST

8 One day the trees decided to appoint a king to rule over all of them. So they said to the olive tree, 'You be our king!'

Judges 9:9

General Information:

Jotham continues telling the parable he begins in Judges 9:7, where the trees represent the Israelites.

Should I give up my abundance…over the other trees?

The olive tree is asking this question to refuse to be king. This question can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will not give up my abundance…over the other trees." (See: Rhetorical Question)

abundance

This word for "wealth" is a metonym for the olives that come from the tree. People ate olives as food and crushed them to make oil for lamps. Alternate translation: "oil" (See: Metonymy)

by which gods and men are honored

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: "by which people honor both gods and other men"

gods

It is possible to translate the same Hebrew word as "god," "God," or "gods," so possible meanings here are 1) "gods" or 2) "God."

sway over

To sway is to move back and forth. Trees sway when the wind blows them. Here this is a metaphor for ruling over people. Jotham is also using irony, saying that the work of any ruler will be useless because the "trees," the people, will not obey anyone who rules them. Alternate translation: "rule over" (See: Metaphor and Irony)

Translation Words - ULT

- gods
- they honor

Translation Words - UST

- both God
- blesses

ULT

9 But the olive tree replied to them, 'Have I stopped producing my fatness, when by me they honor gods and men, that I should go to wave over the trees?'

UST

9 But the olive tree said, 'No! I will not be your king! The oil made from my fruit blesses both God and people. I will not stop producing olives from which we make that oil, in order to rule over you other trees!'

Judges 9:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- come

Translation Words - UST

- come

ULT

10 So the trees said to the fig tree, 'You come! Reign over us.'

UST

10 Then the trees said to the fig tree, 'You come and be our king!'

Judges 9:11

the fig tree said to them

Jotham continues describing the trees as doing things that humans do. (See: Parables and Personification)

Should I give up my sweetness…over the other trees?

The fig tree is asking this question to refuse to be king. This question can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will not give up my sweetness…over the other trees." (See: Rhetorical Question)

my sweetness and my good fruit

ULT

11 But the fig tree said to them, 'Have I stopped producing my sweetness and my good fruit, that I should go to wave over the trees?'

UST

11 But the fig tree replied, 'No! I do not want to stop producing my good sweet fruit, and go and rule over you other trees!'

The word "sweetness" is an abstract noun. It can be stated as an adjective that describes the fruit that grows on the tree. Alternate translation: "my good sweet fruit" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

   • good

Translation Words - UST

   • good

Judges 9:12

General Information:

Jotham continues telling the parable he begins in Judges 9:7, where the trees represent the Israelites.

The trees said to the vine

In this parable, Jotham describes the trees and the vine as doing things that humans do. (See: Parables and Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- come

Translation Words - UST

- Come

ULT

12 Then the trees said to the vine, 'You come! Reign over us.'

UST

12 Then the trees said to the grapevine, 'Come and be our king!'

Judges 9:13

Should I give up my new wine…over the other trees?

The vine is asking this question to refuse to be king. This question can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "I will not give up my new wine…over the other trees." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- gods
- the vine
- my new wine

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the grapevine
- The new wine that is made from my grapes

ULT

13 Then the vine said to them, 'Have I stopped producing my new wine, which cheers gods and man, that I should go to wave over the trees?'

UST

13 But the grapevine replied, 'No! I will not be your king! The new wine that is made from my grapes causes God and people to be happy. I do not want to stop producing grapes and go and rule over you other trees!'

Judges 9:14

thornbush

Thorns are sharp spikes or spurs that hurt. This bush has many sharp spikes along its branches.

Translation Words - ULT

- come

Translation Words - UST

- Come

Judges 9:15

General Information:

Jotham continues telling his parable, where trees represent various people groups, and makes the application.

The thornbush said to the trees

In this parable, Jotham describes the thornbush and the trees as doing things that humans do. (See: Parables and Personification)

to anoint me as king over you

To anoint someone with oil is a symbolic action that appoints a person to be king. Alternate translation: "to appoint me as your king" (See: Symbolic Action)

find safety

The word "safety" is an abstract noun that can be expressed as an adjective. Alternate translation: "be safe" (See: Abstract Nouns)

fire come out of the thornbush and let it burn up the cedars of Lebanon

This means to let the thornbush burn so that it will burn the cedars.

then let fire come out of the thornbush

The thornbush refers to itself as "the thornbush." Alternate translation: "then may fire come out from me, the thornbush" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

- Lebanon
- and consume
- the cedars of
- fire
- as king
- may...go forth

Translation Words - UST

- Lebanon country
- and burn up
- all the cedar trees in
- fire
- to be...king
- I hope that...will come out

ULT

15 The thornbush said to the trees, 'If in truth you are anointing me as king over you, come, seek refuge in my shade. But if not, may fire go forth from the thornbush and consume the cedars of Lebanon.'

UST

15 The thornbush said to the trees, 'If you truly want to appoint me to be your king, come into the shade of my tiny branches. But if you do not want to do that, I hope that fire will come out from me and burn up all the cedar trees in Lebanon country!'"

Judges 9:16

Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

his house

Here "house" represents Gideon's family. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- well
- his hands
- when you installed...as king
- his household

Translation Words - UST

- Have you rewarded...by honoring him
- as he deserved because of all the good things he did for you
- when you appointed...to be your king
- house

ULT

16 Therefore, now if in truth and in integrity you have acted when you installed Abimelech as king, and if you have done well concerning Jerubaal and with his household, and if according to the deed of his hands you have done to him,

UST

16 After Jotham finished telling them this parable, he said, "So now I ask you, were you being completely honest and sincere when you appointed Abimelech to be your king? Have you rewarded Gideon (who is also called Jerub Baal) by honoring him as he deserved because of all the good things he did for you? No!

Judges 9:17

General Information:

Jotham makes the application to the situation at that time and place.

to think that my father fought for you...out of the hand of Midian

Here Jotham is expressing that he cannot believe how badly the people of Shechem have treated Gideon and his family even after Gideon fought to save the people of Shechem.

out of the hand of Midian

Here "hand" represents power or control. Alternate translation: "from the power of the Midianites" or "from the Midianites" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- his life
- my father
- out of the hand of
- when he delivered

Translation Words - UST

- and he was willing to die for you if that were necessary
- my father
- from the power of
- to save

ULT

17 that my father fought on your behalf, and threw aside his life even out front, when he delivered you out of the hand of Midian,

UST

17 Do not forget that my father fought a battle for you, and he was willing to die for you if that were necessary, to save you from the power of the Midian people group.

Judges 9:18

you have risen up against

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "you have opposed" or "you have rebelled against" (See: Idiom)

my father's house

Here "house" represents family. Alternate translation: "my father's family" (See: Metonymy)

seventy

"70" (See: Numbers)

one stone

"1 stone" (See: Numbers)

his female servant

Here "his" refers to Gideon.

Translation Words - ULT

- the citizens of
- your brother
- his sons
- the son of
- my father
- Then you have installed...as king
- his female servant
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- you people of
- one of your relatives
- of his sons
- who is the son of
- my father
- And you have appointed
- my father's slave girl
- s family

ULT

18 but today you have risen up against the house of my father and have killed his sons, seventy men, upon one stone. Then you have installed Abimelech, the son of his female servant, as king over the citizens of Shechem, because he is your brother.

UST

18 But now you have rebelled against my father's family, and you have murdered seventy of his sons on one huge rock. And you have appointed Abimelech—who is the son of my father's slave girl, not the son of his wife —to be the king who will rule you people of Shechem. You have done that only because he is one of your relatives!

Judges 9:19

If you acted with honesty and integrity with Jerub Baal and his house

Jotham offered the possibility that what they did was good, but Jotham does not actually believe what they did was good. Alternate translation: "If you treated Jerub Baal and his family as they deserved to be treated" (See: Hypothetical Situations)

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. It means "let Baal defend himself." See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

his house

Here "house" refers to family. Alternate translation: "his family" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- rejoice
- and he…will…rejoice
- his house

Translation Words - UST

- I hope that…will cause you to be happy
- and that…will cause…to be happy
- his family

ULT

19 Now if you have acted in truth and in integrity with Jerubbaal and with his house this day, rejoice about Abimelech, and he himself will also rejoice about you.

UST

19 So, if today you think that you have truly acted fairly and sincerely toward Gideon and his family, I hope that Abimelech will cause you to be happy and that you will cause him to be happy.

Judges 9:20

But if not

Jotham offered the opposite possibility that what they did was evil and applied a curse. Jotham does believe what they did was evil. Alternate translation: "But if you treated Jerub Baal and his family as they did not deserve to be treated" (See: Hypothetical Situations)

let fire come out from Abimelech and burn up the men of Shechem

Jotham is speaking a curse. He speaks of Abimelech destroying the people of Shechem as if he would burn them with fire. (See: Metaphor)

Let fire come out from the men of Shechem and Beth Millo, to burn up Abimelech

Jotham is speaking a curse. He speaks of the people of Shechem and Beth Millo destroying Abimelech as if they would burn him with fire. (See: Metaphor)

Beth Millo

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in Judges 9:6.

Translation Words - ULT

- shall also come forth
- the citizens of
- and it shall consume
- and it shall consume
- fire
- Fire
- Beth
- shall come forth

Translation Words - UST

- I wish that
- bind, bond, bound
- will destroy
- will also destroy
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- Beth
- I wish that

ULT

20 But if not, fire shall come forth from Abimelech and it shall consume the citizens of Shechem and Beth Millo. Fire shall also come forth from the citizens of Shechem and from Beth Millo and it shall consume Abimelech."

UST

20 But if what you did was not right, I wish that Abimelech will destroy Shechem and Beth Millo!" I wish that the leaders of Shechem and Beth Millo will also destroy Abimelech!"

Judges 9:21

Beer

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- his brother

Translation Words - UST

- his half-brother

ULT

21 Then Jotham fled away and escaped, and he went to Beer. He settled there away from the presence of Abimelech, his brother.

UST

21 After Jotham finished saying that, he escaped from them and ran away to the town of Beer. He stayed there because he was afraid that his half-brother Abimelech would try to kill him.

Judges 9:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel

Translation Words - UST

• the people of Israel

ULT
22 Now Abimelech ruled over Israel three years.

UST
22 For three years Abimelech was the leader over the people of Israel.

Judges 9:23

God sent an evil spirit between Abimelech and the leaders of Shechem

This means that God applied the curse Jotham made by sending an evil spirit to cause trouble and animosity between Abimelech and the leaders of Shechem.

Translation Words - ULT

- the citizens of
- the citizens of
- God
- spirit
- an evil

Translation Words - UST

- the leaders of
- the leaders of
- God
- an…spirit
- evil

ULT

23 Then God sent an evil spirit between Abimelech and between the citizens of Shechem so that the citizens of Shechem dealt treacherously with Abimelech,

UST

23 Then God sent an evil spirit to cause trouble between Abimelech and the leaders of Shechem, with the result that the leaders of Shechem rebelled against Abimelech.

Judges 9:24

God did this so the violence done...helped him murder his brothers

The passive phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God did this to avenge the seventy sons whom Abimelech their brother murdered and the men of Shechem helped murder" (See: Active or Passive)

seventy

"70" (See: Numbers)

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

Translation Words - ULT

- the citizens of
- their brother
- his brothers
- the...sons of
- his hands
- had killed
- to kill
- strengthened

Translation Words - UST

- The leaders of
- brother
- who were his half-brothers
- s sons
- Abimelech
- for what they had done
- murder
- had helped

ULT

24 by revisiting the violent treatment of the seventy sons of Jerubbaal and by putting their blood upon Abimelech their brother, who had killed them, and upon the citizens of Shechem who strengthened his hands to kill his brothers.

UST

24 The leaders of Shechem had helped Abimelech murder seventy of Gideon's sons, who were his half-brothers. So now God sent the evil spirit to punish all of them for what they had done.

Judges 9:25

positioned men to lie in wait on the hilltops that they might ambush him

"sent men to hide on the hilltops and wait to attack Abimelech"

This was reported to Abimelech

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Abimelech about the men waiting to attack him" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the citizens of
- So…positioned
- the tops of

Translation Words - UST

- The leaders of
- set
- the hilltops

ULT

25 So the citizens of Shechem positioned men in ambush after him along the tops of the hills. They robbed everyone who would pass by them along the road, and it was reported to Abimelech.

UST

25 The leaders of Shechem set an ambush on the hilltops. Those men robbed everyone who passed by. But someone told Abimelech about it, so he did not go near them.

Judges 9:26

Gaal...Ebed

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

had confidence in him

The word "confidence" is an abstract noun that can be stated with the verb "trust." Alternate translation: "trusted him" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- The citizens of
- along with his brothers
- the son of
- and they went over

Translation Words - UST

- The leaders of
- along with his brothers
- son of
- who moved into

ULT

26 Then Gaal, the son of Ebed came along with his brothers and they went over to Shechem. The citizens of Shechem trusted him.

UST

26 There was a man named Gaal son of Ebed who moved into Shechem city, along with his brothers. The leaders of Shechem grew to trust him.

Judges 9:27

They went out into the field

Here "They" refers to Gaal and his relatives and the men of Shechem.

they trampled on them

They did this to squeeze out the grape juice to make wine with it. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

trampled

"crushed" or "stomped"

in the house

Here "house" represents a temple. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- They went out
- their gods
- and they cursed
- then they ate
- their vineyards
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- They went out to
- their god
- Then they cursed
- and they ate a lot of food
- their vineyards
- the house of

ULT

27 They went out into the field and they picked grapes from their vineyards, and they pressed them. They celebrated harvest festivals and they went into the house of their gods, then they ate and they drank, and they cursed Abimelech.

UST

27 They went out to their vineyards to pick some grapes. They pressed the grapes to make juice, and then they made wine. Then they had a feast in the house of their god, and they ate a lot of food and drank a lot of wine. Then they cursed Abimelech.

Judges 9:28

Gaal…Ebed

See how you translated these names in Judges 9:26.

Who is Abimelech, and who is Shechem, that we should serve him?

Gaal uses a question to emphasize that the people of Shechem should not serve Abimelech. Alternate translation: "We should not serve Abimelech!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Who is Abimelech, and who is Shechem, that we should serve him?

Both of these questions means the same thing. Gaal refers to Abimelech as "Shechem" because Abimelech's mother was from Shechem. Alternate translation: "We should not serve Abimelech, that is, Shechem!" (See: Parallelism and Rhetorical Question)

Is he not the son of Jerub Baal? Is Zebul not his officer?

Gaal uses a question to emphasize that the people of Shechem should not serve Abimelech. Alternate translation: "He is just the son of Jerub Baal, and Zebul is just his officer." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this in Judges 6:32.

Zebul

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Serve the men of Hamor, Shechem's father

Gaal means the people of Shechem should serve those who descended from Hamor, that is, those who are truly Canaanites, and not serve someone whose father was an Israelite.

Why should we serve Abimelech?

Gaal uses a question to emphasize that the people of Shechem should not serve Abimelech. Alternate translation: "We should not serve Abimelech!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of
- the father of
- his deputy
- we should serve him
- Serve
- should we serve him

ULT

28 Then Gaal, the son of Ebed, said, "Who is Abimelech, and who is Shechem, that we should serve him? Is he not the son of Jerubbaal and Zebul his deputy? Serve the men of Hamor, the father of Shechem. Why should we serve him, ourselves?

UST

28 Gaal said, "We should not allow Abimelech to rule over us! He is only one of Gideon's sons, so he really does not belong to us! And he appointed Zebul, the governor of our city, to be his deputy! We should be loyal to one of the descendants of Hamor, the founder of our city, to be our leader, not Abimelech!

Translation Words - UST

- son
- s sons
- the founder of
- he appointed...to be his deputy
- to rule over us
- We should be loyal to
- to be...leader...Abimelech

Judges 9:29

I wish that this people were under my command

"I wish that I ruled the people of Shechem"

Translation Words - ULT

- and come forth
- into my hand
- people

Translation Words - UST

- Come and fight us
- you would appoint me to be your leader
- you would appoint me to be your leader

ULT

29 Who will give this people into my hand? Then I would depose Abimelech. He said to Abimelech, 'Enlarge your army and come forth.'"

UST

29 If you would appoint me to be your leader, I would get rid of Abimelech. I would say to him, 'Get your army ready! Come and fight us!'"

Judges 9:30

Zebul

See how you translated this name in Judges 9:28.

heard the words of Gaal son of Ebed

"heard what Gaal son of Ebed said"

Gaal...Ebed

See how you translated these names in Judges 9:26.

his anger was kindled

Becoming angry is spoken of as if a fire were starting. Alternate translation: "he became very angry" (See: Metaphor)

the city

Here "city" represents the people of the city. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the prince of

Translation Words - UST

- son
- prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

ULT

30 When Zebul, the prince of the city, heard the words of Gaal, the son of Ebed, his anger burned.

UST

30 Someone told Zebul what Gaal had said, and he became very angry.

Judges 9:31

in order to deceive

Zebul is deceiving Gaal and the people of Shechem. Alternate translation: "secretly"

they are stirring up the city against you

This speaks of the people of the city becoming upset as if they were liquid in a pot moving around. Alternate translation: "they are persuading the people of the city to rebel against you" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- and his brothers
- the son of
- messengers

Translation Words - UST

- and his brothers
- son
- messengers

ULT

31 So he sent messengers to Abimelech in secret, saying, "Look, Gaal the son of Ebed and his brothers are coming to Shechem, and look, they are inciting the city against you.

UST

31 He sent messengers to Abimelech. They told him, "Gaal and his brothers have come here to Shechem, and they are stirring up the people so they will rebel against you.

Judges 9:32

General Information:

Zebul's messengers continue talking to Abimelech.

Now

This does not mean "at this moment," but is used to draw attention to the important point that follows.

an ambush

"to hide and attack them suddenly"

Translation Words - ULT

- and the people

Translation Words - UST

- and your men

Judges 9:33

do whatever you can to them

This means that they can do what they want to destroy the followers of Gaal.

Translation Words - ULT

- your hand
- and the people
- are coming out

Translation Words - UST

- you want to
- and his men
- come out

ULT

33 Then it shall happen, in the morning, at the rising of the sun, you shall set out early and you shall spread out in an attack against the city. Watch, when he and the people who are with him are coming out to you, then you do to him just as your hand finds occasion."

UST

33 As soon as the sun rises in the morning, get up and attack the city. When Gaal and his men come out to fight against you, you can do to them whatever you want to."

Judges 9:34

all the men who were with him

"all the men accompanying Abimelech" or "all the men fighting for Abimelech"

dividing into four units

"separating into 4 groups" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- units

Translation Words - UST

- the men
- They divided into...groups

ULT

34 So Abimelech and all of the people who were with him rose up by night, and they set up an ambush against Shechem. They were four units.

UST

34 So Abimelech and all the men who were with him got up during the night. They divided into four groups and hid in the fields near Shechem.

Judges 9:35

Gaal...Ebed

See how you translated these names in Judges 9:26.

Translation Words - ULT

- went out
- the son of
- and the people
- the gate of

Translation Words - UST

- The next morning...went out
- son
- and his soldiers
- gate

ULT

35 Gaal, the son of Ebed, went out and he stood in the entrance of the gate of the city. Then Abimelech and the people who were with him rose up from the ambush.

UST

35 The next morning, Gaal went out and stood at the entrance to the city gate. While he was standing there, Abimelech and his soldiers came out of their hiding places and started walking toward the city.

Judges 9:36

Gaal

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Judges 9:26.

Zebul

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Judges 9:28.

You are seeing the shadows on the hills like they are men

Zebul is trying to confuse Gaal and keep him from preparing for battle. Alternate translation: "That is not people, it is only shadows on the hills"

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- a group of people
- from the tops of

Translation Words - UST

- the soldiers
- people
- from the hills

ULT

36 When Gaal saw the people, he said to Zebul, "Look, a group of people is coming down from the tops of the hills!" Zebul said to him, "You are seeing the shadow of the hills as men."

UST

36 When Gaal saw the soldiers, he said to Zebul, "Look! There are people coming down from the hills!" But Zebul said, "You are seeing only the shadows of trees on the hills. They are not people; they only look like people."

Judges 9:37

one unit

"1 group" or "1 troop" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- groups of people
- and...unit
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- people
- There is...group of them
- the land

ULT

37 Again, Gaal continued to speak and said, "Look, groups of people are coming down from beside the summit of the land, and one unit is coming from the way of the oak of the diviners."

UST

37 But Gaal looked again, and said, "Look! There are people coming down in the middle of the land! There is a group of them coming down by way of the oak tree where people claim to talk with the spirits of dead people!"

Judges 9:38

Zebul

See how you translated this name in Judges 9:28.

Where are your proud words now, you

Zebul is scolding Gaal with this rhetorical question. Alternate translation: "You are not speaking proudly now, you" or "You are not proud now, you" (See: Rhetorical Question)

you who said, 'Who is Abimelech that we should serve him?'

Zebul is quoting Gaal's boast back to Gaal. This can be translated as a statement and as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: "you who said that we should not serve Abimelech." (See: Rhetorical Question and Direct and Indirect Quotations)

Are these not the men you despised?

Zebul is challenging Gaal with this rhetorical question. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Here are the men that you despised." (See: Rhetorical Question)

despised

strongly disliked or hated

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- we should serve him
- go out

Translation Words - UST

- men
- to rule over us
- go out

> **ULT**
>
> **38** Then Zebul said to him, "Where then is your mouth, with which you said, 'Who is Abimelech that we should serve him?' Is this not the people who you regard it with contempt? Indeed, go out now and fight against him."
>
> **UST**
>
> **38** Zebul said to Gaal, "Now your bragging is worthless! You said, 'We should not allow Abimelech to rule over us?' You made fun of these men. So now go out and fight them!"

Judges 9:39

Gaal

See how you translated this name in Judges 9:26.

Translation Words - ULT

- So…went out
- the citizens of

Translation Words - UST

- So…outside the city
- the men of

ULT

39 So Gaal went out before the citizens of Shechem, and he fought against Abimelech.

UST

39 So Gaal led the men of Shechem outside the city to fight the army of Abimelech.

Judges 9:40

Many fell with deadly wounds

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "And many men died of wounds" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- the city gate
- fell

Translation Words - UST

- the city gate
- and they killed

ULT

40 Abimelech pursued him, and he fled from his presence. Many fell fatally wounded as far as the entrance of the city gate.

UST

40 Abimelech and his men pursued them, and they killed many of Gaal's men before they could return safely inside the city gate.

Judges 9:41

Arumah

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zebul

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Judges 9:28.

Gaal

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in Judges 9:26.

Translation Words - ULT

- his brothers

Translation Words - UST

- his brothers

ULT
41 Then Abimelech settled in Arumah. Zebul drove Gaal and his brothers away from living in Shechem.

UST
41 Abimelech then stayed at Arumah, about five miles away from Shechem, and Zebul's men forced Gaal and his brothers to leave Shechem.

Judges 9:42

this was reported to Abimelech

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "someone reported this to Abimelech" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- went out
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- got ready to leave the city and work
- the people of Shechem

ULT

42 Now it happened that the next day the people went out into the field, and they reported it to Abimelech.

UST

42 The next day, the people of Shechem got ready to leave the city and work in their fields. When someone told Abimelech about that,

Judges 9:43

divided them into three units

"separated them into 3 groups" (See: Numbers)

they set an ambush in the fields

"they hid in the fields to attack the people by surprise"

he attacked

Here "he" refers to Abimelech who represents himself and all of his soldiers. Alternate translation: "they attacked" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- the people
- units
- were going out

Translation Words - UST

- his men
- the people
- groups
- coming

ULT

43 So he took the people, and he split up into three units. Then he waited in ambush in the field. When he saw and look, the people were going out of the city, then he rose up against them and he killed them.

UST

43 he divided his men into three groups, and told them to hide in the fields. So they did that. And when they saw the people coming out of the city, they jumped up and attacked them.

Judges 9:44

the units

"the groups of soldiers"

other two

"other 2" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- the gate of
- units

Translation Words - UST

- gate
- groups

ULT

44 Abimelech and the units that were with him spread out and they stood at the entrance of the gate of the city. But two units spread out against everyone who was in the field and they killed them.

UST

44 Abimelech and the men who were with him ran to the city gate and blocked it. The other two groups ran out to the people in the fields and attacked them.

Judges 9:45

Abimelech fought...He tore down

Here "Abimelech" represents himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Abimelech and his soldiers fought...They tore down" (See: Synecdoche)

against the city

Here "city" represents the people. Alternate translation: "against the people of Shechem" (See: Metonymy)

tore down

"demolished"

spread salt over it

> **ULT**
>
> **45** Abimelech fought against the city all that day. He captured the city, and he killed the people who were in it. Then he tore down the city and scattered salt on it.
>
> **UST**
>
> **45** Abimelech and his men fought all day. They captured the city and killed all the people. They tore down all the buildings, and then they threw salt over the ground to try to keep anything from growing there again.

"spread salt over the land." Spreading salt over land keeps anything from growing there. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- he killed

Translation Words - UST

- all the people
- killed

Judges 9:46

the house

Here this represents a temple. (See: Metonymy)

El-Berith

The word "El" means "god." This is the same false god as "Baal-Berith" in Judges 8:33. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the lords of
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the leaders who lived in
- which was also a temple of

ULT

46 When all the lords of the tower of Shechem heard, they went into the citadel of the house of El-Berith.

UST

46 When the leaders who lived in the tower outside of Shechem heard what had happened, they ran and hid inside the fortress, which was also a temple of their god El-Berith.

Judges 9:47

Abimelech was told

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told Abimelech" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

• the lords of

Translation Words - UST

• the leaders

ULT

47 Then it was reported to Abimelech that all the lords of the tower of Shechem had assembled themselves.

UST

47 But someone told Abimelech that all the leaders had gathered there.

Judges 9:48

Mount Zalmon

This is the name of a mountain. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- and set it
- in his hand
- the people
- the people (2)
- and cut off

Translation Words - UST

- and put them
- with
- the men
- all the men (2)
- cut

Judges 9:49

piled

This means to stack the branches into a large heap.

about a thousand men

"about 1,000" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then they piled them
- the people
- So...cut off
- As a result...died
- with fire

Translation Words - UST

- They went to...and piled the branches
- his men
- So...cut
- and killed...So...died
- a fire...the fire

ULT

49 So all the people also each cut off a branch and they went after Abimelech. Then they piled them on top of the underground chamber, thus on account of them they burned the underground chamber with fire. As a result all the distinguished people in the tower of Shechem also died, about a thousand men and women.

UST

49 So his men all cut branches carried them down the mountain, following Abimelech. They went to the fortress and piled the branches against its walls. Then they kindled a fire, and the fire burned down the fortress and killed all the people who were inside. So all the people who were inside the fortress— about a thousand men and women— died.

Judges 9:50

Thebez

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

encamped against Thebez

"camped outside the city of Thebez"

Judges 9:51

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

  • the prominent citizens of

Translation Words - UST

  • leaders of

ULT

51 But there was a strong tower in the midst of the city, so all of the men and the women and all the prominent citizens of the city fled to there. They closed it up behind themselves and they went up on the roof of the tower.

UST

51 But there was a strong tower inside the city. So all the men, women, and leaders of the city ran to the tower. When they were all inside, they locked the door. Then they climbed up to the roof of the tower.

Judges 9:52

fought against it

"attacked it"

Translation Words - ULT

- with fire

Translation Words - UST

- to light a fire

Judges 9:53

upper millstone

Two large, flat, round stones were used to grind grain in a mill. An upper millstone was the top one that was rolled on the lower one to crush the grain in between them.

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of

Translation Words - UST

- head

ULT

53 But one woman threw down an upper millstone onto the head of Abimelech and it crushed his skull.

UST

53 But when Abimelech came near the doorway, a woman who was on the roof dropped the upper half of a large grinding stone on his head, which cracked the bone of his skull.

Judges 9:54

armor-bearer

This is the man who carried the weapons of Abimelech.

pierced him through

This means the young man put the sword right through the body of Abimelech.

Translation Words - ULT

- and put me to death
- killed him
- so that he died
- your sword
- the young man
- his young man
- Then he cried out

Translation Words - UST

- and kill me with it
- killed Abimelech
- and Abimelech died
- your sword
- the young man
- the young man
- Abimelech...called

ULT

54 Then he cried out hurriedly to the young man bearing his armor, and he said to him, "Draw out your sword and put me to death, lest they will say about me, 'A woman killed him.'" So his young man stabbed him so that he died.

UST

54 Abimelech quickly called to the young man who carried Abimelech's weapons, and said, "Pull out your sword and kill me with it! I do not want people to say 'A woman killed Abimelech.'" So the young man thrust his sword into Abimelech, and Abimelech died.

Judges 9:55

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite

Judges 9:56

seventy

"70" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- his…brothers
- God
- the evil of
- to his father
- by killing
- Thus…avenged

Translation Words - UST

- his brothers
- God
- for all the evil things
- to his father
- by murdering
- In that way…punished

ULT

56 Thus God avenged the evil of
Abimelech that he did to his father by
killing his seventy brothers.

UST

56 In that way God punished Abimelech
for all the evil things that he had done
to his father by murdering all seventy of
his brothers.

Judges 9:57

made all the evil of the men of Shechem turn back on their own heads

"Evil turn back on their heads" here is an idiom. Alternate translation: "punished the men of Shechem for all the evil they had done" (See: Idiom)

on them came the curse of Jotham son of Jerub Baal

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "the curse of Jotham son of Jerub Baal happened to them" (See: Idiom)

Jerub Baal

This is another name for Gideon. See how you translated this name in Judges 6:32.

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- God
- caused to return back
- the evil of
- upon their own heads

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- God
- also punished
- for the evil things that they had done
- head

ULT

57 All the evil of the men of Shechem God caused to return back upon their own heads and on them came the curse of Jotham, the son of Jerubbaal.

UST

57 God also punished the men of Shechem for the evil things that they had done. And when these things happened, it made true the curse of Jotham son of Gideon.

Judges 10

Judges 10 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the account of Jephthah (Judges 10-12).

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel's punishment

In Judges, Israel's actions are connected to their obedience to Yahweh. When Israel does evil, they are oppressed. (See: evil, wicked, unpleasant and oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor)

Judges 10:1

Tola…Puah…Dodo

These are names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Shamir

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

arose to deliver Israel

"came to deliver Israel" or "became the leader to deliver Israel"

deliver Israel

Here "Israel" represents the people of Israel. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Israel
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- the son of
- and grandson of (2)
- the Israelites
- the descendants of Ephraim live

ULT

1 Now after Abimelech, Tola, the son of Puah, the son of Dodo, a man of Issachar, arose in order to deliver Israel. He settled in Shamir, in the hill country of Ephraim.

UST

1 After Abimelech died, Tola the son of Puah and grandson of Dodo became the leader to rescue the Israelites from their enemies. He belonged to the tribe of Issachar, but he lived in Shamir city in the hilly area where the descendants of Ephraim live.

Judges 10:2

He judged Israel

Here "judged" means he led the people of Israel.

twenty-three years

"23 years" (See: Numbers)

was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- He judged
- He died

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- He ruled as judge over
- Then he died

ULT

2 He judged Israel twenty-three years. He died and was buried in Shamir.

UST

2 He ruled as judge over Israel for twenty-three years. Then he died and was buried in Shamir.

Judges 10:3

He was followed by Jair the Gileadite

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jair the Gileadite was leader after Tola" (See: Active or Passive)

Jair

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

the Gileadite

Jair was from the tribe of Gilead.

He judged Israel

Here "judged" means he led the people of Israel.

Israel

Here "Israel" represents the people of Israel. (See: Metonymy)

twenty-two years

"22 years" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- He judged
- the Gileadite

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- ruled as judge over
- the Gileadite

ULT

3 Then arose after him Jair the Gileadite. He judged Israel twenty-two years.

UST

3 After Tola died, Jair (the Gileadite) ruled as judge over Israel for twenty-two years.

Judges 10:4

thirty sons

"30 sons" (See: Numbers)

Havvoth Jair

This is the name of a region, which is named after a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

to this day

This means to the time when the book of Judges was being written.

Translation Words - ULT

- they call
- sons
- the Gilead

Translation Words - UST

- are…named
- sons
- Gilead

ULT

4 Now he had thirty sons, riding on thirty donkeys. There were thirty cities for them, they call them Havvoth Jair to this day, that are in the land of the Gilead.

UST

4 He had thirty sons, and each of them had his own donkey to ride on. They had thirty cities in the region of Gilead that are still named even today, Havvoth Jair (or the Cities of Jair).

Judges 10:5

was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him" (See: Active or Passive)

Kamon

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...died

Translation Words - UST

- Then...died

Judges 10:6

added to the evil they had done in the sight of Yahweh

This speaks of evil as if it were an object that a person could add to and make bigger. Alternate translation: "continued doing what Yahweh said was evil" (See: Metaphor)

in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. Alternate translation: "according to Yahweh" (See: Metaphor)

Ashtoreths

This is the plural of Ashtoroth, who was worshiped as a goddess in many different forms. See how you translated this in Judges 2:13.

They abandoned Yahweh and no longer worshiped him

The author basically said the same thing twice for emphasis. These can be combined. Alternate translation: "They completely stopped worshiping Yahweh" (See: Parallelism)

They abandoned Yahweh

No longer obeying and worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if the people left Yahweh and went somewhere else. (See: Metaphor)

ULT

6 The sons of Israel continued to do this evil in the eyes of Yahweh: they worshiped the Baals, and the Ashtoreths, and the gods of Aram, and the gods of Sidon, and the gods of Moab, and the gods of the sons of Ammon, and the gods of the Philistines. They forsook Yahweh and did not serve him.

UST

6 Again the Israelites did things that Yahweh said were evil. They worshiped the Baal idols and female fertility idols called the Asthoreths. They worshiped the gods of the people groups of Aram, Sidon, Moab, and Ammon people groups, and the gods of the Philistines. They turned away from Yahweh and stopped worshiping him.

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- the sons of
- and the gods of
- and the gods of
- and the gods of (2)
- and the gods of (3)
- and the gods of (4)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Moab
- the Philistines
- did…serve him

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- son
- the gods of
- God
- God (2)
- God (3)
- the gods of (4)

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the Israelites
- Moab
- the Philistines
- worshiping him

Judges 10:7

Yahweh burned with anger toward Israel

Yahweh becoming angry is spoken of as if anger were a burning fire.
Alternate translation: "Yahweh was very angry at Israel" (See:
Metaphor)

he sold them into the hand of the Philistines and into the hand of the Ammonites

Yahweh allowing the Philistines and the Ammonites to defeat the
Israelites is spoken of as if he sold the Israelites to them. (See:
Metaphor)

into the hand

Here "hand" represents power or control. (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Yahweh
- against Israel
- the Philistines
- into the hand of
- and into the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- Ammonites
- Yahweh
- with them
- the Philistines
- hand
- and

ULT

7 The anger of Yahweh burned against
Israel, so he gave them over into the
hand of the Philistines and into the
hand of the sons of Ammon.

UST

7 So Yahweh was very angry with them,
and he allowed the Philistines and
Ammonites to conquer Israel.

Judges 10:8

crushed and oppressed

These two words basically mean the same and emphasize how much the Israelites suffered. Alternate translation: "terribly oppressed" (See: Doublet)

eighteen years

"18 years" (See: Numbers)

who were beyond the Jordan

This means on the east side of the Jordan River.

which is in Gilead

"this region is also called Gilead"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Israel
- the Jordan
- the Amorites

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- the people of
- the Israelites
- Israel
- the Jordan River
- the Amorites

ULT

8 They shattered and oppressed the sons of Israel in that year, and for eighteen years all the sons of Israel who were on the opposite side of the Jordan in the land of the Amorites, which is in the Gilead.

UST

8 They crushed and oppressed the Israelites that year, and for eighteen years they oppressed all the people of Israel who lived on the east side of the Jordan River. That was the land of the Amorites, which is in Gilead.

Judges 10:9

Judah…Benjamin

"Judah" and "Benjamin" refer to the people belonging to those tribes. Alternate translation: "the people of the tribe of Judah…the people of the tribe of Benjamin" (See: Metonymy)

house of Ephraim

The "house" refers to the people of the tribe of Ephraim. Alternate translation: "the people of the tribe of Ephraim" (See: Metonymy)

so that Israel was greatly distressed

"Israel" refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "so that the people of Israel suffered much" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- for Israel
- the Jordan
- Ephraim
- against Judah
- Then…crossed over
- and as a result there was…distress

Translation Words - UST

- the Amonites
- the Israelites
- the Jordan River
- Ephraim
- against the people of the tribes of Judah
- Then…crossed over
- They caused…to live their lives with…fear and dread

ULT

9 Then the sons of Ammon also crossed over the Jordan to fight against Judah, against Benjamin, and against the house of Ephraim, and as a result there was for Israel exceedingly great distress.

UST

9 Then the Amonites crossed over the Jordan River to fight against the people of the tribes of Judah, Benjamin, and Ephraim. They caused the Israelites' to live their lives with great fear and dread.

Judges 10:10

the people of Israel called out to Yahweh

This means the people of Israel desperately asked Yahweh for help.

because we abandoned our God

The people no longer obeying and worshiping Yahweh is spoken of as if they left Yahweh and went somewhere else. (See: Metaphor)

abandoned our God

The people are speaking to Yahweh and refer to him as "our God." This can be stated in second person. Alternate translation: "abandoned you, our God" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

Translation Words - ULT

   • We have sinned
   • the sons of
   • our God
   • Yahweh
   • Israel
   • we have forsaken
   • Then...cried out

Translation Words - UST

   • We have sinned
   • the Israelites
   • you
   • Yahweh
   • the Israelites
   • We have abandoned
   • So...cried out

ULT

10 Then the sons of Israel cried out to Yahweh, saying, "We have sinned against you, because we have forsaken our God and we have served the Baals."

UST

10 So the Israelites cried out to Yahweh, saying "We have sinned against you. We have abandoned you, and we have worshiped the idols of Baal."

Judges 10:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the Philistines
- the Amorite
- from the Egyptians

Translation Words - UST

- them
- the Ammonites
- Yahweh
- them
- the Philistines
- the Amorites
- from the people groups of the Egyptians

ULT

11 Then Yahweh said to the sons of Israel, "Was it not from the Egyptians, and from the Amorite, and from the sons of Ammon, and from the Philistines,

UST

11 Yahweh answered them, saying, "I delivered you from the people groups of the Egyptians, the Amorites, the Ammonites, the Philistines,

Judges 10:12

and also from the Sidonians?

God is rebuking the people of Israel for their worship of other gods.
The rhetorical question that begins with the words "Did I not deliver
you" in verse 11 ends here. This rhetorical question can be translated
as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am the one who delivered
you...and also from the Sidonians." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Maonites

These are the people from the clan or family of Maon. (See: How to
Translate Names)

from their power

Here "power" represents the Amalekites and the Maonites. Alternate translation: "from them" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- from their hand
- and I delivered

Translation Words - UST

- to freedom
- and I brought

ULT

12 and the Sidonians and Amalek and
Maon, when they oppressed you that
you cried out to me, and I delivered you
from their hand?

UST

12 and also from the Sidonians, the
Amalekites, and the Maonites. I did this
because they hurt and imprisoned you.
You cried out to me, and I brought you
to freedom.

Judges 10:13

you abandoned me again

The people no longer obeying and worshiping Yahweh is spoken of
as if they left Yahweh and went somewhere else. (See: Metaphor)

I will not keep adding to the times I deliver you

The phrase "keep adding to the times" is an idiom that means to
continue to do something. You can make explicit the implicit
meaning of Yahweh's saying. Alternate translation: "I will not keep on
delivering you again and again" or "You can be sure that I will stop
delivering you" (See: Idiom and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit
Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- gods
- have abandoned

Translation Words - UST

- gods
- have abandoned

ULT

13 Yet you have abandoned me and you
have served other gods. Therefore, I will
not continue to deliver you.

UST

13 But now you have abandoned me,
and you have been worshiping other
gods. Therefore, I will not rescue you
again and again.

Judges 10:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the gods
- your distress
- and cry out
- should deliver
- Go

Translation Words - UST

- those gods…them
- you are in trouble
- So ask…to help you
- who rescue
- walk, walked

ULT

14 Go and cry out to the gods that you have chosen for yourselves. They should deliver you at the time of your distress."

UST

14 You have chosen those gods to be the ones you worship. So ask them to help you. Let them be the ones who rescue you when you are in trouble!"

Judges 10:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- We have sinned
- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- that is good

Translation Words - UST

- We have sinned
- the people of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- in whatever way

ULT

15 Then the sons of Israel said to Yahweh, "We have sinned. You do to us according to all that is good in your eyes. Only rescue us please this day."

UST

15 But the people of Israel said to Yahweh, "We have sinned. Punish us in whatever way you wish. But please rescue us today!"

Judges 10:16

foreign gods among them

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of this statement. Alternate translation: "foreign gods whose images they possessed" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Yahweh could bear Israel's misery no longer

Here Israel refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "And Yahweh did not want the people of Israel to suffer any longer" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- His soul
- gods
- Yahweh
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- he
- the idols of…gods
- Yahweh. He
- Israel

ULT

16 They removed the foreign gods from their midst and they worshiped Yahweh. Then His soul became dismayed with the suffering of Israel.

UST

16 Then the Israelites threw away the idols of the foreign gods they had cherished, and they worshiped Yahweh. He saw that they were suffering very much, and he reached the limit of his endurance over the misery of Israel.

Judges 10:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of (2)
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- The Ammon people group
- The Israelite soldiers (2)
- The Israelite soldiers

ULT

17 Now the sons of Ammon were summoned and they encamped in Gilead. So the sons of Israel gathered together and they encamped at Mizpah.

UST

17 The Ammon people group gathered to fight against the Israelites, and they set up their tents in Gilead. The Israelite soldiers gathered and set up their tents at Mizpah.

Judges 10:18

Who is the man who will begin to fight the Ammonites?

"Who will lead our army to fight against the Ammonites?"

Translation Words - ULT

- against the sons of
- the people
- the princes of

Translation Words - UST

- against the
- the people of
- The leaders of

ULT

18 Then the people, the princes of Gilead each said to his fellow man, "Who is the man who will begin to fight against the sons of Ammon? He will become the leader over all who are residing in Gilead."

UST

18 The leaders of the people of Gilead said to each other, "Who will lead our attack against the Ammonite army? The one who will lead us will become the leader of all us who live in Gilead."

Judges 11

Judges 11 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The account of Jephthah continues in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Jephthah the leader

Jephthah was half Israelite and half Canaanite by birth. While all of the judges were called by Yahweh, it is the leaders who called Jephthah to help them, but Yahweh still used Jephthah to help them.

Judges 11:1

Gileadite

This is someone who is from the region of Gilead. It is a coincidence that his father's name is also Gilead. See how you translated this in Judges 10:3. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the Gileadite
- a warrior of
- strength
- committing fornication

Translation Words - UST

- But his mother was
- There was a man from the region of Gilead
- a great warrior
- a great warrior
- a prostitute

ULT

1 Now Jephthah the Gileadite was a warrior of strength, but he was the son of a woman committing fornication. Gilead bore Jephthah.

UST

1 There was a man from the region of Gilead named Jephthah. He proved himself to be a great warrior. But his mother was a prostitute. His father was Gilead.

Judges 11:2

When his wife's sons grew up

"When the sons of Gilead's wife became adults"

Translation Words - ULT

- You will...inherit
- sons
- the sons of
- a son of
- from the house of
- our father

Translation Words - UST

- you will...receive any of his property
- several sons
- they
- the son of
- So when...dies
- our father

ULT

2 The wife of Gilead also gave birth to his sons. When the sons of the wife grew up, they drove out Jephthah and they said to him, "You will not inherit from the house of our father since a son of another woman are you."

UST

2 Gilead's wife gave birth to several sons. When they grew up, they forced Jephthah to leave home, saying to him, "You are the son of another woman, not the son of our mother. So when our father dies, you will not receive any of his property."

Judges 11:3

the land of Tob

Tob is the name of a region. (See: How to Translate Names)

they traveled with him

"they followed him" or "they went everywhere together"

Translation Words - ULT

- and they went about
- his brothers
- associated

Translation Words - UST

- and they went out raiding
- his brothers
- While he was there...joined together

ULT

3 So Jephthah fled from the presence of his brothers and he settled in the land of Tob. Unprincipled men associated around Jephthah and they went about with him.

UST

3 So Jephthah ran away from his brothers, and he lived in the land of Tob. While he was there, some lawless men joined together with Jepthah, and they went out raiding together.

Judges 11:4

Some days later

"Some time later"

made war against Israel

The phrase "made war" is an idiom which means that they attacked Israel and were at war with them. Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "attacked the people of Israel" (See: Idiom and Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the soldiers of
- the soldiers of Israel

ULT

4 Now it happened after some days that the sons of Ammon fought with Israel.

UST

4 Some time later, the soldiers of the Ammon people group attacked the soldiers of Israel.

Judges 11:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- the elders of

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Israel, Israelites
- the leaders of

ULT

5 It was when the sons of Ammon fought with Israel, that the elders of Gilead went to summon Jephthah from the land of Tob.

UST

5 And the leaders of Gilead went out to find Jephthah so they could bring him back, and away from the land of Tob.

Judges 11:6

that we may fight with

"so that we can fight against"

Translation Words - ULT

- against the sons of
- Come

Translation Words - UST

- the army of
- Come with us

Judges 11:7

my father's house

Here "house" refers to people living in the house. Alternate translation: "my family" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- my father
- trouble
- to the elders of
- of the house of

Translation Words - UST

- my father
- have trouble
- elder, older, old
- s house

Judges 11:8

That is why we are turning to you now

The word "that" refers to what Jephthah said about them being in trouble. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "We are turning to you now because we are in trouble" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

fight with the people of Ammon

"fight against the people of Ammon"

Translation Words - ULT

- against the sons of
- we have turned back
- the elders of

Translation Words - UST

- against the soldiers of
- we are coming
- The leaders of

ULT

8 Then the elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, "Rightly, now we have turned back to you; so come with us and fight against the sons of Ammon, and you will become commander for us over all residing in Gilead."

UST

8 The leaders of Gilead said to Jephthah, "That is why we are coming to you now. Come and fight with us and lead our soldiers against the soldiers of Ammon, and you will be the leader over everyone who lives in Gilead."

Judges 11:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- against the sons of
- Yahweh
- bring...back
- I
- the elders of

Translation Words - UST

- against the army of
- Yahweh
- I go back to Gilead with you
- I
- them

ULT

9 Jephthah said to the elders of Gilead, "If you bring me back to fight against the sons of Ammon, and Yahweh gives them over before me, I will actually be your leader?"

UST

9 Jephthah answered them, "If I go back to Gilead with you to fight against the army of Ammon, and if Yahweh helps us to defeat them, then I will be your leader."

Judges 11:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the elders of

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- They

ULT

10 Then the elders of Gilead said to Jephthah, " Yahweh will be a witness between us, surely according to your word, thus we will do!"

UST

10 They replied, "Yahweh is a witness to everything we are saying to you. So he will punish us if we do not what we are promising you."

Judges 11:11

leader and commander

These two words basically have the same meaning repeated to emphasize how important Jephthah had became. You can combine the two words. Alternate translation: "commander" (See: Doublet)

When he was before Yahweh in Mizpah, Jephthah repeated all the promises he made

This is an idiom. Here the phrase "before Yahwheh" means that he repeated his promises as a vow before Yahweh. Alternate translation: "When Jephthah was in Mizpah he repeated all of these promises as a vow before Yahweh" (See: Idiom)

all the promises he made

This refers to the promises he made to the leaders of Gilead about becoming their leader.

Translation Words - ULT

- and…set
- Yahweh
- the people
- the elders of

Translation Words - UST

- and…appointed…to be
- Yahweh
- the people
- them

ULT

11 So Jephthah went with the elders of Gilead, and the people set him as commander and leader over themselves. Jephthah spoke all his words before Yahweh in the Mizpah.

UST

11 So Jephthah went with them back to Gilead, and the people appointed him to be their leader and the commander of their army. And Jephthah repeated to Yahweh there at Mizpah the terms of the agreement he had made.

Judges 11:12

What is this conflict between us

"Why is there conflict between us?" Jephthah is asking the king why they are angry with Israel.

Why have you come with force to take our land

The word "you" refers to the King of Ammon and represents himself and his soldiers. Alternate translation: "Why have your soldiers come to seize our land" (See: Synecdoche)

come with force to take

"come to forcefully take"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- messengers
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- the…people group
- messengers
- the king of

ULT

12 Then Jephthah sent messengers to the king of the sons of Ammon, saying, "What has happened with respect to me and to you, that you have come against me to fight over my land?"

UST

12 Jephthah sent messengers to the king of the Ammon people group. They asked the king, "What have we done to make you angry, so your army is coming to fight against the people in our land?"

Judges 11:13

Arnon...Jabbok

These are the names of two rivers. (See: How to Translate Names)

over to the Jordan

"on the other side of the Jordan River"

in peace

"peacefully" or "and do not try to defend them"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- return
- Israel
- the Jordan
- out of Egypt
- the messengers of
- The king of
- my land

Translation Words - UST

- son
- give...back to us
- You...You
- east of the Jordan River
- from Egypt
- messenger
- The king
- our land...all our land

ULT

13 The king of the sons of Ammon responded to the messengers of Jephthah, "Because Israel seized my land at his going up out of Egypt, from Arnon up to the Jabbok, and over to the Jordan. Now return them in peace."

UST

13 The king replied, "You took our land when you came here from Egypt. You took all our land east of the Jordan River, from the Arnon River in the south to the Jabbok River in the north. So now give it back to us without a fight."

Judges 11:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- messengers
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- son
- the messengers
- the king

ULT
14 Then Jephthah continued again and sent messengers to the king of the sons of Ammon,

UST
14 So Jephthah sent the messengers to the king again.

Judges 11:15

he said

Here the word "he" refers to the messenger who was speaking to the king. This may be written with the word "they" as in the UST, referring to the group of messengers. Alternate translation: "Jephthah told the messengers to say" or "they said" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Moab
- the land of
- the land of

Translation Words - UST

- the Ammonites
- Israel
- the Moabites
- the land of
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

15 and he said to him, "Thus Jephthah said: Israel did not take the land of Moab or the land of the sons of Ammon.

UST

15 They said to him, "This is what Jephthah says: 'Israel did not take the land of the Moabites and the Ammonites.

Judges 11:16

they came up from Egypt

Whenever people traveled to the promised land it is referred to as going "up" to the promised land. When the Israelites left Egypt they were on their way to the promised land. Alternate translation: "they left Egypt" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- from Egypt
- through the wilderness

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- out of Egypt
- through the desert

ULT

16 However in their coming up from Egypt, Israel went through the wilderness as far as the Sea of Reeds and he came to Kadesh.

UST

16 When the Israelite people came out of Egypt, they walked through the desert to the Red Sea, and then walked across it and traveled to the town of Kadesh at the border of the region of Edom.

Judges 11:17

General Information:

Jephthah's messengers continue to speak.

When Israel sent messengers

The messengers were sent by the leaders of Israel. Alternate translation: "When the leaders of Israel sent messengers" (See: Synecdoche)

pass through

"go through" or "cross"

would not listen

This phrase is an idiom that means to "refuse." Alternate translation: "refused" or "denied their request" (See: Idiom)

They also sent messengers to the king of Moab

The reason that Israel sent messengers to the king of Moab can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "They also send messengers to the king of Moab with the same request" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

but he refused

The king of Moab refused Israel's request to pass through Moab. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "but he also refused and would not let them pass through the land of Moab" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- Moab
- messengers
- the king of
- the king of
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- They
- the Israelites
- the Moabites
- messengers
- the king of
- the king of
- the king of

ULT

17 When Israel sent messengers to the king of Edom, saying, 'Please may I pass through your land,' the king of Edom would not listen. He likewise sent to the king of Moab, but he was not willing. So Israel stayed at Kadesh.

UST

17 They sent messengers to the king of the Edomites to say to him, "Please allow us to walk across your land." But the king of the Edomites refused. Later they sent the same message to the king of the Moabites, but he also refused to allow them to go through his land. So the Israelites stayed at Kadesh for a long time.

Judges 11:18

Arnon

This is the name of a river. See how you translated this in Judges 11:13.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moab
- Moab (2)
- Moab (3)
- Moab
- through the wilderness
- the land of
- the land of

Translation Words - UST

- Moab
- Moab (2)
- Moab (3)
- Moab
- into the desert
- the borders of
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

18 Then he went through the wilderness and turned away from the land of Edom and the land of Moab, and he went to the place of the rising of the sun for the land of Moab. They camped on the other side of the Arnon, but they did not go within the border of Moab, for the Arnon was the border of Moab.

UST

18 Then the Israelites went into the desert and walked outside the borders of Edom and Moab. They walked east of Moab, and then north of the Arnon River, which is the northern border of Moab. They did not cross into the territory of Moab, for the Arnon was the border of Moab.

Judges 11:19

General Information:

Jephthah's messengers continue to speak.

Israel sent messengers to Sihon

The messengers were sent by the leaders of Israel. Alternate translation: "When the leaders of Israel sent messengers" (See: Synecdoche)

Sihon

This is the name of a person. (See: How to Translate Names)

Heshbon

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- the Amorite
- messengers
- the king of
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- the leaders of Israel
- They
- the Amorites
- a message
- the king of
- who ruled in

ULT

19 Israel sent messengers to Sihon, the king of the Amorite, the king of Heshbon. Israel said to him, 'Please, let us pass through your land as far as my place.'

UST

19 Then the leaders of Israel sent a message to Sihon, the king of the Amorites, who ruled in Heshbon. They asked him, "Please allow us Israelite people to cross through your land so we may go into the land that is ours."

Judges 11:20

Jahaz

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

But Sihon did not trust Israel to pass through his territory

Sihon did not trust the people of Israel to pass through his land peacefully. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "But Sihon did not trust the people of Israel to pass through his territory peacefully" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

there he fought

The word "he" refers to Sihon and represents himself and his army.
Alternate translation: "there they fought" or "there his army fought" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- did...trust
- his people

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- Israel
- did...trust
- his soldiers

ULT

20 But Sihon did not trust Israel passing through within his border. So Sihon assembled all of his people together and they camped at Jahaz, and he fought with Israel.

UST

20 But Sihon did not trust the Israelites to pass through his land in peace. So he gathered all his soldiers and they set up their tents at the village of Jahaz, and there he fought against Israel.

Judges 11:21

General Information:

Jephthah's messengers continue to speak.

Sihon

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 11:19.

gave Sihon and all his people into the hand of Israel

Here "hand" refers to power to defeat in battle. Alternate translation: "gave Israel power over Sihon and all his people" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Thus…possessed
- the God of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- Israel
- the Amorite
- into the hand of
- his people
- of the land of
- region

Translation Words - UST

- Then…took possession of
- the God of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the Israelite army
- they
- the Amorites
- hand
- his army
- the land
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

21 Then Yahweh, the God of Israel, gave Sihon and all of his people over into the hand of Israel and they defeated them. Thus Israel possessed all of the land of the Amorite inhabiting that region.

UST

21 But Yahweh, the God of Israel, gave help to the Israelite army and they defeated Sihon and his army. Then they took possession of all the land where the Amorites had lived.

Judges 11:22

Arnon...Jabbok

See how you translated the names of these rivers in Judges 11:13.

Translation Words - ULT

- They possessed
- the Jordan
- the Amorite

Translation Words - UST

- The Israelites took
- the Jordan River in the west
- the Amorites

ULT

22 They possessed everything within the territory of the Amorite, from the Arnon to the Jabbok, and from the wilderness as far as the Jordan.

UST

22 The Israelites took all the land that belonged to the Amorites, from the Arnon River in the south to the Jabbok River in the north, and from the desert in the east to the Jordan River in the west.

Judges 11:23

General Information:

Jephthah's messengers continue to speak.

should you now take possession of their land?

Jephthah is rebuking the king of the Ammonites with this rhetorical question. The word "their" refers to the Israel. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "therefore, you should not take possession of their land." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- the God of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- the Amorite
- his people

Translation Words - UST

- the God of
- It was Yahweh...who
- Israel
- the Israelites
- the Amorites
- people, people group,

ULT

23 Since therefore Yahweh, the God of Israel, has expelled the Amorite out of the presence of his people Israel, will you indeed possess it?

UST

23 It was Yahweh, the God of Israel, who forced the Amorites to leave the places where they lived, as the Israelites advanced. So do you now think that you can now take possession of their land?

Judges 11:24

Will you not take over the land that Chemosh, your god, gives you?

Jephthah is rebuking the king of the Ammonites with a rhetorical question. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should only take over the land that Chemosh, your god, gives you." (See: Rhetorical Question)

take over

This is an idiom which means to take control of something. Alternate translation: "take control of" or "take possession of" (See: Idiom)

Chemosh

This is the name of a false god. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- your god
- our God
- Yahweh

Translation Words - UST

- your god
- our God
- Yahweh

ULT

24 Will you not take possession if Chemosh, your god, allows you to possess it? So all that Yahweh our God has dispossessed before us, we will possess it.

UST

24 You have the right to the land when your god Chemosh gives it to you. And we will live in the land that Yahweh our God has given to us!

Judges 11:25

Now are you really better than Balak son of Zippor, king of Moab?

Jephthah is rebuking the king of the Ammonites with a rhetorical question. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You are not better than Balak son of Zippor, who was king of Moab." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Balak...Zippor

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Did he dare to have an argument with Israel?

Jephthah is rebuking the king of the Ammonites with a rhetorical question. This question can be translated with a statement. Alternate translation: "Yet he did not dare to have an argument with Israel." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Did he ever wage war against them?

Jephthah is rebuking the king of the Ammonites with a rhetorical question. This question can be translated with a statement. Alternate translation: "Nor did he ever wage war against them." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Israel
- are...really better
- Moab
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- Israel
- better
- Moab
- the king of

ULT

25 Now are you really better than Balak, the son of Zippor, the king of Moab? Did he dare contend with Israel or did he ever wage war against them?

UST

25 Are you better than Balak son of Zippor, the king of Moab? He never dared to fight against Israel!

Judges 11:26

General Information:

Jephthah's messengers continue to speak.

three hundred years

"300 years" (See: Numbers)

Heshbon

Translate the name of this city the same way that you did in Judges 11:19.

Aroer

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

why then did you not take them back during that time?

Jephthah is rebuking the king of the Ammonites with a rhetorical question. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "you should have taken them back during that time." or "now it is too late; you should have taken them back long ago." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the banks of

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- the Arnon River

ULT

26 While Israel resided three hundred years in Heshbon and in its villages, and in Aroer and in its villages, and in all the cities that are along the banks of the Arnon—why then did you not repossess during that time?

UST

26 For three hundred years the Israelites lived in the cities of Heshbon and Aroer, in the surrounding towns, and in all the cities along the Arnon River. Why have you Ammonites not taken back those cities during all those years?

Judges 11:27

I have not done you wrong, but you are doing me wrong by attacking me

Jephthah is speaking to the Sihon. Here Jephthah speaks about the Israelites as though they were himself and of the Ammonites as if they were Sihon their king. Alternate translation: "The Israelites have not done wrong to your people, but your people are doing us wrong by attacking us" (See: Synecdoche)

done you wrong...doing me wrong

This is an idiom. To do someone wrong means to do something wrong to them. Alternate translation: "treated you wrongly...treating me wrongly" or "treated you unfairly...treating me unfairly" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- have...sinned
- the sons of
- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the judge
- wrong

Translation Words - UST

- have...done wrong
- the people of
- the people of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- who is the judge
- wrong

ULT

27 I have not sinned against you, but you are doing wrong in dealing with me by fighting against me. Yahweh, the judge, will decide today between the sons of Israel and between the sons of Ammon."

UST

27 We have not done wrong against you, but you are doing wrong against me by attacking me and my army. I trust that Yahweh, who is the judge, will decide whether the people of Israel or the people of Ammon are in the right.'"

Judges 11:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the king of

Translation Words - UST

- son
- the king of

ULT

28 But the king of the sons of Ammon did not listen to the words of Jephthah that he had sent to him.

UST

28 But the king of Ammon ignored the warning contained in this message from Jephthah.

Judges 11:29

the Spirit of Yahweh came on Jephthah

This is an idiom which means that the Spirit influenced Jephthah's decisions. Alternate translation: "the Spirit of Yahweh took control of Jephthah" (See: Idiom)

he passed through Gilead and Manasseh…from Mizpah of Gilead

Jephthah passed through these places enlisting men for his army to go to war with the people of Ammon. The full meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "he gathered men for his army as he passed through Gilead and Manasseh…from Mizpah of Gilead" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the Spirit of
- Yahweh
- the Gilead
- and he passed through
- and he passed through

Translation Words - UST

- Ammonites
- the Spirit of
- Yahweh
- Gilead
- Jephthah went through…to enlist men for his army
- He finally gathered them together

ULT

29 Then the Spirit of Yahweh came on Jephthah, and he passed through the Gilead and Manasseh, and he passed through Mizpah of Gilead, and from Mizpah of Gilead he passed through the sons of Ammon.

UST

29 Then the Spirit of Yahweh took control of Jephthah. Jephthah went through Gilead and through the area where the tribe of Manasseh lived, to enlist men for his army. He finally gathered them together in the city of Mizpah in Gilead to fight against the Ammonites.

Judges 11:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- to Yahweh
- into my hand

Translation Words - UST

- the Ammonites
- to Yahweh
- to defeat

ULT

30 Jephthah vowed a vow to Yahweh and said, "If you truly give the sons of Ammon into my hand,

UST

30 There Jephthah made a solemn promise to Yahweh, saying "If you will give help to my army to defeat the Ammonites,

Judges 11:31

I will offer it up

This is an idiom which means to give something as an offering. Alternate translation: "I will offer it to you" or "I will sacrifice it to you" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- from the sons of
- to Yahweh
- a whole burnt offering
- my house
- comes out from

Translation Words - UST

- son
- to you
- I will sacrifice to you
- my house
- comes out

ULT

31 then it shall be the one who comes out, whoever comes out from the doors of my house to meet me when I return in peace from the sons of Ammon, that he will belong to Yahweh, and I will offer him up as a whole burnt offering."

UST

31 when I return from the battle, I will sacrifice to you whatever comes out of my house to greet me. That will belong to you."

Judges 11:32

So Jephthah passed through...Yahweh gave him victory

Since Jephthah was the leader of his army, he and his army are often spoken of as Jephthah himself. Alternate translation: "So Jephthah and his army passed through...Yahweh gave them victory" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Yahweh
- into his hand
- So...passed through

Translation Words - UST

- the Ammonites
- Yahweh
- to defeat them
- Then...went from Mizpah

ULT

32 So Jephthah passed through to the sons of Ammon to fight against them, and Yahweh gave them into his hand.

UST

32 Then Jephthah and his men went from Mizpah to attack the Ammonites, and Yahweh enabled his army to defeat them.

Judges 11:33

He attacked

Since Jephthah was the leader of his army, he and his army are often spoken of as Jephthah himself (verse 32). Alternate translation: "they attacked" (See: Synecdoche)

Aroer

Translate the name of this city the same way you did in Judges 11:26.

Minnith...Abel Keramim

These are the names of cities. (See: How to Translate Names)

twenty cities

"including 20 cities" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the Ammonites
- the Israelites
- the Israelites

ULT

33 Then he attacked them from Aroer and as far as your coming in to Minnith, twenty cities, and up to Abel Keramim, an exceedingly great slaughter. So the sons of Ammon were subdued by the presence of the sons of Israel.

UST

33 Jephthah and his men killed them, from the city of Aroer all the way to the area around the city of Minnith. They destroyed twenty cities, as far as the city of Abel Keramim. So the Israelites completely defeated the Ammonites.

Judges 11:34

tambourines

musical instruments with heads like drums that can be hit and with pieces of metal around their sides that sound when the instruments are shaken (See: Translate Unknowns)

Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- the Mizpah area
- his house
- was coming out

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- in Mizpah
- his home
- to come out of the house

ULT

34 Jephthah came into the Mizpah area, to his house, and look, his daughter was coming out to meet him with tambourines and with dancing. However, she was an only child; he did not have a son or daughter apart from her.

UST

34 When Jephthah returned to his home in Mizpah, his daughter was the first one to come out of the house to meet him. She was joyfully playing a tambourine and dancing. She was his only child and he had no other sons or daughters.

Judges 11:35

he tore his clothes

This is an act that shows mourning or great sadness. Alternate translation: "he tore his clothes from grief" (See: Symbolic Action)

You have crushed me with sorrow...you have become one who causes me pain

Jephthah said basically the same thing twice to emphasize that he was very sad" (See: Parallelism)

You have crushed me with sorrow

Here Jephthah speaks of his great sorrow as something that crushes him. Alternate translation: "You have caused me great sorrow" or "You have filled me with sorrow" (See: Metaphor)

you have become one who causes me pain

Here Jephthah talks about his great distress and trouble as if it were pain. Alternate translation: "you have become someone who troubles me" or "you cause me great distress" (See: Metaphor)

ULT

35 Now it happened when he saw her that he tore his garments and he said, "Alas, my daughter! Indeed, you have made me bow in grief, and you are among those who cause me pain! For I have opened my mouth to Yahweh and I am not able to turn back."

UST

35 When Jephthah saw his daughter, he tore his clothes to show that he was very sad about what he was going to do. He said to her, "My daughter, seeing you now, you have crushed me with a terrible sorrow, because I made a solemn promise to Yahweh to sacrifice the first one who came out of my house, and I must do what I promised."

I cannot turn back on my promise

This is an idiom. To turn back on a promise means to not do what you have promised to do. Alternate translation: "I must do what I have promised" or "I cannot break my promise" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- to turn back
- Indeed, you have made me bow in grief
- Indeed, you have made me bow in grief

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- do what I promised
- seeing you now, you have crushed me with a terrible sorrow
- seeing you now, you have crushed me with a terrible sorrow

Judges 11:36

has taken vengeance for you against your enemies, the Ammonites

Yahweh has taken vengence for him by defeating his enemies. The meaning of this can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "has taken vengeance for you against your enemies, the Ammonites, by defeating them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- against the sons of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- My father
- against your enemies
- came forth

Translation Words - UST

- the Ammonites
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- My father
- our enemies
- you promised, because you said that you would do that

ULT

36 Then she said to him, "My father, you have opened your mouth to Yahweh. Do to me according to what came forth from your mouth, after what Yahweh has done for you: complete vengeance against your enemies, against the sons of Ammon."

UST

36 His daughter said, "My father, you made a solemn promise to Yahweh. So you must do to me what you promised, because you said that you would do that if Yahweh helped you to defeat our enemies, the Ammonites."

Judges 11:37

Let this promise be kept for me

This can be stated in an active form. Alternate translation: "Keep this promise for me" or "Keep this promise concerning me" (See: Active or Passive)

grieve over my virginity

"weep because I am a virgin" or "cry because I will never be married"

Translation Words - ULT

- I
- her father

Translation Words - UST

- me
- ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

ULT

37 She said to her father, "Let this thing be done for me. Release me for two months, so I may go away and I will fall prostrate on the hills and I will weep on account of my virginity, I and my companions."

UST

37 Then she also said, "But allow me to do one thing. First, allow me to go into the hills and wander around for two months. Since I will never be married and have children, allow me and my friends to go and cry together."

Judges 11:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Go

Translation Words - UST

- All right, you may go

ULT

38 He replied, "Go." Then he sent her away for two months. She went, she and her companions, and she wept on account of her virginity on the hills.

UST

38 Jephthah replied, "All right, you may go." So she left for two months. She and her friends stayed in the hills and they cried for her because she would never be married.

Judges 11:39

had never known a man

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "had never had sexual relations with a man" (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Israel
- her father
- a custom
- that she returned
- did...know

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelites
- her father Jephthah
- now have a custom
- she returned
- was married

ULT

39 Now it happened at the end of two months that she returned to her father, and he carried out his vow with respect to her that he had vowed. She did not know a man, and it became a custom in Israel.

UST

39 After two months, she returned to her father Jephthah, and he did to her what he had solemnly promised. So his daughter never was married. Because of that, the Israelites now have a custom

Judges 11:40

the Gileadite

This refers to someone from Gilead. See how you translated this in Judges 10:3.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the Gileadite
- went

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite
- Gilead, Gileadite
- go into the hills

ULT

40 From time to time the daughters of Israel went to commemorate the daughter of Jephthah the Gileadite for four days during the year.

UST

40 that the young Israelite women go into the hills for four days every year. There they remember and cry about what happened to the daughter of Jephthah.

Judges 12

Judges 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The account of Jephthah concludes in this chapter.

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Shibboleth

This is a word in Hebrew. Its importance in this chapter is because of its sounds, not its meaning. The translator should not translate the meaning of this word, but should transliterate or transfer it into the target language by substituting letters that have the same sounds. (See: Copy or Borrow Words)

Judges 12:1

A call went out to the men of Ephraim

Here the abstract noun "call" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "The men of Ephraim were called together" or "The men...of Ephraim called together their soldiers" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Zaphon

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

passed through...pass through

or "traveled through...travel" or "journeyed through...journey"

We will burn your house down over you

This idiom means to burn down a house with people inside it. Alternate translation: "We will burn your house down with you still in it" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- you did...call
- against the sons of
- Ephraim
- and they passed
- with fire
- your house

Translation Words - UST

- did you...ask
- the Ammonites
- Ephraim
- and they crossed the Jordan River and went
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- your house

ULT

1 Now the men of Ephraim were summoned and they passed northward and they said to Jephthah, "Why did you pass through in order to fight against the sons of Ammon but you did not call us to go with you? We will burn your house down over you with fire."

UST

1 The leaders of the tribe of Ephraim called together their soldiers, and they crossed the Jordan River and went to the town of Zaphon to talk with Jephthah. They said to him, "Why did you not ask us to help your army fight the Ammonites. So we will burn down your house while you are in it."

Judges 12:2

When I called you, you

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the people of Ephraim.
(See: Forms of You)

did not rescue me

Jephthah uses the word "me" to refer to himself and all the people of
Gilead. Alternate translation: "do not rescue us" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- and the sons of
- from their hand
- and my people
- When I summoned
- you did...rescue

Translation Words - UST

- The Ammonites
- hand
- us
- When we were prepared to start to attack them, I requested...to come and help us
- you did...help

ULT

2 Jephthah said to them, "A man in
exceedingly great dispute I have been, I
and my people and the sons of Ammon.
When I summoned you, you did not
rescue me from their hand.

UST

2 Jephthah replied, "The Ammonites
were really oppressing us. When we
were prepared to start to attack them, I
requested you to come and help us, but
you refused. My men and I defeated the
Ammonites, but you did not help us.

Judges 12:3

you did not rescue me

The word "you" is plural and refers to the men of Ephraim. Jephthah is referring to the people of Gilead, including himself, when he says "me." Alternate translation: "you did not rescue us" (See: Forms of You and Synecdoche)

I put my life in my own hand

This is an idiom which means to risk one's life and to rely only on one's own strength. Jephthah continues to refer to the people of Gilead as himself. Alternate translation: "We risked our lives, relying on our own strength" (See: Idiom and Synecdoche)

Yahweh gave me victory

Jephthah is referring to Yahweh giving the men of Gilead victory over the Ammonites. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Yahweh gave us victory over them" or "Yahweh allowed us to defeat them in battle" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Why have you come to fight against me

The word "you" is plural and refers to the men of Ephraim. Jephthah is referring to the people of Gilead, including himself, when he says "me." Alternate translation: "Why have you come to fight against us" (See: Forms of You and Synecdoche)

passed through against the people of Ammon

This means that they fought against the Ammonites as they passed through Ammon. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "fought against the people of Ammon as we passed through their region" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

3 When I saw that you were not coming to assist, I put my life in my own hand. I passed through to the sons of Ammon, and Yahweh gave them over into my hand. Now why have you come up to me to fight against me this day?"

UST

3 When I saw that you would not come to help us, I risked my own life by leading our people to pass through the people of Ammon. And Yahweh helped us to defeat them. So why do you come to fight against me today?"

Translation Words - ULT

- my life
- the sons of
- I put
- Yahweh
- into my hand
- I passed through
- were…coming to assist

Translation Words - UST

- I risked my own life
- the people of
- I risked my own life
- Yahweh
- to defeat them
- by leading our people to pass through
- you would…come to help us

Judges 12:4

he fought against Ephraim

The word "he" refers to Jephthah and all the fighting men of Gilead. Alternate translation: "they fought against Ephraim" (See: Synecdoche)

You Gileadites are fugitives

You can make the meaning of this insult explicit. Alternate translation: "You Gileadites do not really belong here. You are just people who came here to live" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Gileadites

people from Gilead

in Ephraim—in Ephraim and Manasseh

"in the regions of Ephraim and Manasseh" or "in the land of Ephraim and Manasseh." Here "Ephraim" and "Manasseh" refer to regions and are named after the tribes which live there.

ULT

4 Then Jephthah assembled all of the men of Gilead and he fought Ephraim. The men of Gilead struck Ephraim because they had said, "Fugitives of Ephraim are you, O people of Gilead, in the midst of Ephraim, in the midst of Manasseh."

UST

4 Then Jephthah called together the soldiers of Gilead to fight against the soldiers of Ephraim. They attacked them because men of the tribe of Ephraim said, "You men from Gilead are just refugees here in the land of Ephraim and Manasseh.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- Ephraim
- Ephraim
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- the soldiers of Ephraim
- them
- Ephraim, Ephraimite
- the land of Ephraim

Judges 12:5

to Ephraim

"to the land of Ephraim"

The Gileadites captured

"The Gileadites controlled" or "The Gileadites occupied"

fords

These are places where you can cross the river on foot because the water is shallow.

Ephraimite

person from the tribe of Ephraim

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jordan
- Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

- the Jordan River…the river
- someone from the tribe of Ephraim

ULT

5 Gilead captured the crossing places of the Jordan along Ephraim. It happened when any of the survivors of Ephraim would say, "May I cross over," that the men of Gilead would say to him, "Are you an Ephraimite?" If he said, "No,"

UST

5 The Gileadites captured the shallow places in the Jordan River where people could cross over the river and go to the territory of Ephraim. If someone from the tribe of Ephraim came to the ford to try to escape, he would say, "Allow me to cross the river." Then the men of Gilead would ask him, "Are you from the tribe of Ephraim?" If he said "No,"

Judges 12:6

Shibboleth...Sibboleth

These words have no meaning. Copy these words into your language, and make sure that the beginning of the words, that is the letters "Sh" and "S" are translated differently. (See: Copy or Borrow Words)

pronounce the word

"make the sound of the word"

Forty-two thousand

"42,000" (See: Numbers)

Forty-two thousand Ephraimites were killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They killed forty-two thousand Ephraimites" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jordan
- and they would slaughter him
- fell

Translation Words - UST

- Jordan River, Jordan
- and they would kill him
- So the men of Gilead killed

ULT

6 then they would say to him, "Please say: Shibboleth." But if he said "Sibboleth," for he was not prepared to pronounce it correctly, they would seize him and they would slaughter him at the crossing places of the Jordan. Forty-two thousand from Ephraim fell at that time.

UST

6 they would say to him, "Say the word 'Shibboleth.'" The men of Ephraim could not pronounce that word correctly. So if the person from the tribe of Ephraim said "Sibboleth," they would know that he was lying and that he was really from the tribe of Ephraim, and they would kill him there at the ford. So the men of Gilead killed forty-two thousand people from the tribe of Ephraim at that time.

Judges 12:7

Jephthah the Gileadite died and was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Jephthah the Gileadite died and they buried him" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- judged
- the Gileadite
- Then...died

Translation Words - UST

- over Israel
- served as a judge and leader
- the man from Gilead
- Then...died

ULT

7 Jephthah judged Israel six years. Then Jephthah the Gileadite died and he was buried among the cities of Gilead.

UST

7 Jephthah, the man from Gilead, served as a judge and leader over Israel for six years. Then he died and was buried in one of the towns of Gilead.

Judges 12:8

Ibzan of Bethlehem

This is the name of a man from Bethlehem. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Then...judged

Translation Words - UST

- over Israel
- became a leader and a judge

ULT

8 Then after him Ibzan of Bethlehem judged Israel.

UST

8 After Jephthah died, a man named Ibzan, from Bethlehem, became a leader and a judge over Israel.

Judges 12:9

He gave away thirty daughters in marriage

Here "give away...in marriage" is an idiom which means that he allowed his daughters to get married. Alternate translation: "He had thirty daughters and arranged a marriage for each of them" (See: Idiom)

he brought in thirty daughters of other men for his sons, from the outside

The idiom "bring them in from the outside" means that he had women from other clans marry his sons. Alternate translation: "he arranged for thirty daughters of other men from outside of his clan to marry his sons" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- for his sons
- Israel
- He judged

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- son
- over Israel
- He was a leader and a judge

ULT

9 Now he had thirty sons. He sent away thirty daughters to the outside, and he brought in thirty daughters for his sons from the outside. He judged Israel seven years.

UST

9 He had thirty sons and he gave thirty daughters away in marriage. He brought in thirty daughters from families outside his clan. He was a leader and a judge over Israel for seven years.

Judges 12:10

was buried at Bethlehem

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him in Bethlehem" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...died

Translation Words - UST

- When died

ULT
10 Then Ibzan died and he was buried in Bethlehem.

UST
10 When died, he was buried in Bethlehem.

Judges 12:11

Elon

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zebulunite

someone from the tribe of Zebulun

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- judged
- He judged

Translation Words - UST

- of Israel
- their
- became a leader
- He was…leader

Judges 12:12

Aijalon

Translate the name of this place the same way you did in Judges 1:35.

was buried in Aijalon

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "they buried him in Aijalon" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

 • Then...died

Translation Words - UST

 • Then...died

ULT
12 Then Elon the Zebulunite died and he was buried in Aijalon in the land of Zebulun.

UST
12 Then he died and was buried in the city of Aijalon in the area where the tribe of Zebulun lives.

Judges 12:13

Abdon...Hillel

These are the names of men. (See: How to Translate Names)

Pirathon

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Israel
- judged

Translation Words - UST

- son of
- over Israel
- became a leader and a judge

ULT
13 After him, Abdon, the son of Hillel the Pirathonite judged Israel.

UST
13 After Elon died, a man named Abdon son of Hillel, from the city of Pirathon, became a leader and a judge over Israel.

Judges 12:14

They rode on seventy donkeys

These men owned seventy donkeys, which they did ride. Here the word "rode" is used instead of "owned." Alternate translation: "They owned seventy donkeys" (See: Metonymy)

forty sons...thirty grandsons...seventy donkeys

"40 sons...30 grandsons...70 donkeys (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons
- sons of
- sons
- Israel
- He judged

Translation Words - UST

- sons
- grandsons
- grandsons
- over Israel
- Abdon was a leader and a judge

ULT

14 Now he had forty sons and thirty sons of sons, who rode on seventy young male donkeys. He judged Israel eight years.

UST

14 He had forty sons and thirty grandsons. They had seventy donkeys. Abdon was a leader and a judge over Israel for eight years.

Judges 12:15

Pirathonite...Pirathon

Pirathon is the name of a place, someone who is from that place is called a Pirathonite. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- Ephraim
- Then...died

Translation Words - UST

- son
- Ephraim
- When...died

ULT

15 Then Abdon, the son of Hillel the Pirathonite died and he was buried in Pirathon in the land of Ephraim, in the hill country of the Amalekite.

UST

15 When Abdon died, he was buried in Pirathon, in the land of Ephraim, in the hill country of the Amalekites.

Judges 13

Judges 13 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins the account of Samson ([Judges 13-16]).

Special concepts in this chapter

Warning not to cut his hair

The angel of the Lord prophesied about Samson and gave instructions to Samson's mother. Samson's mother was to offer up her son under a Nazarite vow. This was a special type of vow, dedicating Samson to Yahweh. Part of this vow prohibited the cutting of the person's hair. (See: prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess and vow)

Judges 13:1

what was evil in the sight of Yahweh

The sight of Yahweh represents Yahweh's judgment or evaluation. See how you translated this in Judges 2:11. Alternate translation: "what was evil in Yahweh's judgment" or "what Yahweh considered to be evil" (See: Metaphor)

he gave them into the hand of the Philistines

Here "hand" refers to power to gain victory in battle. Alternate translation: "he allowed the Philistines to defeat them" or "he allowed them to be oppressed by the Philistines" (See: Metonymy)

forty years

"40 years" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the Philistines
- into the hand of

Translation Words - UST

- the...people
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israelite
- the Philistines
- hand

ULT

1 The sons of Israel continued to do this evil in the eyes of Yahweh, so Yahweh gave them over into the hand of the Philistines forty years.

UST

1 Again the Israelite people did evil, and Yahweh saw what they had done. So Yahweh helped the Philistines to conquer them. They ruled over the Israelites for forty years.

Judges 13:2

Zorah

This was the name of a town in Israel. It was in the region of Judah near the border of Dan. (See: How to Translate Names)

Danites

people from the tribe of Dan

Manoah

This is the name of a man. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the families of

Translation Words - UST

- from the family of

ULT

2 Now there was one man from Zorah, of the families of the Danites, and his name was Manoah. His wife was barren and she had never given birth.

UST

2 There was a man named Manoah from the family of Dan who lived in the town of Zorah. His wife was unable to become pregnant, so they had no children.

Judges 13:3

give birth to a son

This refers to childbirth. Alternate translation: "bear a son" or "have a baby boy" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- Yahweh
- The angel of

Translation Words - UST

- a son
- Yahweh
- the angel of

ULT

3 The angel of Yahweh appeared to the wife and he said to her, "Look, please, you are barren and you have not given birth, but you will conceive and you will bear a son.

UST

3 One day, the angel of Yahweh appeared to Manoah's wife and said to her, "Even though you have not been able to give birth to any children until now, you will soon become pregnant and you will give birth to a son.

Judges 13:4

anything unclean

Something that Yahweh has stated is unfit to eat is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- you do...eat
- wine
- take care

Translation Words - UST

- you...eat
- any wine
- watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

ULT

4 Now take care that you surely do not drink wine or strong drink, and you do not eat anything unclean.

UST

4 From now until he is born, you must not drink any wine or other alcoholic drink, and you must not eat any food that the law says we should not eat.

Judges 13:5

Look

"Pay attention" or "Listen"

No razor will be used upon his head

Here the word "head" refers to his hair. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "No one should ever cut his hair" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

razor

a sharp knife used to cut hair close to the skin

a Nazirite to God

This means that he will be devoted to God as a Nazirite. Alternate translation: "a Nazirite devoted to God" or "devoted to God as a Nazirite" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

> **ULT**
>
> **5** For surely you are pregnant and you will bear a son. A razor will not go up upon his head, for a Nazirite to God from the womb the boy will be. He will begin to deliver Israel from the hand of the Philistines."
>
> **UST**
>
> **5** You will become pregnant. After you give birth to your son, no one may ever cut his hair. He will be dedicated to God even before he is born until the day he dies. He will begin the work that will rescue Israel from the power of the Philistines."

from the womb

Here the word "womb" refers to the time before the child is born. Alternate translation: "from before he is born" (See: Metonymy)

the hand of the Philistines

Here the word "hand" means control. Alternate translation: "the control of the Philistines" or "being under the Philistine's control" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- God
- Israel
- the Philistines
- from the hand of
- his head
- the boy

Translation Words - UST

- your son
- to God
- Israel
- the Philistines
- from the power of
- may ever cut his hair
- He

Judges 13:6

A man of God

This means that the man was sent by God. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "A man that God sent" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

his appearance was like that of an angel of God, very terrible

Here "terrible" means "frightening." Alternate translation: "I was very afraid of him because he looked like an angel of God" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- fearsome
- God
- God
- his name
- the angel of

Translation Words - UST

- I was...afraid of him
- God
- God
- his name
- an angel from

ULT

6 Then the woman came in and she explained to her husband saying, "The man of God came to me. His appearance was as the appearance of the angel of God, exceedingly fearsome, so I did not ask him from where he had come. He did not reveal to me his name.

UST

6 The woman ran and told her husband, "A man whom God sent came to me. I was very afraid of him, because he was like an angel from God. I did not ask where he came from, and he did not tell me his name.

Judges 13:7

Look

"Pay attention" or "Listen"

give birth to a son

This refers to childbirth. Alternate translation: "bear a son" or "have a baby boy" (See: Idiom)

any food that the law declares to be unclean

Something that Yahweh has stated is unfit to eat is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. (See: Metaphor)

a Nazirite to God

This means that he will be devoted to God as a Nazirite. See how you translated this in Judges 3:5. Alternate translation: "a Nazirite devoted to God" or "devoted to God as a Nazirite" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

from the time he is in your womb until the day of his death

This emphasizes that it would be for his entire life. Alternate translation: "all his life" (See: Merism)

> **ULT**
>
> **7** Then he said to me, 'Surely, you are pregnant, and you will bear a son. So now, you must not drink wine or strong drink, and you must not eat anything unclean, because the boy will be a Nazirite to God from the womb until the day of his death.'"
>
> **UST**
>
> **7** But he told me, 'You have become pregnant, and you will give birth to a son. Until then, you must not drink any wine or any alcoholic drink, and you must not eat any food that God's law says you are not to eat. Your son will be a Nazirite; that is one who is dedicated to God before he is born and until the day he dies.'"

Translation Words - ULT

- a son
- to God
- you must...eat
- wine
- the boy

Translation Words - UST

- a son
- God
- you...eat
- any wine
- Your son

Judges 13:8

Manoah

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 13:2.

Translation Words - ULT

- my Lord
- of God
- Yahweh
- for the boy

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- God
- Yahweh
- the boy

ULT

8 Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh and he said, "Oh please, my Lord, please let the man of God who you sent come again to us so that he may instruct us about what we must do for the boy who is to be born."

UST

8 Then Manoah prayed to Yahweh, saying, "O Lord, I plead with you, allow that man whom you sent to us to come again and teach us how we should raise the boy who will be born to us."

Judges 13:9

came to the woman

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of the author's words. Alternate translation: "came to Manoah's wife" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- The true God
- God
- the voice of
- the angel of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- his
- what...asked
- angel

ULT

9 The true God listened to the voice of Manoah, and the angel of God came to the woman again when she was sitting in the field. But Manoah her husband was not with her.

UST

9 God did what Manoah asked, and his angel came to the woman again. This time she was out in the field. But again her husband Manoah was not with her.

Judges 13:10

Look

"Listen" or "Pay attention to what I am about to tell you"

The man

This refers to the angel of God in Judges 13:3. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "the man of God" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Judges 13:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

11 So Manoah rose up and he went after his wife. When he came to the man, he said to him, "Are you the man who spoke to this woman?" He replied, "I am."

UST

11 Manoah ran back with his wife and asked him, "Are you the man who talked with my wife a few days ago?" He replied, "Yes I am."

Judges 13:12

your words

"what you have said"

Translation Words - ULT

- the protocol
- for the boy

Translation Words - UST

- rules...there...for
- the child

Judges 13:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- The angel of
- she must take heed herself

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- s angel
- must obey

ULT

13 The angel of Yahweh replied to Manoah, "Because of all that I have said to the woman, she must take heed herself.

UST

13 Yahweh's angel replied, "Your wife must obey all the instructions I gave her.

Judges 13:14

anything that comes from the vines

Here the angel refers to any food that grow on a vine as "coming" from the vine. Alternate translation: "anything that grows on a vine" (See: Metonymy)

unclean

Something that Yahweh has stated is unfit to eat is spoken of as if it were physically unclean. See how you translated this phrase in Judges 13:7. (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- I have commanded her
- she must…consume
- she must…eat
- the wine
- wine
- she must do
- comes forth

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- she…eat
- eat
- wine, wineskin, new wine
- wine
- Before the baby is born
- grapes

ULT

14 From anything that comes forth from the vine of the wine, she must not consume. She must not drink wine or strong drink, and anything unclean she must not eat. Everything that I have commanded her, she must do."

UST

14 Before the baby is born, she must not eat grapes, drink wine or any other alcoholic drink, or eat anything that the law says we should not eat."

Judges 13:15

prepare a young goat for you

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of Manoah's statement. Alternate translation: "cook a young goat for you to eat" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- the angel of

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- messenger

ULT

15 Then Manoah said to the angel of Yahweh, "Please let us detain you, so that we may prepare a young kid from the goats on account of your presence."

UST

15 Then Manoah said, "Please stay here until we can kill and cook a young goat for you."

Judges 13:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- for Yahweh
- Yahweh
- I will...eat
- The angel of
- the angel of
- a burnt offering
- did...know

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- I will...eat
- s angel
- s angel
- and sacrifice it as a burned offering to
- did...realize

ULT

16 The angel of Yahweh replied to Manoah, "Even if you would detain me, I will not eat your bread. But if you would prepare a burnt offering for Yahweh, you may offer it." For Manoah did not know that he was the angel of Yahweh.

UST

16 Yahweh's angel replied, "I will stay here, but I will not eat anything. However, you may kill an animal and sacrifice it as a burned offering to Yahweh." But Manoah did not yet realize that this was Yahweh's angel.

Judges 13:17

your words come true

"what you have said comes true"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- your name
- the angel of

Translation Words - UST

- him
- your name
- him

ULT

17 Then Manoah said to the angel of Yahweh, "What is your name, that when your words come to pass we may honor you?"

UST

17 Then Manoah asked him, "What is your name? When what you have promised happens, we want to honor you."

Judges 13:18

Why do you ask my name?

The angel asks this question as a rebuke. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not ask me what my name is." (See: Rhetorical Question)

It is wonderful

It may be helpful to explain more explicitly why they should not ask his name. Alternate translation: "It is too wonderful for you to understand" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- The angel of

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- s angel

ULT

18 The angel of Yahweh replied to him, "Why is this, you are asking about my name, but it is incomprehensible!"

UST

18 Yahweh's angel replied, "Why do you ask me my name? It is too marvelous."

Judges 13:19

with the grain offering

This law requires a grain offering to be offered when a burnt offering is made. Alternate translation: "with the grain offering required with it" or "with the grain offering to accompany it" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

on the rock

"on the altar." The altar Manoah sacrificed the offering on was a rock.

He did something

"The angel did something"

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- the offering

Translation Words - UST

- to Yahweh
- a grain offering

ULT

19 Manoah took the young kid from the goats and the offering and he brought up a sacrifice upon the rock to Yahweh. Meanwhile he was about to perform an act causing wonder while Manoah and his wife were watching.

UST

19 Then Manoah killed a young goat and burned it on a rock, along with a grain offering, as a sacrifice to Yahweh. Then Yahweh did an amazing thing as Manoah and his wife watched.

Judges 13:20

the angel of Yahweh went up in the flame of the altar

"the angel of Yahweh went back up into heaven through the flames on the altar"

lay facedown on the ground

"lay with their faces to the ground." This is a sign of respect and honor, but it also shows their fear of Yahweh. (See: Symbolic Action)

Translation Words - ULT

- towards the heavens
- the altar
- the altar
- Yahweh
- the angel of
- their faces
- to the ground
- As a result they fell

Translation Words - UST

- toward the sky
- the altar
- the altar
- Yahweh
- s angel
- facedown
- the ground
- and lay

ULT

20 Now it happened when the flame went up from upon the altar towards the heavens, that the angel of Yahweh went up in the flame of the altar while Manoah and his wife were watching. As a result they fell on their faces to the ground.

UST

20 When the flames went up from the altar toward the sky, Yahweh's angel went up in the flame from the altar. Manoah and his wife saw that and lay facedown on the ground.

Judges 13:21

that he was the angel of Yahweh

The word "he" refers to the man who Manoah and his wife had seen.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the angel of
- the angel of
- knew

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- s angel
- angel
- realized

ULT

21 But the angel of Yahweh did not continue to appear any longer to Manoah or to his wife. Then Manoah knew that he was the angel of Yahweh.

UST

21 Although Yahweh's angel did not appear again to Manoah and his wife, Manoah realized who this angel really was.

Judges 13:22

We are sure to die, because we have seen God

It is implied that they think God will cause them to die. This can be made clear. Alternate translation: "God will cause us to die because we have seen him" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

• God

Translation Words - UST

• God

ULT

22 Manoah said to his wife, "Surely we will die, because we have seen God!"

UST

22 So Manoah said, "Now we are sure to die, because we have seen God!"

Judges 13:23

He would not have shown us all these things, nor at this time would he have let us hear such things

Manoah's wife said basically the same thing twice for emphasis. These two statements can be combined. Alternate translation: "He would not have told us what he wanted us to do" (See: Parallelism)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- from our hand
- to kill us
- had desired
- the whole burnt offering
- and the offering

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- hand
- to kill us
- intended
- the burned offering
- and the grain offering

ULT

23 But his wife replied to him, "If Yahweh had desired to kill us, he would not have taken from our hand the whole burnt offering and the offering. He would not have shown us all these things, and at this time would he have not allowed us to hear about this."

UST

23 But his wife said, "No, I do not think so. If Yahweh intended to kill us, he would not have accepted the burned offering and the grain offering. And he would not have appeared to us and told us the wonderful thing that would happen to us, and he would not have performed this miracle."

Judges 13:24

the woman

"Manoah's wife"

gave birth to a son

This refers to childbirth. Alternate translation: "bore a son" or "had a baby boy" (See: Idiom)

grew up

"became an adult" or "matured"

Translation Words - ULT

- and…blessed him
- a son
- Yahweh
- his name
- The boy
- and she called

Translation Words - UST

- blessed him
- their son
- Yahweh
- they named him
- as he grew up
- they named him

ULT

24 The woman gave birth to a son, and she called his name Samson. The boy grew up and Yahweh blessed him.

UST

24 When their son was born, they named him Samson. Yahweh blessed him as he grew up.

Judges 13:25

Yahweh's Spirit began to stir him

Here the way Yahweh's Spirit influences Samson is compared to the way a spoon stirs food in a pot. Alternate translation: "Yahweh's Spirit began to influence Samson" (See: Metaphor)

Mahaneh Dan...Eshtaol

Mahaneh Dan is the name of a temporary camp that the tribe of Dan lived in while they looked for a permanent home. Eshtaol is the name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

Zorah

Translate the name of this town the same way you did in Judges 13:2.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Spirit of
- Yahweh
- Now...began

Translation Words - UST

- s Spirit
- Yahweh
- began

ULT
25 Now the Spirit of Yahweh began to tap him in Mahaneh Dan, between Zorah and between Eshtaol.

UST
25 While he was in Mahaneh-Dan, which is between the towns of Zorah and Eshtaol, Yahweh's Spirit began to control him.

Judges 14

Judges 14 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The account of Samson continues in this chapter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 14:14, 18.

Special concepts in this chapter

Intermarriage

It was considered sinful for an Israel to marry a Canaanite or anyone from a different people group. This is why Samson's parents did not want him to marry a Philistine woman. They use rhetorical questions to convince him that he is sinning. This woman caused Samson many problems. (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and Rhetorical Question)

Judges 14:1

Samson went down to Timnah

The phrase "went down" is used here because Timnah is lower in elevation than where his father's house was. Timah is the name of a city in the Sorek Valley. (See: How to Translate Names)

one of the daughters of the Philistines

The word "daughter" is a polite way to refer to a young, unmarried woman. Alternate translation: "one of the unmarried women among the Philistine people" or "a Philistine girl" (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- Philistine

ULT

1 Samson went down to Timnah, and he saw a woman in Tinmah, from the daughters of the Philistines.

UST

1 Samson went down to the town of Timnah, and there he saw a young Philistine woman.

Judges 14:2

Now get her for me to be my wife

This is an idiom. Samson was demanding his parents to speak to the Philistine woman's parents about marriage. Alternate translation: "Now arrange for her to become my wife" or "Make the arrangements for me to marry her" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistines
- to his father

Translation Words - UST

- the Philistines
- father

2 Then he went back up and he reported to his father and to his mother, and he said, "I saw a woman in Timnah, among the daughters of the Philistines. So now take her for me for a wife."

2 When he returned home, he told his mother and father, "I saw one of the daughters of the Philistines in Timnah, and I want you to get her for me so I can marry her."

Judges 14:3

Is there not a woman among the daughters of your relatives, or among all our people?

They ask this question to suggest that they could find Samson a wife among their own people. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely there are women among your people whom you could marry." (See: Rhetorical Question)

the daughters of your relatives

The word "daughter" is a polite way to refer to a young, unmarried woman. Alternate translation: "one of the unmarried women among your relatives" (See: Euphemism)

Are you going to take a wife from the uncircumcised Philistines?

This question is asked to rebuke Samson. This question can be written as a statement. You can make explicit the reason his parents do not want him to marry a Philistine. Alternate translation: "You really should not marry a Philistine woman because the Philistine people do not worship Yahweh." (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

3 His father and his mother replied to him, "Is there not a woman among the daughters of your relatives, or among all of my people, that you are going to take a wife from the uncircumcised Philistines?" Samson said to his father, "Take her for me, because she is right in my eyes."

UST

3 His mother and father objected very strongly. They said, "Is there no woman from our tribe, or from the other Israelite tribes, that you could marry? Why do you want a wife from the Philistines, who are not circumcised and do not worship Yahweh?" But Samson told his father, "Get her for me! She is the one I want!"

Get her for me

This is an idiom. Samson was demanding his parents to speak to the Philistine woman's parents about marriage. Alternate translation: "Now arrange for her to be my wife" (See: Idiom)

she pleases me

This means that Samson thinks she is beautiful. "I am pleased by how beautiful she is" or "she is beautiful" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- your relatives
- His father
- his father
- are going

Translation Words - UST

- from our tribe
- father
- his father
- do...want

Judges 14:4

this matter

This refers to Samson's request to marry the Philistine woman.

for he desired to create a conflict

The word "he" refers to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- were ruling
- over Israel
- the Philistines
- But his father
- was seeking
- did...know

Translation Words - UST

- were ruling
- over Israel
- they
- father
- was preparing...to create a conflict
- did...realize

ULT

4 But his father and his mother did not know that this matter was from Yahweh, for he was seeking an opportunity against the Philistines. Now at that time the Philistines were ruling over Israel.

UST

4 His mother and father did not realize that Yahweh was arranging this. He was preparing a way for Samson to create a conflict with the Philistines, for they were ruling over Israel at that time.

Judges 14:5

Samson went down to Timnah

The phrase "went down" is used here because Timnah is lower in elevation than where his father's house was. Timnah was a city in the Sorek Valley. Translate the name of this city the same way you did in Judges 14:1. (See: How to Translate Names)

And, look, there one of the young lions came up

Here the word "look" is used to draw the readers attention to a surprising event that happens in the story. The phrase "came up" means that the lion came near him. Alternate translation: "Suddenly, a young lion came near him" (See: Idiom)

was roaring at him

ULT

5 Then Samson went down along with his father and his mother to Timnah. They came as far as the vineyards of Timnah, and look, a young lion among the lions was roaring when encountering him.

UST

5 Then Samson went down to Timnah with his mother and father. A young lion roared at him, threatening him near the vineyards close to the town.

"threatened him." This is the kind of noise that a lion makes when it threatens to attack something.

Translation Words - ULT

- along with his father
- the vineyards of

Translation Words - UST

- and father
- the vineyards

Judges 14:6

Yahweh's Spirit suddenly came on him

The phrase "came on" means that Yahweh's Spirit influenced Samson. In this case, he made him very strong. Alternate translation: "Yahweh's Spirit made him very strong" (See: Idiom)

tore...apart

tore into two pieces

had nothing in his hand

Here it states that he had nothing in his hand to emphasize that he was not holding a weapon. Alternate translation: "did not have a weapon" (See: Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

- The Spirit of
- Yahweh
- to his father
- in his hand

Translation Words - UST

- s Spirit
- Yahweh
- father
- with his hands

ULT

6 The Spirit of Yahweh rushed upon him, and he tore it to pieces like tearing a young goat. There was not anything in his hand, but he did not disclose to his father or to his mother what he had done.

UST

6 Then Yahweh's Spirit came on Samson, and he tore the lion apart with his hands. He did it as easily as if it had been a young goat. But he did not tell his mother and father about it.

Judges 14:7

she pleased Samson

This means that he thought she was very beautiful. Alternate translation: "he was pleased by how beautiful she was" or "he thought she was very beautiful" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

7 Then he went down and he spoke to the woman, and she seemed right in the eyes of Samson.

UST

7 When they arrived in Timnah, Samson talked with the young woman, and he liked her very much. And his father made arrangements for the wedding.

Judges 14:8

he turned aside

This means that he left his path to do something. Alternate translation: "he left the path" (See: Idiom)

carcass

dead body

And, look, there was a swarm of bees

Here the word "look" is used to draw the reader's attention to something surprising that happens in the story. Alternate translation: "He found a swarm of bees" (See: Idiom)

swarm

large group of insects

Translation Words - ULT

- and honey
- Then he returned

Translation Words - UST

- and had made some honey
- when Samson returned to Timnah

ULT

8 Then he returned after some days to take her. He turned aside to look for the carcass of the lion, and look, there was a swarm of bees in the dead body of the lion and honey.

UST

8 Later, when Samson returned to Timnah for the wedding, he turned off the path to see the lion carcass. He discovered that a swarm of bees had made a nest in the carcass and had made some honey.

Judges 14:9

scraped up

"gathered up"

Translation Words - ULT

- his father
- the palms of his hands
- and eating
- so that they ate
- walking

Translation Words - UST

- father
- his hands
- and ate some of it
- devour
- as he was walking along

ULT

9 He scraped it into the palms of his hands and he went along, walking and eating as he went to his father and to his mother. He even gave some to them so that they ate, but he did not disclose to them that he had scooped the honey out of the dead body of the lion.

UST

9 So he dug out some of the honey into his hands and ate some of it as he was walking along. He also gave some of it to his mother and father, but he did not tell them that he had taken the honey from the carcass of the lion.

Judges 14:10

Samson's father went down to where the woman was

The phrase "went down" is used to describe Timnah which is lower in elevation than where Samson's father lives. Alternate translation: "Samson's father went to where the woman lived" (See: Idiom)

the custom of the young men

It may be helpful to state that this was a marriage custom. Alternate translation: "the custom of young men who were getting married" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- his father
- a drinking feast

Translation Words - UST

- his father
- a feast

ULT

10 Then his father went down to the woman, and there Samson prepared a drinking feast, because so would do the young men.

UST

10 As his father was making the final arrangements for the marriage, Samson gave a feast for the young men in that area. That was the custom for men to do when they were about to be married.

Judges 14:11

thirty of their friends

"30 of their friends" (See: Numbers)

ULT
11 Now it happened when they saw him, that they brought thirty close friends and they were with him.

UST
11 As soon as her relatives saw him, they brought him thirty of their friends to be with him.

Judges 14:12

riddle

a game in which the players must discover the answer to a difficult question

can find it out

This means to figure out the meaning of the riddle. Alternate translation: "can figure out its meaning" (See: Idiom)

thirty linen robes and thirty sets of clothes

"30 linen robes and 30 sets of clothes" (See: Numbers)

linen

a type of cloth

Translation Words - ULT

- the drinking feast

Translation Words - UST

- of the celebration

ULT

12 Samson said to them, "Let me propose to you a riddle. If indeed you explain it to me during the seven days of the drinking feast, and truly you have found out, then I will give to you thirty linen outer garments and thirty changes of clothes.

UST

12 Samson said to them, "Allow me to tell you a riddle. If you tell me the correct meaning of my riddle during these seven days of the celebration, I will give each one of you a linen robe and an extra set of clothes.

Judges 14:13

But if you cannot tell me

Here the word "you" is plural and refers to the guests at the feast.
(See: Forms of You)

ULT

13 But if you are not able to provide an explanation to me, then you must yourselves give to me thirty linen outer garments and thirty changes of clothes." They said to him, "Set forth your riddle, so we may hear it."

UST

13 But if you cannot tell me the correct meaning, you must each give me a linen robe and an extra set of clothes." They replied, "All right. Tell us your riddle."

Judges 14:14

General Information:

Samson tells his riddle. Since it is supposed to be hard to understand, do not translate it in a way that people will immediately know what it means.

Out of the eater was something to eat

"Out of the eater came something to eat" or "Something to eat came out of something that eats"

the eater

The noun "eater" can be expressed as a verb phrase. Alternate translation: "the thing that eats"

out of the strong was something sweet

"out of the strong came something sweet" or "Something that is sweet came out of something that is strong"

the strong

This refers to something that is strong. Alternate translation: "the strong thing" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

his guests

"the men at his feast"

could not find the answer

Here figuring out the answer to the riddle is spoke of as if it were something hidden that the guest had to search for and find. Alternate translation: "could not figure out the answer" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- came forth
- came forth (2)

Translation Words - UST

- I found
- I found (2)

ULT

14 He said to them, "From the eater came forth food; and from a strong one came forth sweetness." But they were not able to explain the riddle in three days.

UST

14 So he said, "From out of the eater I found something to eat; from out of the strong I found something sweet." But for three days they could not tell him the meaning of the riddle.

Judges 14:15

the fourth day

"day 4" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

Trick

mislead or fool someone into doing something they would not want to do

your father's house

Possible meanings are 1) this refers to the actual house. Alternate translation: "the house your father and his family live in" or 2) "house" refers to the people who live in it. Alternate translation: "your family" (See: Metonymy)

will burn up

The phrase "burn up" means to burn something completely. If a person is "burnt up," it means that person is burned to death. (See: Idiom)

> **ULT**
>
> **15** Now it happened on the seventh day that they said to the wife of Samson, "Entice your husband so he may reveal to us the riddle, lest we burn you and the house of your father with fire. Have you invited us in order to dispossess us or not?"
>
> **UST**
>
> **15** On the fourth day, they said to Samson's wife, "Use your tricks and make your husband tell you the meaning of the riddle. If you do not do that, we will burn down your father's house, with you and your family inside it! Did you invite us here only to make us poor by forcing us to buy a lot of clothes for your husband?"

Did you invite us here in order to make us poor?

They ask her this question to accuse her of doing evil. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You have brought us here to make us poor!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

to make us poor

They would become poor if they had to buy him new clothes if they could not solve the riddle. Alternate translation: "to make us poor by forcing us to buy him new clothes" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Have you invited
- your father
- with fire
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Did you invite...here
- your father
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- s house...your family inside it

Judges 14:16

All you do is hate me! You do not love me

Samson's wife basically said the same thing twice for emphasis. Alternate translation: "You do not really love me at all" (See: Parallelism)

riddle

a game in which the players must discover the answer to a difficult question

Look here

This is used to get someones attention. Here "look" means to "listen." Alternate translation: "Listen to me" or "Pay attention to what I am about to say"

if I have not told my father or my mother, should I tell you?

Samson was rebuking her for demanding that he tell her the answer. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have not even told my father or mother. I will not tell you." or "you should not demand that I tell you, since I have not even told my parents, and they are closer to me than you are." (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

16 Then the wife of Samson wept beside him and she said, "Surely you hate me! You do not love me! You have put forth a riddle to the sons of my people, but you have not informed me." He said to her, "Look, I have not informed my father or my mother, should I inform you?"

UST

16 So Samson's wife came to him, crying. She said to him, "You do not really love me. You hate me! You have told a riddle to my friends, but you have not told me the answer to it!" He replied, "I have not even told my own mother and father the answers, so why should I tell you?"

Translation Words - ULT

- You do…love me
- to the sons of
- my father
- my people

Translation Words - UST

- You do…really love me
- to my friends
- father
- to my friends

Judges 14:17

during the seven days that their feast lasted

Possible meanings are 1) "during the seven days of their feast" or 2) "during the rest of the seven days of their feast."

the seventh day

"day 7" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

she pressured him very much

Here the word "pressured" means "urged." Alternate translation: "she kept urging him to tell her" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the sons of
- her people
- the drinking feast

Translation Words - UST

- to the young men
- to the young men
- of the celebration

ULT

17 She continued to weep beside him during the seven days that they had the drinking feast. Now it happened on the seventh day that he informed her because she pressed him, with the result that she revealed the riddle to the sons of her people.

UST

17 She continued to cry every time she was with him, all during the rest of the celebration. Finally, on the seventh day, because she continued to nag him, he told her the answer to the riddle. Then she told it to the young men.

Judges 14:18

the men of the city

This refers to Samson's wife's relatives. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "the young men" or "her relatives" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the seventh day

"day 7" (See: Ordinal Numbers)

What is sweeter than honey? What is stronger than a lion?

This is the answer to the riddle. It may be written as a statement instead of as questions. If necessary it could be made clear how this relates to the riddle by adding more information. Alternate translation: "Honey is sweet and a lion is strong." or "Honey is sweet and it came out of a lion." (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

If you had not plowed with my heifer

Samson compares their using his wife to get the answer to someone using another person's heifer to plow his field. Alternate translation: "If you had not used my wife" (See: Metaphor)

plowed

To plow is to use an animal to pull a blade through soil to prepare the soil for seeds.

Translation Words - ULT

- stronger

Translation Words - UST

- as strong as

ULT

18 Then the men of the city said to him before the sun went down on the seventh day, "What is sweeter than honey? and what is stronger than a lion?" So he said to them, "If you had not plowed with my heifer, you would not have found out my riddle."

UST

18 So before sunset on the seventh day, the young men came to Samson and said to him, "Nothing is sweeter than honey; Nothing is as strong as a lion." Samson replied, "People use their own animals to plow their fields. My bride is like a young heifer that you have used, but she does not belong to you! If you had not forced her to ask me, you would not have learned the answer!"

Judges 14:19

came on Samson with power

The phrase "came on" means that Yahweh's Spirit influenced Samson. In this case, he made him very strong. Alternate translation: "made Samson very strong" or "made Samson very powerful" (See: Idiom)

killed thirty of their men

"killed 30 of their men" - (See: Numbers)

their men

"the men who lived there"

plunder

things taken by force, usually after a fight or battle

their clothes

These were from the plunder he had taken from Ashkelon. Alternate translation: "the sets of clothing that he had taken" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Burning with anger

"Very angry"

went up to his father's house

The phrase "went up" is used here because Samson was at Timnah which is lower in elevation than where his father's house is located.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Spirit of
- Yahweh
- his father
- to the house of

Translation Words - UST

- s Spirit
- Yahweh
- home to live with his mother and father
- home to live with his mother and father

ULT

19 Then the Spirit of Yahweh rushed upon him. He went down to Ashkelon and he struck down thirty of their men. He took their spoil, and he gave the changes of clothes from the riddle. His anger blazed, and he went up to the house of his father.

UST

19 Then Yahweh's Spirit powerfully came on Samson. He went down to the coast at the city of Ashkelon and killed thirty men. He took their clothes and went back to Timnah; then he gave them to the men at the feast. But he was very angry about what had happened, so he went back home to live with his mother and father.

Judges 14:20

Samson's wife was given to his best friend

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his wife's father gave her to his best friend" (See: Active or Passive)

best friend

"closest friend"

Judges 15

Judges 15 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The account of Samson continues in this chapter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 15:16.

Special concepts in this chapter

Samson's strength

The Spirit of Yahweh rushed upon Samson. This meant God gave Samson extraordinary strength. Samson's power is the power of Yahweh himself and he enacted the judgment of God on the Philistines. (See: Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit and judge, judgment)

Judges 15:1

He said to himself

This refers to thinking. Alternate translation: "He thought to himself" (See: Idiom)

I will go to my wife's room

Samson intended to sleep with his wife. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I will go to my wife's room, so we may sleep together" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

would not allow him to go in

The phrase "her room" is understood from what Samson said to himself. It can be repeated here. Alternate translation: "would not permit him to go into her room" (See: Ellipsis)

Translation Words - ULT

- that...visited
- her father
- the harvest of
- wheat

Translation Words - UST

- took...to Timnah
- her father
- that they were harvesting
- the wheat

ULT

1 Now it happened after some days, during the days of the harvest of wheat, that Samson visited his wife with a kid from the goats. for he said, "I will go in to my wife, to the inner room." But her father did not allow him to go in.

UST

1 During the time that they were harvesting the wheat, Samson took a young goat to Timnah as a present for his wife. He wanted to sleep with his wife, but her father would not let him go into her room.

Judges 15:2

so I gave her to your friend

This means that he gave her to be his friend's wife. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "so I gave her to be married to your friend" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

is she not?

He asks this question to imply that Samson should agree with him. This question may be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "I hope you agree." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Take her instead

He is suggesting that Samson take her as his wife. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Take her to be your wife instead" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Is...better
- Her father

Translation Words - UST

- is more beautiful
- He

ULT

2 Her father said, "Truly I said that surely you hated her, so I gave her to your close friend. Is not her younger sister better than she? Please may she be yours in her place."

UST

2 He said to Samson, "I really thought that you hated her. So I gave her to the man who was your best friend at the wedding, and she has married him. But look, her younger sister is more beautiful than she is. Take her instead."

Judges 15:3

I will be innocent in regard to the Philistines when I hurt them

Samson thinks that he will be innocent if he attacks the Philistines because they wronged him. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "I will be innocent if I hurt the Philistines because they have wronged me" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- calamity

Translation Words - UST

- to get revenge on

ULT

3 Samson said to them, "This time I am blameless concerning the Philistines when I am inflicting calamity against them."

UST

3 Samson replied, "No! And this time I have a right to get revenge on you Philistines!"

Judges 15:4

three hundred foxes

"300 foxes" (See: Numbers)

foxes

Foxes are animals like dogs that have long tails and that eat nesting birds and other small animals.

each pair

a pair is two of anything, such as two foxes, or two tails

tail to tail

"by their tails"

torches

A torch is a stick of wood with something flammable attached to one end; a torch is often used to light other things or to be carried for light.

Translation Words - ULT

- and he set

Translation Words - UST

- He fastened

ULT

4 Then Samson went and captured three hundred foxes and he made them turn tail to tail. He took torches, and he set one torch between two of the tails in the middle.

UST

4 Then he went out into the fields and caught three hundred foxes. He tied their tails together, two by two. He fastened torches to each pair of tails.

Judges 15:5

standing grain

grain that is still growing on its stalk in the field

stacked grain

the stalks of grain collected in piles after it has been harvested

orchards

An orchard is a place where fruit trees are grown.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistines
- fire
- and olive orchard
- a vineyard

Translation Words - UST

- the Philistines
- Then he lit
- and their olive trees
- their grapevines

ULT

5 He kindled fire in the torches, he let them loose into the standing grain of the Philistines. As a result he burned both the stack of sheaves and also the standing grain, even a vineyard, and olive orchard.

UST

5 Then he lit the torches and let the foxes run through the fields of the Philistines. The fire from the torches burned all the grain to the ground, including the grain that had been cut and stacked in bundles. The fire also burned down their grapevines and their olive trees.

Judges 15:6

the Timnite's son-in-law

The husband of a man's daughter is a "son-in-law."

Timnite

This is a person from Timnah. (See: How to Translate Names)

took Samson's wife and gave her to his friend

Samson's wife's father gave her in marriage to Samson's friend. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "took Samson's wife and allowed her to marry Samson's friend" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

burned up

The phrase "burned up" means to burn something completely. If a person is "burned up," it means that person is burned to death. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistines
- the Philistines
- her father
- with fire
- the son-in-law of

Translation Words - UST

- The Philistines
- the Philistines
- her father
- fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot
- He married a woman from Timnah

ULT

6 So the Philistines said, "Who has done this?", and they replied "Samson, the son-in-law of the Timnite, because he took his wife and he gave her to his close friend." As a result the Philistines went up and they burned her and her father with fire.

UST

6 The Philistines asked, "Who did this?" Someone told them, "Samson did it. He married a woman from Timnah, but then his father-in-law gave her to the man who was Samson's best friend at the wedding, and she married him." So the Philistines went to Timnah and got the woman and her father, and burned them to death.

Judges 15:7

said to them

"said to the Philistines"

If this is what you do

"Because you have done this."

Judges 15:8

he cut them to pieces, hip and thigh

Here "hip and thigh" refers to the whole body. This is a graphic description of how Samson killed the Philistines. Alternate translation: "He cut their bodies to pieces" (See: Synecdoche)

he went down

Here the phrase "went down" does not likely mean that he changed elevation, but rather, it is a way to describe someone going to another place. Alternate translation: "he went" (See: Idiom)

cave

an opening in a hill or mountainside

cliff

a high, rocky hill or mountainside

Etam

This is the name of the rocky hill country near Jerusalem. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

8 He struck them on the lower leg as well as the thigh, a great slaughter. Then he went down and he remained in the cleft of the rock of Etam.

UST

8 So he attacked the Philistines furiously and killed many of them. Then he went to hide in a cave in the large rock at a place called Etam.

Judges 15:9

the Philistines came up...in Judah

The phrase "came up" is used here because the Philistines went to Judah which is higher in elevation than where they traveled from.

prepared for battle

"organized themselves for battle"

Lehi

This is the name of a town in Judah. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Judah
- the Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- to where the descendants of Judah lived
- The Philistines...they

ULT

9 But the Philistines went up and they encamped in Judah and they had spread themselves out in Lehi.

UST

9 The Philistines did not know where he was, so they went up to where the descendants of Judah lived, and they arranged themselves for battle at the town of Lehi.

Judges 15:10

do to him as he has done to us

The Philistines are comparing how they want to kill Samson to how he killed many of the Philistines. Alternate translation: "kill him like he killed many of our people" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah

Translation Words - UST

- there

ULT

10 Now the men of Judah said, "Why have you come up against us?" They replied, "We have come up in order to bind Samson, to do to him just as he has done to us."

UST

10 The men there asked the Philistines, "Why do you want to attack us?" The Philistines replied, "We have come to capture Samson. We have come to get revenge on him for what he did to us."

Judges 15:11

three thousand men of Judah

"3,000 men of Judah" (See: Numbers)

cave in the cliff of Etam

See how you translated this phrase in Judges 15:8.

Do you not know that the Philistines are rulers over us? What is this you have done to us?

The men of Judah ask Samson these questions to rebuke him. This questions may be written as a statements. Alternate translation: "You know that the Philistines are rulers over us but you act like they are not. What you have done has caused us great harm." (See: Rhetorical Question)

They did to me, and so I have done to them

Samson is referring to how they killed his wife and how he killed them in revenge. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "They killed my wife, so I killed them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- are ruling
- of Judah
- the Philistines
- Do you…know

Translation Words - UST

- are ruling
- from Judah
- the people of Philistia
- Do you…realize

ULT

11 Then three thousand men of Judah went down to the cleft of the rock of Etam, and they said to Samson, "Do you not know that the Philistines are ruling over us? What is this you have done to us?" He replied to them, "Just as they have done to me, so I have done to them."

UST

11 Someone there knew where Samson was hiding. So three thousand men from Judah went down to get Samson at the cave in the rock where he was hiding. They said to Samson, "Do you not realize that the people of Philistia are ruling over us? Do you not realize what they will do to us?" Samson replied, "The only thing I did was that I got revenge on them for what they did to me."

Judges 15:12

the hands of the Philistines

Here "hands" refers to power. Alternate translation: "the Philistine's control" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistines
- into the hand of
- Swear

Translation Words - UST

- the Philistines
- in the hands of
- All right, but promise

Judges 15:13

hand you over to them

This means to cause someone to be under someone else's control. Alternate translation: "give you to the Philistines" (See: Idiom)

up from the rock

This refers to the cave in the cliff of Etam where Samson had gone in Judges 15:8. Here the words "up from" mean that they had brought him away from the cave. Alternate translation: "away from the cave in the large rock" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- into their hand
- But truly
- surely we will bind you
- surely we will bind you

Translation Words - UST

- to the Philistines
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- We will just tie you up

ULT

13 They replied to him saying, "No, however <u>surely we will bind you</u> and we will give you over <u>into their hand</u>. <u>But truly</u> we will not kill you." Then they bound him with two new ropes and they brought him up from the rock.

UST

13 They replied, "<u>We will just tie you up</u> and take you <u>to the Philistines</u>. We will not kill you." So they tied him with two new ropes and led him away from the cave.

Judges 15:14

When he came

Samson was not travelling alone, he was being led by the men who had tied him with ropes. Alternate translation: "When they came" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Lehi

This is the name of a town in Judah. See how you translated this in Judges 15:9.

came on him with power

The phrase "came on" means that Yahweh's Spirit influenced Samson. In this case, he made him very strong. Alternate translation: "made Samson very strong" (See: Idiom)

The ropes on his arms became like burnt flax

Samson easily broken the ropes that bound his hands. The author describes how easily he broke the ropes by saying it was as if they had become burnt flax. Alternate translation: "He snapped the ropes on his arms as easily as if they had been stalks of burned flax" (See: Simile)

flax

fibers from the flax plant used for making threads and cloth

Translation Words - ULT

- the Spirit of
- Yahweh
- his hands
- in fire

Translation Words - UST

- s Spirit
- Yahweh
- his wrists
- burned

ULT

14 He had come as far as Lehi, and then the Philistines shouted as they encountered him. Then the Spirit of Yahweh rushed upon him. The ropes which were on his arms became as flax stalks which they had burned in fire, so his bands were loosed from upon his hands.

UST

14 When they arrived at Lehi, the Philistines came toward him, shouting triumphantly. But Yahweh's Spirit powerfully came on Samson. He snapped the ropes on his arms as easily as if they had been stalks of burned flax, and they fell off his wrists.

Judges 15:15

a fresh jawbone

This means that the donkey had died very recently and its bones had not yet begun to decay. A jawbone is the bone in which the lower rows of teeth are set.

a thousand men

"1,000 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- his hand
- a donkey

Translation Words - UST

- He picked it up
- donkey

ULT

15 He found a fresh jawbone of a donkey, and he stretched forth his hand and he took it and he slaughtered a thousand men with it.

UST

15 Then he saw a donkey's jawbone lying on the ground. It was new, so it was hard. He picked it up and killed about a thousand Philistine men with it.

Judges 15:16

the jawbone of a donkey

"a donkey's jawbone"

heaps upon heaps

This phrase describes how many people Samson killed. There were enough bodies to make large piles of bodies. Alternate translation: "I have made heaps of dead bodies" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the donkey
- the donkey (2)

Translation Words - UST

- the…a donkey
- the…a donkey (2)

ULT

16 Then Samson said, "With the jawbone of the donkey, one heap, two heaps, with the jawbone of the donkey I have slaughtered a thousand men."

UST

16 Then Samson wrote this poem: "With the jawbone of a donkey I have made them like a heap of dead donkeys. With the jawbone of a donkey I have killed a thousand men."

Judges 15:17

Ramath Lehi

This is the name of a place. It's name means "Jawbone Hill" (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- out of his hand
- and he named

Translation Words - UST

- hand
- but later...was called

ULT

17 Now it happened when he finished speaking that he hurled the jawbone out of his hand, and he named that place Ramath Lehi.

UST

17 When he finished, he threw the jawbone away, but later that place was called Ramath Lehi (or Jawbone Hill).

Judges 15:18

was very thirsty

"needed water to drink"

But now will I die of thirst and fall into… uncircumcised?

Possible meanings are 1) Samson is so thirsty he could literally die. Alternate translation: "But now I will die of thirst and my body will fall into…uncircumcised." or 2) Samson exaggerates how thirsty he is by asking if he will die of thirst. Alternate translation: "But now will you allow me to become so weak from my thirst that I fall into…uncircumcised?" (See: Hyperbole)

die of thirst

This means to die because you have not drank enough and therefore, you do not have enough water in your body. (See: Idiom)

fall into the hands of those who are uncircumcised

The phrase "fall into the hands" means to be captured. "Those who are uncircumcised" refers to the Philistines and with the word "uncircumcised" emphasizing that they do not worship Yahweh. Alternate translation: "be captured by those godless Philistines" (See: Idiom)

ULT

18 Then he was very thirsty and cried out to Yahweh and he said, "You Yourself have given this great victory into the hand of Your servant. But now must I die with this thirst so that I will fall into the hand of the uncircumcised?"

UST

18 Then Samson was very thirsty, so he called out to Yahweh, "You have given me strength to win a great victory. So now must I die because of being thirsty, with the result that those heathen, uncircumcised Philistines will capture me?"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- into the hand of
- into the hand of
- Your servant
- and cried out
- so that I will fall

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- strength
- with the result that…will capture me
- me
- so he called out
- with the result that…will capture me

Judges 15:19

split open the hollow place

"opened a hole in the ground" or "opened the low place." This refers to a low area of ground where Yahweh caused a spring of water to appear.

Lehi

See how you translated this in Judges 15:9

his strength returned and he revived

These two phrase mean basically the same thing and emphasize that Samson became strong again. These two statements can be combined. Alternate translation: "he became strong again" or "he was revived" (See: Parallelism)

En Hakkore

This is the name of a spring of water. The name means "spring of him who prayed." (See: How to Translate Names)

it is at Lehi to this day

This means that the spring did not dry up but that it remained. The phrase "to this day" refers to the "present" time. Alternate translation: "the spring can still be found at Lehi, even today" (See: Idiom)

ULT

19 So God split open the hollow place that is at Lehi and water came out of it. When he drank, his spirit returned so that he revived. Therefore he called the name of it En Hakkore, which is in Lehi to this day.

UST

19 So God caused water to gush out of a depression in the ground at Lehi. Samson drank from it and soon felt strong again. He named that place En Hakkore (or "The spring of the one who called out"). That spring can still be found at Lehi, even today.

Translation Words - ULT

- so that he revived
- he called
- and...came out
- God
- his spirit
- the name of it
- returned

Translation Words - UST

- and soon felt strong again
- He named that place
- command, commandment
- God
- and soon felt strong again
- He named that place
- and soon felt strong again

Judges 15:20

in the days of the Philistines

This refers to the time period that the Philistines controlled the land of Israel. Alternate translation: "during the time the Philistines controlled Israel" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

for twenty years

"for 20 years" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Thus he judged
- the Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- Samson was the leader and judge over
- the Philistines

ULT

20 Thus he judged Israel in the days of the Philistines twenty years.

UST

20 Samson was the leader and judge over Israel for twenty years, but during that time the Philistines were in control of the entire land.

Judges 16

Judges 16 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The account of Samson concludes in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Samson's mistake

Samson mistakenly thought that he was the source of his strength. He did not realize that Yahweh had left him and without Yahweh, he had no strength. This was not Samson's only mistake. His foreign wife created most of his problems.

Judges 16:1

he went to bed with her

The phrase "went to bed with" is a polite way of referring to having sex. Alternate translation: "he had sex with her" or "he slept with her" (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- a postitute

Translation Words - UST

- a prostitute

Judges 16:2

The Gazites were told

The word "Gazites" refers to people from Gaza. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Someone told the people of Gaza" (See: How to Translate Names)

The Gazites surrounded the place...they waited for him all night at the city gate

This implies that some Gazites surrounded the place where Samson was staying and others waited at the city gate so that he could not leave.

They kept silent all night

Possible meanings are 1) "They did not make any noise all night" or 2) "They made no attempt to attack him all night."

Translation Words - ULT

- at the gate of

Translation Words - UST

- They were beside...gate, so they would be sure he could not escape

ULT

2 Thus the Gazites were saying, "Samson has come here." So they encircled and they laid in wait for him all the night at the gate of the city. They kept themselves quiet all the night, saying, "At the light of the morning, then we will kill him."

UST

2 The Gazites were told, "Samson has come here." They surrounded the place where Samson was, and they waited in secret all night. They were beside the city gate, so they would be sure he could not escape. They said, "Let us wait until the light, and then we will kill him."

Judges 16:3

until midnight

"until the middle of the night"

its two posts

These are supports for the city gate. These posts were probably made from tree trunks and were buried deep into the ground. The doors of the city gate were attached to these posts.

bar and all

The bar was probably a heavy rod of iron that connected the gate to the posts. The doors of the city gate were probably made of heavy wooden beams or iron bars.

shoulders

the part of the human body where the arms and the neck attach to the body

Hebron

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- he hoisted them
- the gate of
- the top of
- front of

Translation Words - UST

- He put it
- gate
- many miles uphill
- in front of

ULT

3 Samson lay down until the middle of the night. Then he arose in the middle of the night and he seized the doors of the gate of the city and the two doorposts. He pulled them up along with the bolt, he hoisted them upon his shoulders, and he brought them up to the top of the hill which is in front of Hebron.

UST

3 But Samson did not stay there all night. At midnight, he got up. He went to the city gate, he took hold of its two posts, and he lifted them up out of the ground, with its connecting cross bar still attached. He put it on his shoulders and carried it many miles uphill, in front of the town of Hebron.

Judges 16:4

Valley of Sorek

This is the name of a valley near Samson's home. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

   • that he loved

Translation Words - UST

   • Samson fell in love with

Judges 16:5

Trick

to mislead or fool someone into doing something they would not want to do

to see

This is an idiom that means to learn something. Alternate translation: "to understand" or "to learn" (See: Idiom)

where his great strength lies

This is an idiom that refers to where his strength comes from. Alternate translation: "what causes him to be very strong" (See: Idiom)

by what means we may overpower him

"how we might overpower him""""

1,100 pieces of silver

"one thousand one hundred pieces of silver." (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- in order to weaken him
- the Philistines
- silver pieces
- his...strength

Translation Words - UST

- humble, humbled, humility
- Philistine
- pieces of silver
- strong

ULT

5 The governors of the Philistines came up to her, and they said to her, "Make him open up. See by what means is his great strength, and how we can prevail over him, so that we may bind him in order to weaken him. Then we will each give you eleven hundred silver pieces."

UST

5 The Philistine leaders went to her and said, "Use your tricks to find out from Samson what makes him so strong. And find out how we can subdue him and tie him up securely. If you do that, each of us will give you 1,100 pieces of silver."

Judges 16:6

bind you, so you might be controlled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "bind you to control you" or "bind you to restrain you" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- in order to weaken you
- can you be bound
- your…strength

Translation Words - UST

- someone can subdue you and tie you up
- someone can subdue you and tie you up
- you…strong

ULT

6 So Delilah said to Samson, "Please, tell me by what means is your great strength, and how can you be bound in order to weaken you?"

UST

6 So Delilah went to Samson and said, "Please tell me what makes you so strong, and tell me how someone can subdue you and tie you up."

Judges 16:7

fresh bowstrings

Bowstrings were often made from parts of an animal, often from the tendons. The words "fresh bowstrings" refer to those that come from a freshly slaughtered animal that have not yet dried.

that have not been dried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that have not yet dried" or "that are not dry yet" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- they would bind me

Translation Words - UST

- someone ties me

ULT

7 Samson replied to her, "If they would bind me with seven fresh cords that have not been dried, then I would become weak and I would be just as one of the other men."

UST

7 Samson said, "If someone ties me with seven new bowstrings, ones that are not dry yet, I will become as weak as other men."

Judges 16:8

that had not been dried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that had not yet dried" or "that were not dry yet" (See: Active or Passive)

she tied Samson up with them

"Delilah tied Samson up with the fresh bowstrings"

Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- Philistine

ULT

8 Then the governors of the Philistines brought up to her seven fresh cords that had not been dried, and she tied him up with them.

UST

8 So after Delilah told that to the Philistine leaders, they brought seven new bowstrings to Delilah.

Judges 16:9

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author tells background information about Philistine men that Delilah had waiting to capture Samson. (See: Background Information)

The Philistines are upon you

The phrase "upon you" means that they are ready to capture him. Alternate translation: "The Philistines are here to capture you" (See: Idiom)

he broke the bowstrings like a thread of yarn when it touches the fire

The author describes how easily he broke the bowstrings by comparing them to how yarn breaks when it is burned. Alternate translation: "he broke the bowstrings as easily as if he were breaking burned yarn" or "he broke the bowstrings as easily as if they were made of thin yarn" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- The Philistines are
- fire
- his strength
- did...become known

Translation Words - UST

- The Philistines
- a fire
- what made Samson so strong
- the Philistines did...find out

ULT

9 Now she had the ambush group staying in the room when she said to him, "The Philistines are upon you, Samson!" But he tore the cords to shreds just as a wick of flax fiber is torn to shreds when it draws in fire. So his strength did not become known.

UST

9 Then she hid the leaders in one of the rooms in her house. She tied Samson up with the bowstrings and then called out, "Samson! The Philistines have come here to capture you!" But Samson snapped the bowstrings as easily as though they had been strings that had been singed in a fire. So the Philistines did not find out what made Samson so strong.

Judges 16:10

This is how you have deceived me and told me lies.

Deceiving and lying mean the same thing and are stated to emphasize how angry Delilah felt. Alternate translation: "You have greatly deceived me!" (See: Parallelism)

you can be overpowered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people can overpower you"

Translation Words - ULT

- you can be bound

Translation Words - UST

- someone can tie you up securely

ULT

10 As a result Delilah said to Samson, "Look, you have deceived me and you have spoken lies to me. Now tell me, please, by what means you can be bound."

UST

10 Then Delilah said to Samson, "You have deceived me and lied to me! Now tell me the truth, how someone can tie you up securely."

Judges 16:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in fact they would bind me
- in fact they would bind me

Translation Words - UST

- gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around
- someone ties me

ULT

11 He replied to her, "If in fact they would bind me with new cords with which work has not been done with them, I would become weak and I would be just as one of the other men."

UST

11 Samson replied, "If someone ties me with new ropes, ones that have never been used, I will be as weak as other men."

Judges 16:12

The Philistines are upon you

The phrase "upon you" means that they are there to capture him. Alternate translation: "The Philistines are here to capture you" (See: Idiom)

lying in wait

This means that they were hiding and waiting for the right moment to attack. Alternate translation: "waiting to attack him" (See: Idiom)

like they were a piece of thread

The author describes how easily Samson broke the ropes by comparing it to him breaking a piece of thread. Alternate translation: "as easily as if they were only a piece of thread" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- The Philistines are

Translation Words - UST

- The Philistines

ULT

12 So Delilah took new cords and she bound him with them. She said to him, " The Philistines are upon you, Samson!" with the ambush group staying in the room. But he flicked them off from upon his arms like they were thread.

UST

12 So again, she told the Philistine leaders, and then came and hid in the room as they did before. And again, while Samson was sleeping, she took the new ropes and tied him up with them and then called out, "Samson! The Philistines have come to capture you!" But Samson snapped the ropes on his arms as easily as if they had been threads.

Judges 16:13

you have deceived me and told me lies

Deceiving and lying mean the same thing and are stated to emphasize how angry Delilah felt. Alternate translation: "you have greatly deceived me" (See: Parallelism)

you may be overpowered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "people can overpower you" (See: Active or Passive)

weave

crossing pieces of material together so they hold each other in place

locks of my hair

small bunches of hair

fabric

cloth made from weaving material together

loom

a machine used for combining many threads of material into a cloth (See: Translate Unknowns)

then nail that to the loom

"then nail the fabric to the loom"

nail

to hammer a nail in order to hold something in one place

I will be like any other man

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "I will be as weak as any other man" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- my head
- you may be bound

Translation Words - UST

- my hair
- someone can tie you up securely

ULT

13 Then Delilah said to Samson, "Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. Reveal to me in what manner you may be bound." So he said to her, "If you would only weave seven of the locks of hair from my head with the loom."

UST

13 Then Delilah said, "You have deceived me and lied to me again! Please tell me how someone can tie you up securely!" Samson replied, "If you weave the seven braids of my hair into the threads you are weaving on the loom, and then fasten those threads with a nail that makes the threads tight, then I will become as weak as other men." So again, Delilah held the seven braids of his hair, and wove them into the threads on the loom,

Judges 16:14

The Philistines are upon you

The phrase "upon you" means that they are there to capture him. Alternate translation: "The Philistines are here to capture you" (See: Idiom)

he pulled out the fabric and the pin from the loom

Samson pulled out the fabric from the loom when he pulled his hair away from the loom. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "pulled away his hair, taking with it the pin of the loom and the fabric in the loom" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the pin

This is the wooden nail or peg used to fasten the fabric to the loom.

Translation Words - ULT

  • The Philistines are

Translation Words - UST

  • The Philistines

ULT

14 She fastened them together with a pin, and she said to him, "The Philistines are upon you, Samson!" However he woke from his sleep and he pulled out the pin from the weaving and the warp of the loom.

UST

14 and she secured them with a pin. Then she called out, "Samson! The Philistines have come to capture you!" But Samson woke up and pulled away his hair, taking with it the pin of the loom and the fabric in the loom.

Judges 16:15

How can you say, 'I love you,' when you do not share your secrets with me?

Delilah asks this question to say that if Samson really loved her he would tell her his secrets. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "When you say 'I love you,' you are lying because you do not share your secrets with me." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- I love you
- your...strength

Translation Words - UST

- that you love me
- strong

ULT

15 Then she said to him, "How can you say, 'I love you,' yet your heart is not with me? You have dealt deceitfully with me these three times and you have not revealed to me by what means is your great strength."

UST

15 Then Delilah said to him, "How can you say that you love me when you do not tell me the truth about yourself? You have deceived me three times, and you still have not told me what really makes you so strong!"

Judges 16:16

pressed him hard...pressured him

Here the author speaks of how Delilah tries to persuade Samson as if she were putting pressure on him to convince him to tell her what she wants to know. Alternate translation: "tried hard to persuade him...kept trying to persuade him" (See: Idiom)

with her words

"by what she said to him"

that he wished he would die

ULT

16 Now it happened that she pressured him with her speech throughout the day. She also continually pressed him so that his soul was vexed to death.

UST

16 Day after day she used every trick to get him to tell her his secret. He thought he would die from her nagging.

The author used a hyperbole, an exaggeration, to emphasize how miserable Sampson felt. Alternate translation: "that he was completely miserable" or "that he was very unhappy" (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- his soul
- to death

Translation Words - UST

- He thought he...from her nagging
- would die

Judges 16:17

told her everything

everything about the source of his strength. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "told her the source of his strength" or "told her the truth" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

razor

a sharp blade used to cut hair close to a person's skin

a Nazirite for God

This means that he is devoted to God as a Nazirite. See how you translated a similar phrase in Judges 13:5. Alternate translation: "a Nazirite devoted to God" or "devoted to God as a Nazirite" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

from my mother's womb

Here "from my mother's womb" refers to when he was born. This means that he has been a Nazirite since he was born. Alternate translation: "my entire life" (See: Metonymy)

If my head is shaved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "If someone shaves my head" (See: Active or Passive)

shaved

to have had the hair cut close to the skin with a razor

my strength will leave me

Samson speaks about his strength as if it were a person who could leave him. Alternate translation: "I will not be strong any more" (See: Personification)

ULT

17 So he told her everything in his heart and he said to her, "A razor has never gone up upon my head, because I have been a Nazirite to God from the womb of my mother. If I would be completely shaved, then my strength would leave me, and I would become weak. I would be just as any of the other men."

UST

17 Finally Samson told her the truth. He said, "I have been set apart for God since the day I was born. And because of that, my hair has never been cut. If my hair were shaved off, my strength would be gone, and I would be as weak as other men."

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- his heart
- my head
- my strength

Translation Words - UST

- God
- the truth
- head
- my strength

Judges 16:18

Delilah saw

Here the word "saw" is a idiom that means to realize something. Alternate translation: "Delilah realized" or "Delilah learned" (See: Idiom)

the truth about everything

Here the word "everything" refers to everything about why Samson was strong. Alternate translation: "the truth about why he is strong" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Come up again

Delilah is telling the rulers to come again to where she lives. Her home is likely at a higher elevation than where the rulers would be travelling from.

bringing the silver in their hands

This means that they brought to her the silver that they had promised to give her if she helped them capture Samson. Alternate translation: "bringing the silver that they had promised to give her" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

18 When Delilah perceived that he had told her everything in his heart, she sent and she called to the governors of the Philistines, saying, "Come up one more time, for he has told me everything in his heart." Then the rulers of the Philistines came up to her, and they brought the silver in their hand.

UST

18 Delilah realized that this time he had told her the truth. So she called together the Philistine leaders, saying, "Come back one more time, because Samson has finally told me the secret about his strength." So the Philistine leaders returned and gave Delilah the money they promised to give her.

Translation Words - ULT

- his heart
- his heart
- the Philistines
- the Philistines
- in their hand
- the silver
- and she called

Translation Words - UST

- the truth
- the secret about his strength
- Philistine
- Philistine
- they promised to give her
- the money
- So she called together

Judges 16:19

She had him fall asleep

"She caused him to fall asleep"

in her lap

This means that he slept with his head on her lap. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "with his head on her lap" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

lap

The lap is the level area of the upper legs when a person is sitting down.

the seven locks of his head

Samson had seven locks of hair on his head. Locks are small bunches of hair. Here his locks of hair are described as "belonging" to his head. Alternate translation: "the seven locks of hair on his head" (See: Possession)

subdue him

"control him"

his strength had left him

Here Samson's strength is described as if it were a person who could leave him. Alternate translation: "his strength was gone" or "he was no longer strong" (See: Personification)

ULT

19 Then she made him fall asleep on her knees and she called to the man while she shaved off the seven locks from his head. Thus she had begun to weaken him, and his strength departed from upon him.

UST

19 Again she lulled Samson to sleep, with his head in her lap. Then she called one of the Philistine men to come and cut off Samson's hair. As he did that, Samson became weak; he had no more strength.

Translation Words - ULT

- to weaken him
- his head
- Thus she had begun
- his strength
- and she called

Translation Words - UST

- humble, humbled, humility
- Samson's hair
- As he did that
- Samson became weak; he had no more strength
- Then she called

Judges 16:20

The Philistines are upon you

The phrase "upon you" means that they are ready to capture him. Alternate translation: "The Philistines are here to capture you" (See: Idiom)

woke up

"awakened"

get out

"escape"

But he did not know that Yahweh had left him

It is implied that if Yahweh left Samson, he would no longer be strong. Alternate translation: "But he did not know that Yahweh had left him and that he would not be strong enough to defeat the Philistines" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- The Philistines are
- I will escape
- did...know

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- The Philistines
- I will do as I did before
- did...realize

ULT

20 Then she said, "The Philistines are upon you, Samson!" He woke up from his sleep and he said, "I will escape like time after time and I will shake myself loose." But he did not know that Yahweh had departed from upon him.

UST

20 Then after she tied him up, she called out, "Samson! The Philistines have come to capture you!" He woke up and thought, "I will do as I did before. I will shake these ropes off myself and be free!" But he did not realize that Yahweh had left him.

Judges 16:21

put out his eyes

This means that they removed his eyes from his head. Alternate translation: "removed his eyes" (See: Idiom)

down to Gaza

The phrase "down to" is used here because they brought Samson to Gaza which is lower in elevation than his home where they captured him.

bound him with bronze shackles

"chained him with bronze shackles" or "tied him up using bronze shackles"

shackles

locks on the end of chains that hold a prisoner at his feet or hands, or both

turned the millstone

"pulled the millstone around in a circle"

millstone

This is a very large, heavy, circular stone. Normally, a large animal pulls the millstone around in a circle to crush grain. Here the Philistines humiliate Samson by making him pull it.

Translation Words - ULT

- at the house of
- The Philistines

Translation Words - UST

- There they put him in prison
- the Philistine men

ULT

21 The Philistines seized him and they gouged out his eyes. They brought him down to Gaza and they bound him with a pair of bronze fetters. Now it happened that he was grinding at the house of the prisoners.

UST

21 So the Philistine men seized him and gouged out his eyes. Then they took him to Gaza. There they put him in prison and bound him with bronze chains. They made him turn a large millstone to grind grain every day.

Judges 16:22

after it had been shaved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "after the Philistines had shaved it" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- his head
- However...began

Translation Words - UST

- his hair
- But...started

ULT
22 However, the hair on his head began to grow again after it had been shaved.

UST
22 But his hair started to grow again after it had been cut.

Judges 16:23

Dagon

a major false god of the Philistines (See: How to Translate Names)

has conquered

"has defeated"

put him in our grasp

Here the author speak of Samson being under the rulers' control as if he were something grasped tightly by their hands. Alternate translation: "put him under our control" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- their god
- Our god
- the Philistines
- into our hand
- our great enemy
- assembled themseleves together
- a...sacrifice

Translation Words - UST

- their god
- Our god
- Philistine
- us to defeat
- our great enemy
- celebrated a big festival
- sacrifices

ULT

23 The governors of the Philistines assembled themseleves together to offer a great sacrifice to Dagon their god, and for a celebration. They said, " Our god has given Samson into our hand, our great enemy."

UST

23 Several months later the Philistine leaders celebrated a big festival. During the festival they offered sacrifices to their god Dagon. They praised him, saying, "Our god has enabled us to defeat our great enemy Samson!"

Judges 16:24

the destroyer of our country

This refers to Samson. The word "destroyer" can be expressed with the verb "destroy." Alternate translation: "the man who has destroyed our country"

who killed many of us

Here the word "us" refers to the Philistine people. Those who are talking are not counting themselves among the people whom Samson killed. Alternate translation: "who killed many of our people" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- their god
- Our god
- into our hand
- our enemy
- the people
- they praised
- our land

Translation Words - UST

- their god Dagon
- Our god...Our god
- into our hands...to capture
- our great enemy
- the other people
- they also praised
- our country

ULT

24 When the people saw him, they praised their god, for they said, "Our god has given our enemy into our hand, the devastator of our land, who heaped up our slain ones."

UST

24 When the other people saw Samson, they also praised their god Dagon, saying, "Our god has put our great enemy into our hands. Our god helped us to capture the one who has harmed our country so much!"

Judges 16:25

Call for Samson...They called for Samson

Since Samson was a prisoner, he would not be called directly, but rather the people were asking for the men in charge of the prison to bring him to them. Alternate translation: "Call for them to bring out Samson...They brought Samson" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Call
- their heart
- was merry
- So they called
- from the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Bring...out of the prison! Bring...here
- the people were half-drunk
- the people were half-drunk
- So they brought
- from the prison

ULT

25 Now it happened when their heart was merry, that they said, "Call for Samson, that he may make us laugh." So they called for Samson from the house of the prisoners and he caused laughter in front of them. They had made him stand between the columns.

UST

25 By that time the people were half-drunk. They shouted, "Bring Samson out of the prison! Bring him here so he can entertain us!" So they brought Samson from the prison and made him stand in the center of the temple. They made him stand between the two pillars that held up the roof.

Judges 16:26

the boy

"the young man" This was not a young child, but rather a youth.

Permit me to touch the pillars on which the building rests

"Allow me to touch the pillars which hold up the building"

Translation Words - ULT

- onto his hand
- the young man
- the building

Translation Words - UST

- by his hand
- the servant
- house

Judges 16:27

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story while the writer tells background information. (See: Background Information)

three thousand men and women

"3,000 men and women" (See: Numbers)

looking on

"watching"

while Samson was entertaining them

It is unclear what Samson did to entertain them. It seems the Philistines were making him do things that would humiliate him so that they could make fun of him.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Philistines
- Now the building

Translation Words - UST

- Philistine
- At that time the temple

ULT

27 Now the building was full of the men and the women, and situated there were all of the governors of the Philistines. On the roof there were about three thousand men and women, who were watching while Samson was entertaining.

UST

27 At that time the temple was full of men and women. All the Philistine leaders were also there. And there were about three thousand people on the roof, watching Samson and making fun of him.

Judges 16:28

called to Yahweh

"prayed to Yahweh"

call me to mind

This means to remember him and his situation. Alternate translation: "remember me" (See: Idiom)

only this once

"one more time"

in one blow on the Philistines

This idiom means that he wants to have one more powerful act against the Philistines to get full revenge for what they did to him. Alternate translation: "with one strike against the Philistine" or "in one powerful act against the Philistines" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- My Lord
- O God
- Yahweh
- Then...called out

Translation Words - UST

- Lord
- God
- Yahweh
- prayed

ULT

28 Then Samson called out to Yahweh and he said, "My Lord Yahweh, remember me, please! Strengthen me please, just this time, O God, so that I may avenge myself by one act of vengence on the Philistines because of my two eyes."

UST

28 Samson prayed to Yahweh and he said, "Lord Yahweh, think about me again! Please give me strength only this once more, so that I may get revenge on the Philistines for gouging out my eyes!"

Judges 16:29

on which the building rested

"which held up the building"

Translation Words - ULT

> • the building

Translation Words - UST

> • the temple

Judges 16:30

He stretched out with his strength

When Samson stretched out his arms he pushed down the pillars of the building. Alternate translation: "He used his strength to push down the pillars" or "He used his strength to push over the pillars" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

the dead

This refers to people who are dead. Alternate translation: "the dead people" (See: Nominal Adjectives)

were more

"were a greater amount"

Translation Words - ULT

- My soul
- the Philistines
- the people
- the ones who died
- with his strength
- the building
- and…fell

Translation Words - UST

- me
- the Philistines
- the other Philistine people, and they all died
- die, dead, deadly, death,
- with all his strength
- the temple
- The pillars collapsed, and…crashed down

ULT

30 Then Samson said, "My soul will die with the Philistines!" He stretched out with his strength and the building fell on the governors and on all of the people who were in it. So the ones who died that he killed at his death were more than those he killed during his life.

UST

30 Then he shouted to God, "Let me die with the Philistines!" He pushed with all his strength. The pillars collapsed, and the temple crashed down on the Philistine leaders and all the other Philistine people, and they all died. So Samson killed more people when he died than he had killed all during his life.

Judges 16:31

all the house of his father

Here the word "house" refers to his family. Alternate translation: "all of his father's family" (See: Metonymy)

came down

The phrase "came down" is used here because the place that Samson's family traveled form was higher in elevation than Gaza.

Zorah...Eshtaol

See how you translated the names of these places in Judges 13:2 and Judges 13:25.

in the burial place of Manoah, his father

"where his father, Manoah, is buried"

Manoah

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 13:2. (See: How to Translate Names)

Samson had judged Israel for twenty years

This same sentence is also in Judges 15:20. It is repeated here to remind readers of how long he judged Israel. Alternate translation: "Samson had judged Israel for twenty years before he died" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

twenty years

"20 years" (See: Numbers)

ULT

31 Then his brothers and all the house of his father went down. They carried him, as they went back up. They buried him between Zorah and between Eshtaol in the burial place of Manoah, his father. He had judged Israel twenty years.

UST

31 Later his brothers and their relatives went down from Zorah to Gaza to get his body. They took it back home and buried it between Zorah and Eshtaol, at the place where Samson's father Manoah was buried. Now Samson had led Israel for twenty years.

Translation Words - ULT

- his brothers
- Israel
- his father
- his father
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- his brothers
- Israel
- their relatives
- Samson's father
- their relatives

Judges 17

Judges 17 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter begins a section explaining how Israel came to have a king.

Special concepts in this chapter

Idols and figures

According to the law of Moses, the Israelites were prohibited from making wooden figures or cast metal idols. This was a form of idolatry. This practice was common in Canaan and it shows the influence the Israelites allowed these people to have on them. (See: law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law)

Judges 17:1

There was a man

This is a way to introduce a new person to the story line. (See: Introduction of New and Old Participants)

Micah

This is the name of a man. It is not the same man who wrote the book of Micah. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

  • Ephraim

Translation Words - UST

  • the tribe of Ephraim live

ULT

1 Now there was a man from the hill country of Ephraim, and his name was Micah.

UST

1 There was a man named Micah who lived in the hill country where the tribe of Ephraim live.

Judges 17:2

1,100 pieces

"one thousand one hundred pieces" (See: Numbers)

that were taken from you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which someone stole from you" (See: Active or Passive)

I stole it

"I was the one who took it"

Translation Words - ULT

- Blessed is
- my son
- by Yahweh
- The...silver pieces
- The silver is

Translation Words - UST

- I pray that...will bless you
- My son
- Yahweh
- pieces of silver
- it

ULT

2 He said to his mother, "The eleven hundred silver pieces that were taken from you, about which you swore a curse, and moreover you uttered it in my ears—look! The silver is with me. I took it myself." His mother said, "Blessed is my son by Yahweh!"

UST

2 One day he said to his mother, "I heard you curse whoever stole eleven hundred pieces of silver from your house. I am the one who took the silver, and I still have it." His mother replied, "My son, I pray that Yahweh will bless you."

Judges 17:3

1,100 pieces

"one thousand one hundred" (See: Numbers)

set apart

This means to dedicate something to a specific purpose. Alternate translation: "dedicate" (See: Idiom)

cast metal

metal that has been melted and poured into a mold to form a special shape

I restore it to you

"I give it back to you"

Translation Words - ULT

- I had entirely consecrated
- I had entirely consecrated
- to my son
- to Yahweh
- I will return it back
- from my hand
- the...silver pieces
- the silver
- Then he brought back

Translation Words - UST

- consecrate, consecrated, consecration
- I will give
- to her son, "My son
- to Yahweh
- I will give some of this silver back
- hand
- the silver
- some of this silver
- Micah gave...back

ULT

³ Then he brought back the eleven hundred silver pieces to his mother and his mother said, "I had entirely consecrated the silver to Yahweh, from my hand to my son in order to make an idol and a cast image. So now, I will return it back to you."

UST

³ Micah gave all the silver back to his mother. Then she said to herself, "I will give some of this silver to Yahweh." And she said to her son, "My son, I want you to make an idol and a statue from this silver. So I will give some of this silver back to you for making these things."

Judges 17:4

two hundred pieces of silver

"200 pieces of silver" (See: Numbers)

they were placed in the house of Micah

The word "they" refers to the metal figures. This may be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Micah placed them in his house" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- in the house of
- the silver
- silver pieces
- Even so he restored

Translation Words - UST

- house
- the silver
- pieces
- After he had given...back

ULT

4 Even so he restored the silver to his mother, his mother took two hundred silver pieces and she gave them to the refiner. He made it into an idol and a cast image, and so it was in the house of Micah.

UST

4 After he had given the silver back to his mother, she took two hundred pieces and gave them to a metal worker. With the silver that man made a carved figure and a cast metal figure, and gave them to Micah. Micah put them in his house.

Judges 17:5

a house of idols

This refers to a house used specifically for worshiping idols. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "a house for worshiping idols" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- his sons
- gods
- as a priest
- the hand of
- a house of

Translation Words - UST

- of his sons
- in which he worshiped his idols
- the priest
- hand
- a house

ULT

5 Now the man Micah he had a house of gods. He made an ephod and family idols, and he even filled the hand of one of his sons so he was as a priest for him.

UST

5 He had a house in which he worshiped his idols. He made a kind of vest that was worn by priests, and some smaller, personal idols and Micah gave one of his sons the task of being the priest for all his idols.

Judges 17:6

everyone did what was right in his own eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "each person did what he decided was right" or "each person did what he judged to be right" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Israel
- a king

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- a king

ULT

6 In those days there was not a king in Israel. Each man would do whatever was right in his eyes.

UST

6 At that time, Israel did not have a king, and everyone did whatever they each decided was okay.

Judges 17:7

of Bethlehem

"from Bethlehem"

of the clan of Judah

This means that he was living among the family of Judah, that is, the tribe of Judah. Alternate translation: "who was living among the tribe of Judah" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

He stayed there to fulfill his duties

"He lived and worked there"

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Judah
- a Levite
- from the family of
- a young man

Translation Words - UST

- which is in the area where the tribe of Judah lives
- Judea
- a member of the tribe of Levi
- family, household
- a young man

ULT

7 Now there was a young man from Bethlehem in Judah, from the family of Judah, and he was a Levite. He was sojourning there.

UST

7 There was a young man who had been living in town of Bethlehem which is in the area where the tribe of Judah lives. He wanted to work as a priest because he was a member of the tribe of Levi.

Judges 17:8

find a place to live

"find a different place to live"

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Ephraim
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Judea
- where the tribe of Ephraim lived
- s house

ULT

8 The man went out of the city, from Bethlehem in Judah to sojourn in whatever place he might find. He came to the hill country of Ephraim as far as the house of Micah as he made his way.

UST

8 So he left Bethlehem to find another place to live and work. He came to Micah's house in the hill country where the tribe of Ephraim lived.

Judges 17:9

where I might live

It is implied that he is looking for a place to live and work. Alternate translation: "where I might live and have a job" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- I am
- Judah
- a Levite
- going

Translation Words - UST

- I am
- Judea
- from the tribe of Levi
- am looking for a place to live and work as a priest

ULT

9 Micah said to him, "Where have you come from?" He replied to him, "I am a Levite from Bethlehem in Judah, and I am going to sojourn in whatever place I might find."

UST

9 Micah asked him, "Where are you from?" He replied, "I come from Bethlehem. I am from the tribe of Levi, and I am looking for a place to live and work as a priest."

Judges 17:10

a father and a priest

The word "father" is here used in the sense of an advisor, and not to a literal father. Alternate translation: "an advisor and a priest" (See: Metonymy)

I will give you ten pieces of silver a year

"I will give you ten pieces of silver each year"

a suit of clothes

"a set of clothes"

So the Levite went into his house

It is implied that the Levite accepted Micah's offer, and therefore, entered Micah's house. Alternate translation: "So the Levite accepted his offer and went into his house" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

ULT

10 Micah said to him, "Stay with me, and be as a father and as a priest to me. I myself will give to you ten silver pieces for the days, and provision of garments and your sustanance." So the Levite went in.

UST

10 Micah said to him, "Stay with me, and you can advise me and be my priest. Each year I will give to you ten pieces of silver and some new clothes. And I will provide food for you."

Translation Words - ULT

- and as a priest
- the Levite
- as a father
- silver pieces

Translation Words - UST

- and be my priest
- Levi, Levite, Levitical
- and you can advise me
- pieces of silver

Judges 17:11

the young man became to Micah like one of his sons

The relationship between the Levite and Micah became like the close relationship between a father and son. Alternate translation: "the young man became close to Micah and was like one of his sons" (See: Simile)

Translation Words - ULT

- his sons
- the Levite
- the young man

Translation Words - UST

- of Micah's own sons
- the young man
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT

11 So the Levite was willing to stay with the man, and the young man became to him as one of his sons.

UST

11 So the young man agreed to live with Micah. He became like one of Micah's own sons.

Judges 17:12

Micah set apart the Levite

Here "set apart" means that Micah "dedicated" or "ordained" him.
Alternate translation: "Micah dedicated the Levite" (See: Idiom)

was in Micah's house

Here living in Micah's house is spoken of as "being" in his house.
Alternate translation: "lived in Micah's house" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- in the house of
- as a priest
- the Levite
- the hand of
- the young man

Translation Words - UST

- in...s house
- a priest
- him
- him
- servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

ULT
12 Micah filled the hand of the Levite, and the young man became as a priest for him. So it was in the house of Micah.

UST
12 Micah appointed him to be a priest, and he lived in Micah's house.

Judges 17:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- will cause success
- Yahweh
- as a priest
- this Levite
- I know

Translation Words - UST

- will do good things
- Yahweh
- to be my priest
- a man from the tribe of Levi
- I know

ULT

13 Then Micah said, "Now I know that Yahweh will cause success for me, because I have this Levite as a priest."

UST

13 Then Micah said, "Now I know that Yahweh will do good things for me, because I have a man from the tribe of Levi to be my priest."

Judges 18

Judges 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The tribe of Dan

The tribe of Dan lacked faith in Yahweh and had yet to conquer its inheritance. In this chapter, they begin to conquer their land, but they also started to worship an idol. Their conquering of the land is much different than the other tribes' victories. (See: faith and inherit, inheritance, heir)

Judges 18:1

In those days

This phrase introduces the beginning of another event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

In those days...from among the tribes of Israel

This is background information about Israel and the people of the tribe of Dan. (See: Background Information)

not received any inheritance from

This refers specifically to land inherited where they would live. Alternate translation: "not received a land inheritance from" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- a territory
- for an inheritance
- in Israel
- Israel
- a king
- was looking for
- the tribe of
- the tribes of

Translation Words - UST

- a good place
- had been able to receive the land that had been allotted to them
- the Israelites
- Israelite
- king
- was looking for
- The tribe of
- The other...tribes

ULT

1 In those days there was not a king in Israel. Now in those days the tribe of the Danite was looking for a territory for itself to settle, because up to that day one had not fallen to it among the tribes of Israel for an inheritance.

UST

1 At that time the Israelites had no king. The tribe of Dan was looking for a good place for them to settle down. The other Israelite tribes had been able to receive the land that had been allotted to them, but the tribe of Dan had not been able to do that.

Judges 18:2

from the whole number of their tribe

The phrase "the whole number" refers to all of the men in the tribe. Alternate translation: "from among all of the men in their tribe" (See: Metonymy)

experienced warriors

"experienced fighters"

Zorah

See how you translated the name of this town in Judges 13:2.

Eshtaol

See how you translated the name of this town in Judges 13:25.

to scout the land on foot

The phrase "on foot" means to walk. Alternate translation: "to scout the land by walking through it" (See: Idiom)

Micah

See how you translated this man's name in Judges 17:1.

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- sons of
- Ephraim
- from their family
- valor
- Go
- the land
- the land
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- they
- son
- where the tribe of Ephraim lived
- from their clans
- prosper, prosperity, prosperous
- walk, walked
- the land
- earth, earthen, earthly
- s house

ULT

2 The sons of Dan sent five men from their family, from their members men, sons of valor from Zorah and from Eshtaol, to scout out the land on foot, and to examine it thoroughly. They said to them, "Go! Search out the land thoroughly." They came to the hill country of Ephraim, as far as the house of Micah, and they spent the night there.

UST

2 So they chose five soldiers from their clans, men who lived in the cities of Zorah and Eshtaol, to go through the land and explore it and try to find some land where their tribe could live. They came to Micah's house in the hill country where the tribe of Ephraim lived, and they stayed there that night.

Judges 18:3

they recognized the speech of the young Levite

They recognized the man by the sound of his voice. Here "speech" refers to his "voice." Alternate translation: "they heard the young Levite talking, and they recognized his voice" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- Levite
- the young...man
- house of

Translation Words - UST

- who had become Micah's priest
- the young man
- house

ULT

3 They were among the house of Micah and they recognized the voice of the young Levite man. So they turned aside there and they said to him, "Who brought you here? What are you doing in this place? What do you have here?"

UST

3 While they were in his house, when they heard the young man who had become Micah's priest talking, they recognized him from his accent. So they went to him and asked him, "Who brought you here? What are you doing here? Why did you come here?"

Judges 18:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• as a priest

Translation Words - UST

• priest

ULT

4 He replied to them, "Like this and like this Micah has done for me; he has hired me and I am to him as a priest."

UST

4 He told them the things that Micah had done for him. And he said, "Micah has hired me, and I have become his priest."

Judges 18:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of God
- are going
- that we may know

Translation Words - UST

- God
- what we are trying to do on
- if we will succeed in

ULT

5 They said to him, "Inquire, please, of God, that we may know whether our journey will have success, which we are going on it."

UST

5 So they said to him, "Please ask God if we will succeed in what we are trying to do on this journey."

Judges 18:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- The priest
- Go
- you are going

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- The young man
- Go
- will be

ULT

6 The priest said to them, "Go in peace, before Yahweh is your journey which you are going on it."

UST

6 The young man replied, "Go in the knowledge that Yahweh will be with you on this journey."

Judges 18:7

Laish

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

There was no one who conquered

"There were no enemies living in their land who had conquered them"

had no dealings with anyone

"had no contact with any outsiders." This means they lived far enough away from any other city that they lived secluded from other people.

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- causing them shame
- as the manner of

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- nearby to cause trouble
- as the people did in

ULT

7 Then the five men left and they came to Laish. They saw the people who were in the midst of it were living in safety as the manner of the Sidonians, quiet and secure. There was no one causing them shame in any way in the land. Possessing restraint, they were far away from the Sidonians and there was no interaction for them with anyone.

UST

7 Then the five men left. When they came to the city of Laish, they saw that the people there lived safely, as the people did in the city of Sidon. The people there thought that they were safe, because there was no one nearby to cause trouble for them, they were far from Sidon, and they rarely had contact with any outsiders.

Judges 18:8

Zorah

Translate the name of this city the same as you did in Judges 13:2.

Eshtaol

Translate the name of this city the same as you did in Judges 13:25.

Translation Words - ULT

- their brothers
- Their brothers

Translation Words - UST

- brother
- their relatives

Judges 18:9

Are you doing nothing?

This rhetorical question is asked sarcastically and means that they should be doing the opposite. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should be acting now!" (See: Rhetorical Question and Double Negatives)

Do not be slow to attack

These two negative words "not" and "slow" together emphasize the positive idea to attack quickly. Alternate translation: "Hurry! Attack" (See: Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT

- it is...good
- to possess
- the land
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- good
- and take possession of
- some land
- that land

ULT

9 They responded, "Get up at once that we may go up against them! For we have seen the land and look, it is exceedingly good. Yet you are keeping still. You must not be sluggish to go to enter in to possess the land.

UST

9 They replied, "We have found some land, and it is very good. We should go and attack the people who live there. Why are you staying here and doing nothing? Do not wait any longer! We should go immediately and take possession of that land!

Judges 18:10

the land is wide

"the land is large." This is a description of the size of the land.

that does not lack anything in the land

The men use a hyperbole, an exaggeration, to emphasize that it is a very desirable place to live. Alternate translation: "where we will have everything there that we need" (See: Hyperbole)

that does not lack anything

The two negative words together emphasize a positive idea. Alternate translation: "has everything" (See: Double Negatives)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- both hands
- into your hands
- a people

Translation Words - UST

- God
- hand
- to us
- The people there

ULT

10 When you go, you will come to a people living securely, and the land is spacious on both hands! For God has given it into your hands, a place where there is not a lack of any thing that is on the earth."

UST

10 When you go there, you will see that there is plenty of land, and it has everything that we will need. The people there are not expecting anyone to attack them. God is certainly giving that land to us."

Judges 18:11

Six hundred men

"600 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- from the family of
- girded

Translation Words - UST

- from the tribe of
- carrying

ULT

11 So they journeyed away from there, six hundred men from the family of the Danite, out from Zorah and Eshtaol, girded with weapons of war.

UST

11 So six hundred men from the tribe of Dan left Zorah and Eshtaol, carrying their weapons.

Judges 18:12

Kiriath Jearim

This is the name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

Mahaneh Dan

Translate the name of this place the same as you did in Judges 13:25.

to this day

This means that something remains the same. It refers to the "present" time. Alternate translation: "and that is still its name" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- they call
- in Judah

Translation Words - UST

- was named
- in the area where the tribe of Judah live

ULT

12 They went up and they camped at Kiriath Jearim, in Judah. On account of this they call that place Mahaneh Dan to this day. It is back behind Kiriath Jearim.

UST

12 On their way they set up their tents near the city of Kiriath Jearim in the area where the tribe of Judah live. That is why the area west of Kiriath Jearim was named Mahaneh Dan (or the "Camp of Dan"), and that is still its name.

Judges 18:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- They crossed over
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- where the tribe of Ephraim lived
- they went to
- s house

ULT

13 They crossed over from there to the hill country of Ephraim, and they came up to the house of Micah.

UST

13 From there, they went to the hill country where the tribe of Ephraim lived. And they arrived at Micah's house.

Judges 18:14

Laish

Translate the name of this town the same as you did in Judges 18:7.

in these houses there are an ephod,...metal figure? Decide...will do

The five men asked this question to suggest and encourage the men that they should steal the idols. This can be written as a statement, and the implied information may be given in a parenthetical phrase. Alternate translation: "these houses contain an ephod,...metal figure. (They were suggesting that the men steal these things.) Decide...will do" (See: Rhetorical Question and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

in these houses there are

"in one of these house there is" or "among these houses is"

Translation Words - ULT

- their brothers
- in...houses
- the land of
- consider

Translation Words - UST

- their fellow Israelites
- in one of...houses
- the land
- We think that you know

ULT

14 Then the five men who had gone to scout out the land of Laish on foot responded to their brothers and they said, "Do you know that there are in these houses an ephod, family idols, a carved image, and a cast image? So now, consider what you will do."

UST

14 The five men who had explored the land near Laish said to their fellow Israelites, "Do you know that in one of these houses there is a sacred vest, several household idols, a carved figure and a cast metal figure? We think that you know what you should do."

Judges 18:15

they turned in there

"they turned"

they greeted him

The word "him" refers to the Levite.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levite
- the young man
- the house of
- at the house of

Translation Words - UST

- from the tribe of Levi
- where the man…lived
- the house
- which was the house where

ULT

15 So they turned in there and they came to the house of the young man, the Levite, at the house of Micah, and they asked about his welfare.

UST

15 So they went to the house where the man from the tribe of Levi lived, which was the house where Micah lived, and they greeted the young man from the tribe of Levi who was Micah's priest.

Judges 18:16

six hundred Danites

"600 Danites" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- from the sons of
- the gate
- the ones who were girded in

Translation Words - UST

- of the tribe of
- the gate of the house
- carrying

ULT

16 Now six hundred men who were from the sons of Dan, the ones who were girded in their weapons of war, were stationed at the entrance of the gate.

UST

16 The six hundred men of the tribe of Dan stood outside the gate of the house, carrying their weapons.

Judges 18:17

six hundred men

"600 men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- while the priest
- the gate
- the land

Translation Words - UST

- While they did that…the priest
- the gate
- the land

ULT

17 The five men who had gone to scout out the land by foot went up, they came there. They took the carved image, the ephod, the family idols, and the cast image, while the priest was standing at the entrance of the gate along with the six hundred men who were girded with the weapons of war.

UST

17 The five men who had explored the land went into Micah's house, and took the carved figure, the sacred vest, the household gods, and the cast metal figure. While they did that, the six hundred men stood outside the gate, talking with the priest.

Judges 18:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priest
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the priest
- house

ULT

18 When these came into the house of Micah, and they took the carved image, the ephod, the family idols, and the cast image, the priest said to them, "What are you doing?"

UST

18 When the priest saw them bringing out the carved figure, the sacred vest, the household gods, and cast metal figure, and he said to them, "What are you doing?"

Judges 18:19

Is it better for you to be priest for the house of one man...a clan in Israel?

They ask this as a rhetorical question to imply that it is true. This question can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is better for you to be priest for a tribe and a clan in Israel than for just the house of one man." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Israel
- and as a priest
- a priest
- a priest
- as a father
- your hand
- Be quiet
- for a tribe
- for the house of

Translation Words - UST

- of Israelites
- and a priest for us
- a priest
- a priest...a priest
- like a father
- Do not say anything
- Be quiet
- for a whole tribe
- for the people in the house of

ULT

19 They said to him, "Be quiet! Put your hand over your mouth and come with us, and be for us as a father and as a priest. Is it better your being a priest for the house of one man, or your being a priest for a tribe and for a family in Israel?"

UST

19 They replied, "Be quiet! Do not say anything! You come with us and be like a father to us and a priest for us. Is it better for you to stay here and be a priest for the people in the house of one man, or to be a priest for a clan, and a priest for a whole tribe of Israelites?"

Judges 18:20

The priest's heart was glad

Here the priest is referred to by his "heart" to emphasize his emotions. Alternate translation: "The priest was glad" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- The heart of
- the priest
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- liked what they were suggesting
- The priest
- the people

Judges 18:21

They put the small children in front of themselves

They traveled this way to protect the children. If Micah and his people attacked them the would reach the warriors first and not the children. Alternate translation: "They put the small children in front of themselves to protect them" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they turned

"the Danites turned around"

Translation Words - ULT

- They put

Translation Words - UST

- All the men made

ULT

21 Then they turned and they went away. They put the little children, the cattle, and the property of value in front of themselves.

UST

21 All the men made their wives and little children, their animals, and everything else that they owned to travel just in front of themselves.

Judges 18:22

a good distance

"some distance." This refers a short distance but one that is long enough to be considered as measurable progress. (See: Idiom)

the men who were in the houses near Micah's house were called together

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he called together the men who were in the houses near his house" (See: Active or Passive)

they caught up with the Danites

This implies that they ran after them. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "running after the Danites, they caught up with them"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- in the houses
- from the house of
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- the men from the tribe of
- lived
- from...s house
- house

ULT

22 They had gone a great distance from the house of Micah, when the men who were in the houses which were near the house of Micah were called together, and they overtook the sons of Dan.

UST

22 After they had gone a little distance from Micah's house, Micah saw what was happening. He quickly summoned the men who lived near him, and they ran and caught up with the men from the tribe of Dan.

Judges 18:23

Why have you been called together?

This question is a rebuke. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have called your men together to chase us." (See: Rhetorical Question)

been called together

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "called these men together" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- their faces
- They called

Translation Words - UST

- The men of the tribe of
- around
- They shouted

ULT

23 They called to the sons of Dan. They turned their faces around and they said to Micah, "What has happened to you that you have assembled together?"

UST

23 They shouted at them. The men of the tribe of Dan turned around and said to Micah, "What is the problem? Why have you gathered these men to pursue us?"

Judges 18:24

the gods that I made

Micah did not make his gods, rather the craftsman made them. Alternate translation: "the gods which I had made for me" or "the gods which a craftsman made for me" (See: Metonymy)

What else do I have left?

Micah asks this question to emphasize that he no longer has the things that are important to him. Alternate translation: "I have nothing left." or "You have taken everything that is important to me." (See: Rhetorical Question)

How can you ask me, 'What is bothering you?'

Micah asks this question to emphasize that the Danites definitely know what is bothering him. Alternate translation: "You know that I am greatly distressed!" or "You know how much I am bothered by what you have done to me!" (See: Rhetorical Question)

ULT

24 He replied, "You took my gods that I made, and the priest, and you left. What do I have any longer? So how is it you can say to me, 'What has happened to you?'"

UST

24 Micah shouted, "You took the silver idols that were made for me! You also took my priest! I do not have anything left! So why do you ask me, 'What is the problem?'"

Translation Words - ULT

- my gods
- the priest

Translation Words - UST

- the silver idols
- my priest

Judges 18:25

let us hear you say anything

The phrase "us hear you say" refers to the Danites hearing Micah speaking about what had happened, but it also includes if they are told by others that Micah had spoken about what had happened. Alternate translation: "let us find out that you have said anything" or "say anything about this" (See: Metonymy)

hear you say anything

The word "anything" refers to any information about the Danites coming to Micah's house and stealing his idols. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "hear you say anything about this matter" or "hear you say anything about what has happened" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

you and your family will be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "kill you and your family" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- temperment
- your soul
- The sons of
- your household

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- killing you
- The men from the tribe of
- and your family

ULT

25 The sons of Dan responded to him, "You should not make your voice heard among us, lest some men fierce in temperment will come with hostility against you, with the result that you would reap the destruction of your soul and the soul of your household."

UST

25 The men from the tribe of Dan replied, "You better not say anything about this matter. Some of our men might become angry and attack you, killing you and your family!"

Judges 18:26

went their way

This means that they continued on their journey. Alternate translation: "continued on their journey" or "continued travelling" (See: Idiom)

they were too strong for him

This refers to the Danites being too strong for Micah and his men to fight against. Alternate translation: "they were too strong for him and his men to fight" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- stronger
- and he returned
- his house

Translation Words - UST

- the men from the tribe of
- there was a very large group of them, so that it would be useless for him to try to fight them
- and went home
- and went home

Judges 18:27

what Micah had made

Micah did not make his gods, rather a craftsman made them for him. Also, this can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the things that had been made for Micah" or "Micah's things" (See: Metonymy and Active or Passive)

Laish

See how you translated this in Judges 18:7.

with the edge of the sword

"with their swords." Here "the sword" represents the swords and other weapons that the soldiers used in battle. (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priest
- a people
- the sword
- with fire

Translation Words - UST

- priest
- the people
- with their swords
- they burned

ULT

27 Now they had taken what Micah had made, and the priest who was his, and they came to Laish, to a people living undisturbed and feeling secure. They slaughtered them with the edge of the sword and they burned the city with fire.

UST

27 The men of the tribe of Dan were carrying the things that had been made for Micah, and they also took his priest, and they continued traveling to Laish. They attacked the people who were peacefully living there, and killed them with their swords. Then they burned everything in the city.

Judges 18:28

they had no dealings with anyone

this means they lived far enough away from any other city, that they lived secluded from other people. See how you translated this phrase in Judges 18:7.

Beth Rehob

This is a name of a town. (See: How to Translate Names)

Judges 18:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the name of
- in honor of the name of
- the name of (2)
- to Israel
- their father
- They called

Translation Words - UST

- a new name
- in honor of
- called (2)
- Israel's
- their ancestor
- They gave...to...they called

ULT

29 They called the name of the city Dan, in honor of the name of Dan their father, who was born to Israel. However Laish was the name of the city at the first.

UST

29 They gave a new name to the city, they called it Dan, in honor of their ancestor whose name was Dan. He was one of Israel's sons. The town used to be called Laish.

Judges 18:30

Jonathan son of Gershom, son of Moses

This is the name of the young Levite who used to serve as priest for Micah. This can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "The young Levite's name was Jonathan the son of Gershom, son of Moses" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and How to Translate Names)

until the day of the land's captivity

This refers to a time later on when the people of Dan would be captured by their enemies. Here the land being conquered is spoken of as if it were a prisoner taken captive by an enemy. Alternate translation: "until the day that their enemies conquered their land" or "until the day that their enemies took them captive" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- along with his sons
- priests
- the land
- the exile of
- for the tribe of

Translation Words - UST

- The people of
- son of
- and the grandson of (2)
- His descendants
- their priest...priests
- the Israelites were captured and taken away
- the Israelites were captured and taken away
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

30 The sons of Dan raised up the carved image for themselves. Jonathan, the son of Gershom, the son of Manesseh, he along with his sons were priests for the tribe of the Danite until the day of the exile of the land.

UST

30 The people of the tribe of Dan set up in the city a carved figure that had been made for Micah. Jonathan son of Gershom, and the grandson of Moses, was appointed to be their priest. His descendants continued to be priests until the Israelites were captured and taken away.

Judges 18:31

that he made

Micah did not make his gods, rather the craftsman made them for him. Alternate translation: "that had been made for him" or "that his craftsman made for him" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- the true God
- So they set up
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- After the people of the tribe of Dan set up
- the house of

ULT

31 So they set up for themselves the carved image belonging to Micah that he had made, all the days of the house of the true God being at Shiloh.

UST

31 After the people of the tribe of Dan set up the carved figure that had been made for Micah, and it stayed there as long as the house of God was in Shiloh.

Judges 19

Judges 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

The sin of Benjamin

People from a village of the tribe of Benjamin raped a visitor's wife to death. This was very evil, especially in the ancient Near East. The people of Israel considered mistreatment of a guest one of the worst crimes. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information and evil, wicked, unpleasant)

Judges 19:1

In those days

This phrase introduces the beginning of another event in the story line. (See: Introduction of a New Event)

remote

far from where most people live

Translation Words - ULT

- over Israel
- in Judah
- Ephraim
- a Levite

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- in the area where the tribe of Judah lives
- the tribe of Ephraim lives
- from the tribe of Levi

ULT

1 Now it happened in those days, when there was no king over Israel, that there was a man, a Levite, sojourning in the remotest parts of the hill country of Ephraim. He took for himself a woman, a concubine, from Bethlehem in Judah.

UST

1 At that time the Israelite people had no king. There was a man from the tribe of Levi who lived in a remote place in the hill country where the tribe of Ephraim lives. He had previously taken to live with him a woman who was a slave. She was from Bethlehem, in the area where the tribe of Judah lives.

Judges 19:2

was unfaithful to him

This means that she was unfaithful in their relationship and that she began to sleep with other men. This can be stated explicitly if necessary. Alternate translation: "began to sleep with other men" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Judah
- her father
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- Judea
- her father
- s house

ULT

2 However, his concubine committed adultery against him and she went away from being with him to the house of her father, to Bethlehem in Judah. She was there for a period of days, four months.

UST

2 But she started to sleep with other men also. Then she left him and returned to her father's house in Bethlehem. She stayed there for four months.

Judges 19:3

His servant was with him, and a pair of donkeys

"He took with him his servant and two donkeys"

Translation Words - ULT

- her heart
- restore, restoration
- her father
- the father of
- donkeys
- he was glad
- His young man was
- the house of

Translation Words - UST

- her
- restore, restoration
- her father
- father
- donkeys
- was happy
- his servant
- s house

ULT

3 Then her husband rose up and he went after her, to speak to her heart, in order to persuade to return to him. His young man was with him, and a team of donkeys. She brought him into the house of her father, and when the father of the young woman saw him, he was glad to meet him.

UST

3 Then her husband took his servant and two donkeys and went to Bethlehem. He went to ask her to come back to live with him again. When he arrived at her father's house, she invited him to come in. Her father was happy to see him.

Judges 19:4

His father-in-law, the girl's father, persuaded

"His father-in-law, that is, the girl's father, persuaded" or "The girl's father persuaded"

persuaded him to stay

"spoke to him so he decided to stay"

Translation Words - ULT

- the father of
- They ate

Translation Words - UST

- s father
- During that time he ate

ULT

4 His father-in-law, the father of the young woman, prevailed against him so he stayed with him three days. They ate and they drank, and they spent the night there.

UST

4 The woman's father asked him to stay. So he stayed there for three days. During that time he ate and drank and slept there.

Judges 19:5

he prepared

the Levite prepared

Strengthen yourself with a bit of bread

Here "bread" refers to "food." Alternate translation: "Eat some food so you will be strong enough to travel" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- your heart
- the father of
- bread
- you shall go
- his son-in-law

Translation Words - UST

- Eat something
- s father
- Eat something
- you go
- him

ULT

5 Now it happend on the fourth day that they got up early in the morning and he rose up to go, however the father of the young woman said to his son-in-law, "Strengthen your heart with a piece of bread, then afterwards you shall go."

UST

5 On the fourth day, they all got up early in the morning. The man from the tribe of Levi was preparing to leave, but the woman's father said to him, "Eat something before you go."

Judges 19:6

Please be willing to spend the night

"Please stay another night"

Translation Words - ULT

- your heart
- the father of
- and they ate

Translation Words - UST

- and have a good time
- s father
- to eat

Judges 19:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

• So he stayed

Translation Words - UST

• to stay one more night

ULT

7 Then the man rose up in order to leave,however his father-in-law urged him. So he stayed and he spent the night there.

UST

7 The man from the tribe of Levi wanted to leave, but the woman's father requested him to stay one more night. So he stayed again that night.

Judges 19:8

Strengthen yourself, and wait until the afternoon

The father-in-law is suggesting that he strengthen himself by eating. He is also asking him to wait until the afternoon to leave. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Eat some food so you will be strong enough to travel, and wait until afternoon to leave" (See: Metonymy and Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- your heart
- the father of
- and...ate

Translation Words - UST

- Have something to eat
- s father
- So...ate together

ULT

8 He got up early in the morning on the fifth day in order to leave, but the father of the young woman said, "Please strengthen your heart." So they lingered until the turning aside of the day, and the two of them ate.

UST

8 On the fifth day, the man got up early and prepared to leave. But the woman's father said to him again, "Have something to eat. Wait until this afternoon, and then leave." So the two men ate together.

Judges 19:9

now the day is advancing toward evening

"the day is almost over" or "it is almost evening"

Translation Words - ULT

- your heart
- the father of
- and his young man

Translation Words - UST

- and have a good time
- s father
- and his servant

ULT

9 When the man rose up to go, he and his concubine <u>and his young man</u>, his father-in-law, <u>the father of</u> the young woman said to him, "Look, please, the day has drawn toward evening. Please stay the night. See, the day is declining. Spend the night here and <u>your heart</u> will be glad. Then make an early start tomorrow for your journey and go to your tent."

UST

9 In the afternoon, when the man from the tribe of Levi and his slave wife <u>and his servant</u> got up to leave, the woman'<u>s father</u> said, "It will soon be dark. The day is almost finished. Stay here tonight <u>and have a good time</u>. Tomorrow morning you can get up early and leave for your home."

Judges 19:10

that is Jerusalem

"which was later called Jerusalem"

Translation Words - ULT

> • Jerusalem
> • donkeys

Translation Words - UST

> • Jerusalem
> • donkeys

ULT

10 But the man was not willing to spend the night. So he got up and he left. He came as far as the region opposite Jebus, that is Jerusalem. Now with him was a team of donkeys equipped for riding, and also his concubine was with him.

UST

10 But the man from the tribe of Levi did not want to stay for another night. He put saddles on his two donkeys, and started to go with his slave wife and his servant toward the city of Jebus, which is now named Jerusalem.

Judges 19:11

Come, let us

This is an idiom used to make a suggestion. Alternate translation: "I suggest that we" (See: Idiom)

turn aside to

This means to take a break from their journey and stop somewhere along the route. Alternate translation: "stop at" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- his master
- the Jebusite
- Come
- the young man

Translation Words - UST

- his master
- where the Jebus people group live
- We should stop
- The servant

ULT

11 They were near Jebus,and the daylight had greatly diminshed. So the young man said to his master, "Come, please, we should turn aside into this city of the Jebusite so we can spend the night in it."

UST

11 When it was late in the afternoon, they came near to Jebus. The servant said to his master, "We should stop in this city where the Jebus people group live, and stay here tonight."

Judges 19:12

turn aside into

This means to take a break from their journey and stop at a place along the route. See how you translated a similar phrase in Judges 19:11. Alternate translation: "stop at" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- his master
- from the sons of
- Israel
- Instead we will pass by
- a foreigner

Translation Words - UST

- his master
- people
- Israelite
- We will go on
- where foreign people live

ULT

12 However his master said to him, "We will not turn aside into a city of a foreigner, where there are none here from the sons of Israel. Instead we will pass by until reaching Gibeah."

UST

12 But his master said, "No, it would not be good for us to stay here where foreign people live. There are no Israelite people here. We will go on to the city of Gibeah."

Judges 19:13

Come, let us

This is an idiom used to make a suggestion. Alternate translation: "I suggest that we" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- walk, walked
- to his young man

Translation Words - UST

- walk, walked
- to his servant

Judges 19:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- belonged to Benjamin
- So they passed by

Translation Words - UST

- people from the tribe of Benjamin live
- So they continued

ULT

14 So they passed by and they went on. But the sun went down with regard to them near the region of Gibeah, which belonged to Benjamin.

UST

14 So they continued walking. When they came near to Gibeah, where people from the tribe of Benjamin live, the sun was setting.

Judges 19:15

turned aside

This means to take a break from their journey and stop at a place along the route. See how you translated a similar phrase in Judges 19:11. Alternate translation: "stopped" (See: Idiom)

the city square

the marketplace where people gathered during the day

took them into his house

This phrase means for someone to invite them to spend the night in their home. Alternate translation: "invited them to stay in their house for that night" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- was receiving
- them
- into the house

Translation Words - UST

- invited
- them
- to stay in their house

ULT

15 As a result they turned aside there to come in to spend the night in the Gibeah area. They came in and they sat down in the open plaza of the city, but no one was receiving them into the house to spend the night.

UST

15 They stopped to stay there that night. They went to the public square of that city and sat down. But no one who passed by invited them to stay in their house for that night.

Judges 19:16

Benjamites

A Benjamite was a descendant of Benjamin. See how you translated the name of this people group in Judges 3:15.

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- were Benjamite
- were Benjamite
- an old

Translation Words - UST

- the tribe of Ephraim
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- old

ULT

16 Now, look, an old man was coming from his work, from the field at the evening. The man was from the hill country of Ephraim, and he was sojurning in the Gibeah area. But the men of the place were Benjamite.

UST

16 But then an old man came by. He had been working in the fields. He was from the hill country of the tribe of Ephraim, but at that time he was living in Gibeah.

Judges 19:17

He raised his eyes

Here the man looked up and paid attention to what was around him. Alternate translation: "He looked up" (See: Metaphor)

the city square

the marketplace where people gathered during the day. See how you translated this in Judges 19:14.

Translation Words - ULT

- old
- are you going

Translation Words - UST

- elder, older, old
- are you going

ULT

17 He raised his eyes and he saw the traveling man in the open plaza of the city. Then the old man said, "Where are you going and from where are you coming?"

UST

17 He realized that the man from the tribe of Levi was only traveling and that he did not have a place to stay in that city. So he asked the man, "Where have you come from? And where are you going?"

Judges 19:18

who will take me into his house

This phrase refers to someone inviting other people into his house to spend the night there. Alternate translation: "who has invited me to stay in his house" (See: Idiom)

will take me

Here the Levite says "me," but he is actually referring to himself along with his servant and his concubine. Alternate translation: "will take us" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- I am
- in Judah
- in Judah
- Ephraim
- receiving
- am going
- to the house of
- into the house

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- my home
- Judea
- Judea
- people of the tribe of Ephraim live
- has invited...to stay in
- are going
- to Shiloh where...s house is
- their house tonight

ULT

18 He said to him, "We are passing through from Bethlehem in Judah to the remote parts of the hill country of Ephraim. I am from there. I went to Bethlehem in Judah, and I am going to the house of Yahweh. However there is no one receiving me into the house.

UST

18 He replied, "We are traveling from Bethlehem to my home in the hill country where people of the tribe of Ephraim live. I went from there to Bethlehem, but now we are going to Shiloh where Yahweh's house is. No one here has invited us to stay in their house tonight.

Judges 19:19

there is bread and wine

Change to active voice. Alternate translation: "we have plenty of bread and wine" (See: Active or Passive)

me and your female servant here, and for this young man with your servants

The Levite speaks of himself and the others as servants and in the third person to show respect. Alternate translation: "me, my concubine, and my servant" (See: First, Second or Third Person)

We lack nothing

This can be written as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "We have everything we need" (See: Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

- bread
- and wine
- your servants

Translation Words - UST

- bread
- and wine
- and my servant

ULT

19 Moreover, there is straw, also fodder for our donkeys. There is even bread and wine for me and for your maidservant, and for the young man with your servants. There is no lack of anything."

UST

19 We have straw and food for our donkeys, and bread and wine for me and the young woman and my servant. We do not need anything else."

Judges 19:20

Only do not

"Do not." The word "only" is used here to emphasize what he did not want the Levite to do.

square

This refers to the city square. See how you translated this Judges 19:17.

Translation Words - ULT

- old
- Peace

Translation Words - UST

- old
- May everything go well

Judges 19:21

brought the Levite into his house

This means that he invited the Levite to spend the night in his house. Also, by inviting the Levite he was inviting the man's concubine and servant as well. Alternate translation: "invited the Levite and his servants to stay in his house" (See: Idiom and Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- They washed
- and they ate
- into his house

Translation Words - UST

- He gave water to the man and the woman and the servant to wash
- And the old man gave them something to eat
- to his house

ULT

21 So he brought him into his house and he poured out feed for the donkeys. They washed their feet and they ate and they drank.

UST

21 Then the old man took them to his house. He gave food to the donkeys. He gave water to the man and the woman and the servant to wash their feet. And the old man gave them something to eat and drink.

Judges 19:22

they were making their hearts glad

The phrase "making their hearts glad" is an idiom that means to have a good time with someone else. Alternate translation: "they were have a good time together" or "they were enjoying themselves" (See: Idiom)

some men of...surrounded the house

Some men stood on all sides of the house.

Translation Words - ULT

- making...glad
- the master of
- sons of
- their heart
- old
- the house
- the house
- your house
- Bring out
- so we will know him

Translation Words - UST

- were having a good time
- bind, bond, bound
- son
- together
- old
- the house
- house
- your house
- Bring out to us
- We want to have sex with him

ULT

22 They were making their heart glad, but look, the men of the city, men of sons of wickedness, had encircled themselves around the house, pounding repeatedly on the door. They said to the old man, the master of the house, saying, "Bring out the man who came to your house, so we will know him."

UST

22 While they were having a good time together, some wicked men from that city surrounded the house and started to bang on the door. They shouted to the old man, "Bring out to us the man who has come to your house. We want to have sex with him."

Judges 19:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- went out
- the master of
- my brothers
- you must...act wickedly
- the house
- my house

Translation Words - UST

- went outside
- old
- My brothers
- That would be a very evil thing
- old
- my house

ULT

23 The man, the master of the house, went out to them and said to them, "No, my brothers, please you must not act wickedly! Seeing that this man has come into my house, you must not do this disgraceful thing!

UST

23 The old man went outside and said to them, "My brothers, I will not do that. That would be a very evil thing. This man is a guest in my house. You should not do such a terrible thing!

Judges 19:24

See

This word is used to get the peoples' attention. Alternate translation: "Listen"

Translation Words - ULT

- what is good
- virgin
- let me bring...out

Translation Words - UST

- whatever
- virgin
- I will bring...out to you

ULT

24 Here is my virgin daughter and his concubine. Please let me bring them out so you can violate them and do to them what is good in your eyes. But to this man do not do this wicked thing!"

UST

24 Look, my virgin daughter and his slave wife are here. I will bring them out to you now. You may do to them whatever you wish, but do not do such a terrible thing to this man!"

Judges 19:25

the men would not listen to him

Here the author speaks of "agreeing" as if it were "listening." Alternate translation: "the men would not accept his offer" (See: Metaphor)

the man seized his concubine

there could be confusion as to the identity of the man. Alternate translation: "the Levite seized his concubine"

at dawn

"when the sun was coming up" or "at first light" This refers to when the sun begins to rise.

Translation Words - ULT

- and made her go forth
- They knew

Translation Words - UST

- and sent her
- They forced...to have sex with them

ULT

25 But the men were not willing to listen to him, so the man seized his concubine and made her go forth to them who were outside. They knew her and they abused her the whole night until the morning. Then they sent her away at the rising of the dawn.

UST

25 But the men did not pay attention to what he said. So the man took his slave wife and sent her to them, outside the house. They forced her to have sex with them and abused her all night. Then at dawn, they let her go.

Judges 19:26

it was light

This refers to morning when it is bright outside. Alternate translation: "the sun was fully risen" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- her master
- the house of
- and she fell down

Translation Words - UST

- lord, Lord, master, sir
- s house
- and she fell down...and lay

ULT

26 The woman came at the dawning of the morning and she fell down at the entrance of the house of the man where her master was there, until the daylight.

UST

26 She returned to the old man's house, and she fell down at the doorway and lay there until it was light.

Judges 19:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Her master
- and went out
- and her hands
- the doors of
- the threshold
- the house
- the house (2)

Translation Words - UST

- her master
- to continue
- her hands
- and went outside of
- the doorsill
- the house
- the house (2)

ULT

27 Her master rose up in the morning and he opened the doors of the house and went out to go on his way. But look, the woman, his concubine had fallen at the entrance of the house, and her hands were on the threshold.

UST

27 The next morning, her master got up and went outside of the house to continue his journey. He saw his slave wife lying there at the doorway of the house, her hands still touching the doorsill.

Judges 19:28

But there was no answer

The woman did not answer because she was dead. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "But she did not answer because she was dead" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- answering
- the donkey

Translation Words - UST

- she did…answer
- the donkey

ULT

28 He said to her, "Get up and let us go!" But there was no answering, so he took her on the donkey. Thus the man rose up and he went to his place.

UST

28 He said to her, "Get up! We will go now!" But she did not answer. He put her body on the donkey, and he and his servant traveled to his home.

Judges 19:29

limb by limb

"section by section." The author uses this graphic description of how the Levite cut up her body into specific pieces to emphasize what he did. "Limbs" refers to a person's arms and legs. If there is not a similar phrase in your language, this description may be left out of the translation. (See: Idiom)

twelve pieces

"12 pieces" (See: Numbers)

sent the pieces everywhere throughout Israel

This means that he sent the different pieces to twelve different areas of Israel. Alternate translation: "sent each piece to a different place throughout Israel" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- his house

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- his home

ULT

29 When he came to his house, he took the knife, and he seized his concubine, and he cut her in pieces to her bones, into twelve pieces, and he sent her into all of the territory of Israel.

UST

29 When he arrived at his home, he took a knife and he cut the body of the slave woman into twelve pieces. Then he sent one piece to each area of Israel, along with a message telling what had happened.

Judges 19:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Egypt

Translation Words - UST

- our ancestors
- our ancestors
- Egypt

ULT

30 Now it would happen, everyone who saw it said, "Nothing has happened and never has been seen anything like this from the day of the coming up of the sons of Israel from the land of Egypt until this day. Consider about it for yourselves! Make a plan and speak up!"

UST

30 Everyone who saw a piece of the body and the message said, "Nothing like this has ever happened before. Not since our ancestors left Egypt have we heard of such a terrible thing. We need to think carefully about it. Someone should decide what we should do."

Judges 20

Judges 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Benjamin destroyed

The army of Israel destroys all the tribe of Benjamin except 600 men. After this point in time, the tribe of Benjamin becomes mostly insignificant.

Judges 20:1

as one man

This simile speaks of the group as acting as a single person. It refers to a group of who people do everything together in the same way. Alternate translation: "as if they were a single man" (See: Simile)

from Dan to Beersheba

This refers to the land as a whole. Alternate translation: "from all the eleven tribes" (See: Merism)

Translation Words - ULT

- Then...came forth
- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- at Mizpah
- Gilead
- and the land of

Translation Words - UST

- came out
- the soldiers of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- at Mizpah
- Gilead to the east of the Jordan River
- and from the region of

ULT

1 Then all of the sons of Israel came forth, and the company was assembled as one man, from Dan and as far as Beersheba and the land of Gilead, before Yahweh at Mizpah.

UST

1 All the soldiers of Israel came out united as one man, from the city of Dan in the north to Beersheba in the south, and from the region of Gilead to the east of the Jordan River, all of them heard what had happened. So they gathered together before Yahweh at Mizpah.

Judges 20:2

God—400,000 men on foot

"God and also 400,000 regular soldiers came"

ready to fight

"capable of going to war." They were not going to fight each other.

Translation Words - ULT

- the true God
- Israel
- the people
- the people of
- among the company of
- a sword
- the tribes of

Translation Words - UST

- God
- Israel
- people, people group,
- the people
- of...who gathered there
- fighting men who were there
- the tribes of

ULT

2 The leaders of all of the people, of all of the tribes of Israel, stationed themselves among the company of the people of the true God, 400,000, each a footsoldier wielding a sword.

UST

2 The leaders of eleven of the tribes of Israel stood in front of the people who gathered there. There were 400,000 men on foot, fighting men who were there.

Judges 20:3

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here the author of the book tells background information about what the people of Benjamin knew.

had gone up to Mizpah

Mizpah was located high in the mountains.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- the sons of (2)
- Israel
- Israel
- wicked thing
- to Mizpah
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- The people of
- the other Israelites
- The people of (2)
- the other Israelites
- Israel
- the evil thing
- to Mizpah, but none of the men from the Benjamin tribe had gone to the meeting there
- the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

³ Now the sons of Benjamin heard that the sons of Israel had gone up to Mizpah. Then the sons of Israel said, "Explain how this wicked thing has been brought about."

UST

³ The people of the tribe of Benjamin heard that the other Israelites had gone up to Mizpah, but none of the men from the Benjamin tribe had gone to the meeting there. The people of Israel asked about the evil thing that had happened.

Judges 20:4

to spend the night

"for the night" or "to stay for a night"

Translation Words - ULT

- belongs to Benjamin
- Levite

Translation Words - UST

- Benjamin, Benjamite
- the Levite

ULT

4 So the Levite man, the husband of the woman who had been murdered, answered. He said, "I came, myself and my concubine, to the Gibeah region that belongs to Benjamin, to spend the night.

UST

4 So the Levite who was the husband of the woman who had been killed replied, "My slave wife and I came to Gibeah, wanting to stay there that night.

Judges 20:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The citizens of
- to kill
- so that she died
- the house

Translation Words - UST

- men of
- to have sex with...and then kill
- and she died
- the house

ULT

5 The citizens of the Gibeah region rose up against me. They surrounded the house at night because of me. They intended to kill me. Instead they assaulted my concubine so that she died.

UST

5 That evening, the men of Gibeah came to attack me. They surrounded the house where I was staying and wanted to have sex with me and then kill me. They abused my slave wife and raped her all night, and she died.

Judges 20:6

wickedness and outrage

The word "outrage" describes the "wickedness." Alternate translation: "outrageous wickedness" (See: Hendiadys)

Translation Words - ULT

- the inheritance of
- Israel
- in Israel

Translation Words - UST

- of
- Israel
- here in Israel

ULT

6 I took back my concubine and cut her in pieces, and I sent her out into every territory of the inheritance of Israel, because they have committed a heinous crime and a disgrace in Israel.

UST

6 I took her body home and cut it into pieces. Then I sent one piece to each area of Israel, because I wanted you all to know about this wicked and disgraceful thing that has been done here in Israel.

Judges 20:7

Now

This word is used to introduce the conclusion of the speech of the Levite.

give your advice and counsel here

The words "advice" and "counsel" refer to the same thing and are repeated for emphasis. They can be combined. Alternate translation: "decide what we need to do about this" (See: Doublet)

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- people
- Israelite

ULT
7 Look, all of you sons of Israel, decide for yourselves advice and a plan here."

UST
7 So now, all you Israelite people, speak, and tell me what you think should be done!"

Judges 20:8

as one

This simile speaks of the group as acting as a single person. They all acted together in exactly the same way. Alternate translation: "as if they were a single man" (See: Simile)

None of us will go to his tent…none of us will return to his house

These two clauses say basically the same thing twice for emphasis. They can be combined. The words "none…go" and "none…return" emphasizes how the people will continue to stay there. They can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "We will all stay here" (See: Parallelism and Litotes)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- We will…go back
- to his house

Translation Words - UST

- the people
- will go
- to his house

ULT

8 All of the people rose up as one man, saying, "We will not go back, each one to his tent, and we will not return, each one to his house!

UST

8 All the people stood up, and unitedly said, "None of us will go home! Not one of us will return to his house!

Judges 20:9

But now

These words introduce the main portion of what the people say after the initial exclamation.

as the lot directs

This involved tossing or rolling small marked stones to determine what God wants.

ULT

9 Instead now this is the thing that we should do to the Gibeah region, against it by lot.

UST

9 This is what we must do to the people of Gibeah. First, we will cast lots to determine which group should attack them.

Judges 20:10

ten men of a hundred...one hundred of a thousand... one thousand of ten thousand

"10 men out of 100...100 out of 1,000...1,000 out of 10,000" (See: Numbers)

provisions

food and other things the people need

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- in Israel
- in Benjamin
- for the people
- the tribes of

Translation Words - UST

- Israel, Israelites
- here in Israel
- Benjamin, Benjamite
- people, people group,
- tribe, tribal, tribesmen

ULT

10 We will take ten men of a hundred throughout all the tribes of Israel, and one hundred of a thousand, and one thousand of ten thousand, to get provision for the people, in order to do at their coming to Gibeah in Benjamin, according to all the disgrace that it committed in Israel."

UST

10 We will choose one tenth of our number to get supplies we will need to punish Gibeah for the terrible thing that they have done here in Israel."

Judges 20:11

assembled against the city

"came together to attack the city"

Translation Words - ULT

• Israel

Translation Words - UST

• Israelite

ULT

11 So every man of Israel was assembled against the city, as one man, united companions.

UST

11 And all the Israelite people agreed that the people of Gibeah should be punished.

Judges 20:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- wickedness
- Benjamin
- The tribes of
- the tribes of

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite
- a very evil thing
- Benjamin
- the...men
- the tribe of

ULT

12 The tribes of Israel sent men into all the tribes of Benjamin, saying, "What is this wickedness that has been done among you?

UST

12 Then the Israelite men sent messengers throughout the tribe of Benjamin. They demanded, "Do you realize that some of your men have done a very evil thing?

Judges 20:13

put them to death

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "kill them" or "execute them" (See: Idiom)

the voice of their brothers

Here "voice" refers to the message that they spoke. Alternate translation: "what their brother said" (See: Metonymy)

Translation Words - ULT

- their brothers
- the sons of
- the sons (2)
- out of Israel
- of Israel
- evil
- Benjamin
- the voice of
- that we may put them to death

Translation Words - UST

- their fellow Israelites
- those wicked men
- their fellow Israelites (2)
- in Israel
- their fellow Israelites
- this evil thing that has happened
- the people of the tribe of Benjamin
- paid...attention to
- in order that we can execute them

ULT

13 Therefore, now, give over the men, the sons of worthlessness, who are in the region of Gibeah, that we may put them to death, and thus we may incinerate evil out of Israel." But they were not willing, Benjamin, to heed the voice of their brothers, the sons of Israel.

UST

13 Bring those wicked men to us, in order that we can execute them. By doing that, we will get rid of this evil thing that has happened in Israel." But the people of the tribe of Benjamin paid no attention to their fellow Israelites.

Judges 20:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- The men of
- the other Israelites
- the other Israelites
- the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

14 Then the sons of Benjamin assembled themselves out of the cities to the region of Gibeah, coming out to the battle against the sons of Israel.

UST

14 The men of the tribe of Benjamin left their cities and gathered at Gibeah to fight the other Israelites.

Judges 20:15

twenty-six thousand

"26,000" (See: Numbers)

seven hundred

"700" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- had been mobilized
- The sons of
- mobilized together
- Benjamin
- a sword

Translation Words - UST

- command, commandment
- the men of
- recruited
- the tribe of Benjamin
- fighting

ULT

15 The sons of Benjamin mobilized together from the cities on that day twenty-six thousand men wielding a sword. In addition, out of the inhabitants of the Gibeah region seven hundred chosen men had been mobilized.

UST

15 In that one day the men of the tribe of Benjamin recruited twenty-six thousand fighting men. They also chose seven hundred men from Gibeah.

Judges 20:16

left-handed

A left-handed person is someone who is more skilled with their left hand than with their right hand.

could sling a stone at a hair and not miss

This show how amazingly well they could aim and hit their target. It can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: "could throw a stone at even a hair and hit it" or "could throw a stone at something as small as a hair and hit it"

Translation Words - ULT

- he would...miss
- hand
- people were

Translation Words - UST

- missing a target
- who were left-handed
- soldiers

ULT

16 Among all of these people were seven hundred chosen men, impeded in his right hand, each of whom could sling with a stone at a hair and he would not miss.

UST

16 From all those soldiers there were seven hundred men who were left-handed, and each of them could sling a stone without missing a target that was very small and as narrow as a hair.

Judges 20:17

not counting

"not including"

400000

"four hundred thousand men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- mustered up for themselves
- of Israel
- sword

Translation Words - UST

- numbered
- Israel
- the sword

ULT

17 The men of Israel, besides Benjamin, mustered up for themselves 400,000 men wielding a sword, all of whom were men of war.

UST

17 The soldiers of Israel, not including the soldiers from Benjamin, numbered 400,000 men. All of these were trained to fight with the sword, men experienced at fighting in war.

Judges 20:18

asked for advice from God

"asked God what to do" or "asked God how to continue"

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- the sons of (2)
- God
- Yahweh
- Israel
- It shall be Judah
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- Those other Israelites
- the men from the tribe of (2)
- from God
- Yahweh
- Those other Israelites
- The men from the tribe of Judah
- Benjamin

ULT

18 Then they arose and they went up to Bethel. The sons of Israel asked God and they said, "Who should go up for us at the beginning to the battle with the sons of Benjamin?" Yahweh directed, "It shall be Judah at the beginning."

UST

18 Those other Israelites went up to Bethel and asked advice from God, "Which tribe should be the first to attack the men from the tribe of Benjamin?" Yahweh answered, "The men from the tribe of Judah should go first."

Judges 20:19

moved their camp near Gibeah

There is some question about the meaning of the Hebrew text. Instead of meaning that they set up their camp near Gibeah, it could mean that the army went out and stood across from Gibeah ready to fight.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- the…men
- Israelite

ULT

19 So the sons of Israel arose in the morning and they encamped near the region of Gibeah.

UST

19 The next morning, the Israelite men went and set up their tents near Gibeah.

Judges 20:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- went forth
- Israel
- Israel
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- Then...went
- they
- Israel, Israelites
- the men from the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

20 The men of Israel went forth to the battle against Benjamin. The men of Israel set themselves up for a battle against those in Gibeah.

UST

20 Then they went to fight against the men from the tribe of Benjamin, and stood in their positions for fighting a battle, facing Gibeah.

Judges 20:21

twenty-two thousand

"22,000" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- But...came forth
- the sons of
- among Israel
- Benjamin
- to the ground

Translation Words - UST

- came
- The men of the tribe of
- from Israel
- Benjamin
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

21 But the sons of Benjamin came forth out of the Gibeah region, and they struck down among Israel twenty-two thousand men to the ground on that day.

UST

21 The men of the tribe of Benjamin came out of Gibeah and fought against them, and they killed twenty-two thousand soldiers from Israel on that day.

Judges 20:22

strengthened themselves

Here "strengthened" is an idiom that means they encouraged each other. (See: Idiom)

they formed the battle line

This probably means that the Israelites prepared their battle lines for the next day's fighting. Alternate translation: "they got ready to fight the next day"

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- people, people group,

ULT

22 However the people, the men of Israel, strengthened themselves and they continued to set up for battle at the place where they had set up there on the first day.

UST

22 But the soldiers of Israel encouraged themselves. Then they got ready to fight the next day in the same battle lines as on the first day.

Judges 20:23

they sought direction from Yahweh

The method they used is not stated. The priest may have cast lots to determine God's will.

Translation Words - ULT

- my brother
- the sons of
- the sons of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- our brothers
- they
- the people of
- Yahweh
- from Yahweh
- Yahweh
- they
- Benjamin

ULT

23 Then the sons of Israel went up and they wept before Yahweh until evening. They asked Yahweh, saying, "Should I continue to attack, to the battle against the sons of Benjamin, my brother?" Yahweh replied, "Go up against him!"

UST

23 Then they came together and begged Yahweh for help; they prayed until evening. They asked advice from Yahweh about what they should do: "Should we go again to fight against our brothers, the people of Benjamin?" Yahweh answered, "Attack them!"

Judges 20:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- they
- son
- they
- Benjamin, Benjamite

ULT

24 So the sons of Israel drew near to the sons of Benjamin on the second day.

UST

24 The next day they again stood in their positions for fighting, just as they had done on the previous day.

Judges 20:25

eighteen thousand

"18,000" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- came forth
- against the sons of
- Israel
- Benjamin
- a sword
- to the ground

Translation Words - UST

- came
- the Israelites
- the Israelites
- The men of the tribe of Benjamin
- sword, swordsmen
- earth, earthen, earthly

ULT

25 Benjamin came forth to confront them from the Gibeah region on the second day, and against the sons of Israel they struck down to the ground another eighteen thousand men. All of these were wielders of a sword.

UST

25 The men of the tribe of Benjamin came out of Gibeah and attacked the Israelites, and killed eighteen thousand more of their men.

Judges 20:26

before Yahweh

"in Yahweh's presence" or "to Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- sons of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- the people
- They fasted
- burnt offerings

Translation Words - UST

- the people of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- people, people group,
- and they fasted
- some offerings which they burned completely on the altar

ULT

26 Then the sons of Israel and all the people went up and they came to Bethel. They wept, and they sat there before Yahweh. They fasted on that day until the evening, then they offered burnt offerings and peace offerings before Yahweh.

UST

26 In the afternoon, all the people of Israel who had not been killed again went to Bethel. There they sat down and cried to Yahweh, and they fasted until it was evening. They brought some offerings which they burned completely on the altar, and they also brought some offerings to restore fellowship with Yahweh.

Judges 20:27

for the ark of the covenant of God was there in those days

This is background information that the author inserted to help the reader understand how the people asked Yahweh for an answer. (See: Background Information)

was there in those days

"was at Bethel in those days"

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- God
- the covenant of
- Yahweh
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- The people of
- God
- the covenant of
- Yahweh
- Israel

ULT

27 The sons of Israel asked Yahweh, for the ark of the covenant of God was there in those days,

UST

27 The people of Israel asked Yahweh,— for the ark of the covenant of God was there in those days,

Judges 20:28

and Phinehas...was serving before the ark in those days

This is background information that the author inserted to help the reader understand how the people asked Yahweh for an answer. (See: Background Information)

was serving before the ark

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "was serving as priest before the ark" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Attack

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "Attack the army of Benjamin" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- my brother
- the son of
- the son
- the sons of
- was serving
- Yahweh
- Benjamin
- of Aaron
- into your hand

Translation Words - UST

- who are out brothers
- son of
- was the grandson of
- the people of
- he was serving
- Yahweh
- Benjamin
- Aaron
- I will help you defeat them

ULT

28 when Phinehas, the son of Eleazar, the son of Aaron, was serving before it in those days, saying, "Should I continue to go forth to the battle once more against the sons of Benjamin, my brother, or should I stop?" Yahweh said, "Go up, for tomorrow I will give him into your hand."

UST

28 and Phinehas son of Eleazar, was the grandson of Aaron; he was serving before the ark in those days—"Should we go out to battle once more against the people of Benjamin, who are out brothers, or should we stop?" Yahweh said, "Attack! For tomorrow I will help you defeat them."

Judges 20:29

Israel set men

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "the Israelites" (See: Metonymy)

secret places

"in ambush"

Translation Words - ULT

- So…set
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- set up
- Israelite men

ULT
29 So Israel set groups in ambush around the Gibeah region on all sides.

UST
29 Israelite men set up an ambush in the fields around Gibeah.

Judges 20:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- The other Israelite men
- son
- The other Israelite men
- Benjamin, Benjamite

ULT

30 The sons of Israel went up against the sons of Benjamin on the third day, and they set up for battle against the Gibeah region as was time after time.

UST

30 The other Israelite men went and stood in their positions for fighting a battle just as they had done on the previous days.

Judges 20:31

fought against the people

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "fought against the people of Israel" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

they were drawn away from the city

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the people of Israel drew them away from the city" (See: Active or Passive)

They began to kill some of the people

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "The people of Benjamin began to kill some of the men of Israel" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- went forth
- The sons of
- Israel
- Benjamin
- the people
- and they began

Translation Words - UST

- When...came out of the city
- the men of the tribe of
- Israelites
- Benjamin
- them
- The men of the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

31 The sons of Benjamin went forth to confront the people. They were lured away from the city, and they began to strike down some of the people. About thirty men of Israel were slain as was the other time on the roads, of which one went up to Bethel, and one went to the Gibeah region through the field.

UST

31 When the men of the tribe of Benjamin came out of the city to fight against them, the Israelite men retreated away from the city, and the men of the tribe of Benjamin pursued them. The men of the tribe of Benjamin killed many Israelites, like they had done before. They killed about thirty Israelites, who died in the fields and on the roads—one of the roads went to Bethel and another road went to Gibeah.

Judges 20:32

just as at first

"just as before" or "just like the first two times"

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- But the sons of
- Israel
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- The men of
- But then...men
- Israelite
- the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

32 Then the sons of Benjamin said, "They have been defeated before us, just as at the first." But the sons of Israel said, "Let us flee so that we will draw him away from the city to the roads."

UST

32 The men of the tribe of Benjamin said, "We are defeating them like we did before!" But then Israelite men did what they had planned. The main group of Israelite men retreated a short distance from the city, to trick the men of Gibeah and cause them to pursue the Israelite men along the roads outside the city.

Judges 20:33

Baal Tamar

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Maareh Gibeah

This is the name of a place. Other translations may read "fields of Gibeah" or "west of Gibeah" or "Maareh Geba." (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite
- Israel

ULT

33 Then every man of Israel rose up out of his place and they set up battle lines at Baal Tamar. The one hiding in ambush of Israel burst forth out of his place from Maareh Gibeah.

UST

33 The main group of Israelite men left their positions and retreated, and then they stood in their battle positions again at a place named Baal Tamar. Then the soldiers of Israel who had been hiding in secret places ran out from their places in Maareh Gibeah.

Judges 20:34

ten thousand

"10,000" (See: Numbers)

chosen men

This is an idiom that means these were particularly good soldiers. Alternate translation: "well-trained soldier" (See: Idiom)

disaster was close to them

Here immanent disaster is spoken of as if it was standing very close by them. Alternate translation: "they would soon be completely defeated" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- this calamity
- was heavy
- did...know

Translation Words - UST

- Israel
- they were about to have a disastrous defeat
- There was a very big battle
- did...know

ULT

34 Ten thousand men, chosen out of all Israel came out in the sight of the Gibeah region, and the battle was heavy. But they did not know that this calamity was coming near to them.

UST

34 Then the other ten thousand Israelites came out from the places where they had been hiding, west of Gibeah, and attacked the city. They were men who had come from all parts of Israel. There was a very big battle. But the men of the tribe of Benjamin did not know that they were about to have a disastrous defeat.

Judges 20:35

25,100 men

"twenty-five thousand one hundred men" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- Benjamin
- a sword

Translation Words - UST

- They
- Yahweh
- the Israelite men
- They
- the men of the tribe of Benjamin
- were fighting men

ULT

35 Thus Yahweh defeated Benjamin before Israel. The sons of Israel destroyed Benjamin on that day, 25,100 men, everyone of those were wielding a sword.

UST

35 Yahweh enabled the Israelite men to defeat the men of the tribe of Benjamin. They killed 25,100 of them, all of them were fighting men.

Judges 20:36

The men of Israel had given ground to Benjamin, because they were counting on the men...outside Gibeah

From this sentence until the end of verse 41 is background information that the writer inserted to explain to the readers how the ambush defeated the Benjamites. (See: Background Information)

had given ground to Benjamin

This is an idiom that means they intentionally retreated. Alternate translation: "had allowed Benjamin to move forward" (See: Idiom)

they were counting on the men

This is an idiom that means they trusted their men. (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Benjamin
- to Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- the soldiers of
- Israel
- Benjamin
- the Benjamites

ULT

36 So the sons of Benjamin saw that they were defeated. The men of Israel had given a place to Benjamin, because they were confident in the group hiding in ambush that they had placed around the Gibeah region.

UST

36 So the soldiers of Benjamin saw they were defeated. The men of Israel had allowed the Benjamites to advance, because they were relying on the men they had placed in hidden positions outside Gibeah to go out and shift the battle in their favor.

Judges 20:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sword
- marched out

Translation Words - UST

- with their swords
- patient, patience, impatient

ULT

37 Then the group hiding in ambush hurried and they spread out around the Gibeah region. The group hiding in ambush marched out and it struck all of the city with the edge of the sword.

UST

37 Then the men who were hiding got up and hurried and they rushed into Gibeah, and with their swords they killed everyone who lived in the city.

Judges 20:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israel

ULT

38 Now there was the prearranged plan for the men of Israel on behalf of the group hiding in ambush: load up so that they would send the rising column of the smoke up out of the city,

UST

38 Now the arranged signal between the soldiers of Israel and the men hiding in secret would be that a great cloud of smoke would rise up out of the city.

Judges 20:39

General Information:

This verse continues to give background information that the writer inserted to explain to the readers how the ambush defeated the Benjamites. (See: Background Information)

would turn from the battle

"would retreat from the fight"

they are defeated before us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we have defeated them" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- Then Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite
- Israel, Israelites
- so the men of the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

39 when the men of Israel retreated from the battle. Then Benjamin began to attack, among the men of Israel about thirty men were slain. For they said, "Surely he is absolutely defeated before us, as in the first battle."

UST

39 By that time, the Israelite men had turned away from attacking, so the men of the tribe of Benjamin said, "We are winning the battle, as we did before!"

Judges 20:40

General Information:

This verse continues to give background information that the writer inserted to explain to the readers how the ambush defeated the Benjamites. (See: Background Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the heavens
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly
- The men of the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

40 But when the signal began to rise up out of the city, a pillar of smoke, then Benjamin retreated away from it. Indeed, look, the entirety of the city had gone up to the heavens.

UST

40 But then smoke from the burning buildings began to rise up from the city. The men of the tribe of Benjamin turned around and saw that the whole city was burning.

Judges 20:41

disaster

great harm, trouble, misery

come on them

This idiom means it happened to them. Alternate translation: "happened to them" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the calamity
- Benjamin

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite
- they were about to have a disastrous defeat
- the tribe of Benjamin

ULT

41 Then the men of Israel turned back. Each man of Benjamin was horrified, for he saw that the calamity had come upon them.

UST

41 Then the main group of Israelite men also saw the smoke, and they knew that the smoke signaled that they should turn around and begin to attack. The men of the tribe of Benjamin were very afraid, because they realized that they were about to have a disastrous defeat.

Judges 20:42

But the fighting overtook them

This speaks about fighting as if it were a person who could overtake someone. Alternate translation: "But the soldiers of Israel caught up to them" or "But they were not able to escape the fighting" (See: Personification)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel

Translation Words - UST

- Israelite

Judges 20:43

Nohah

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

trampled them down

The completed destruction of the Benjamites is spoken of as if the Israelites stomped on their bodies. Alternate translation: "they completely destroyed them" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- Benjamin
- they put him to flight
- With ease

Translation Words - UST

- some of the men of the tribe of Benjamin
- and pursued the others
- rest, rested, restless

ULT

43 They surrounded Benjamin, they put him to flight. With ease they trampled him down as far as opposite the Gibeah region, in the direction of the rising sun.

UST

43 They surrounded some of the men of the tribe of Benjamin, and pursued the others to the area east of Gibeah.

Judges 20:44

eighteen thousand

"18,000" (See: Numbers)

were distinguished in battle

"had fought bravely in the battle"

Translation Words - ULT

- valor
- They fell

Translation Words - UST

- strong
- They killed

ULT
44 They fell from Benjamin, eighteen thousand men, all of these were men of valor.

UST
44 They killed eighteen thousand strong soldiers of the tribe of Benjamin.

Judges 20:45

They turned and fled

"The remaining Benjamites turned and fled"

five thousand…two thousand

"5,000…2,000" (See: Numbers)

Gidom

This is the name of a place. (See: How to Translate Names)

ULT

45 Then they turned and they fled to the wilderness to the rock of Rimmon. They gleaned along the pathways five thousand men. They pursued closely after him as far as Gidom, and they struck down from him two thousand more men.

UST

45 Then the rest of the men of the tribe of Benjamin realized that they had been defeated. They ran toward the rock of Rimmon, but the Israelite men killed five thousand more men of the tribe of Benjamin who fell behind along the roads. They pursued the rest of them to Gidom, and they killed two thousand more.

Judges 20:46

twenty-five thousand

"25,000" (See: Numbers)

Translation Words - ULT

- valor
- a sword

Translation Words - UST

- experienced
- were…fighting

ULT

46 So it happened that all of the fallen ones of Benjamin were twenty-five thousand men wielding a sword, on that day. All of these were men of valor.

UST

46 Altogether, there were twenty-five thousand—men of the tribe of Benjamin who were killed, all of them were experienced fighting men.

Judges 20:47

six hundred

"600" (See: Numbers)

Judges 20:48

turned back against the people of Benjamin

These people of Benjamin are not the soldiers who fled to the rock of Rimmon, but the ones who were still in the city.

the city

Here "the city" refers to the people in that city. Alternate translation: "everyone who was in the city" (See: Metonymy)

in their path

This idiom refers to everything that they found as they went toward the city. Alternate translation: "they came to" (See: Idiom)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- returned
- Israel
- Benjamin
- cattle
- the sword
- on fire

Translation Words - UST

- the land belonging to the tribe of
- went back
- the Israelite
- Benjamin
- the animals
- sword, swordsmen
- they burned

ULT

48 Then the men of Israel returned to the sons of Benjamin. They struck them down with the edge of the sword, even a city in entirety, including cattle as well as everything that was found. Also all of the cities that were found, they set on fire.

UST

48 Then the Israelite men went back to the land belonging to the tribe of Benjamin, and killed the people in every city. They also killed all the animals, and destroyed everything else that they found there. And they burned all the cities that they came to.

Judges 21

Judges 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter concludes the account of the previous chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Sin and immorality

At the end of Judges, there is much sin and immorality. The people are doing wrong and fixing their wrongs by doing more evil things. This period of Judges is typified by this final account and summarized by the statement, "everyone did what was right in his own eyes." (See: sin, sinful, sinner, sinning and evil, wicked, unpleasant and righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness)

Judges 21:1

Now the men of Israel had made a promise...marry a Benjamite.”

This background information tells the reader about the promise that the Israelites made before the battle with the Benjamites. (See: Background Information)

Benjamite

This is the name of the descendants of Benjamin. See how you translated this in Judges 3:15.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- to Benjamin
- bound himself by an oath

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite
- any man from the tribe of Benjamin
- they solemnly declared

ULT

1 Now each man of Israel bound himself by an oath at Mizpah, saying, “Everyone of us shall not give his daughter to Benjamin for a wife.”

UST

1 When the Israelite men had gathered at Mizpah before the battle started, they solemnly declared, “None of us will ever allow one of our daughters to marry any man from the tribe of Benjamin!”

Judges 21:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the true God
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- the Israelites

ULT

2 Then the people came to Bethel and they sat there until the evening before the true God. They lifted up their voices and they wept, a loud weeping.

UST

2 But now the Israelites went to Bethel and cried loudly to Yahweh all day until the sun went down.

Judges 21:3

Why, Yahweh, God of Israel, has this happened to Israel, that one of our tribes should be missing today?

The people of Israel used this rhetorical question to express their deep sadness. This question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Oh Yahweh, we are so sad that one of the tribes of Israel has been completely destroyed." (See: Rhetorical Question)

Translation Words - ULT

- God of
- O Yahweh
- Israel
- to Israel
- from Israel
- tribe

Translation Words - UST

- God of
- Yahweh
- us Israelite people
- to us
- of us Israelites
- of the tribes

ULT

3 They said, "Why, O Yahweh, God of Israel, has this happened to Israel, to be missing today one tribe from Israel?"

UST

3 They kept saying, "Yahweh, God of us Israelite people, one of the tribes of us Israelites does not exist anymore! Why has this happened to us?

Judges 21:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- an altar
- the people
- burnt offerings

Translation Words - UST

- an altar
- the people
- they completely burned

ULT

4 Now it happened the next day that the people rose up early and they built an altar there and they offered up burnt offerings and peace offerings.

UST

4 Early the next morning the people built an altar. Then they completely burned some sacrifices on the altar, and also offered other sacrifices to restore fellowship with God.

Judges 21:5

The people of Israel said, "Which of all the tribes of Israel did not come up in the assembly to Yahweh?"

The people are referring back to the assembly of the Israelites at Mizpah before they attacked the Benjamites.

For they had made an important promise concerning anyone who did not come up to Yahweh at Mizpah. They said, "He would certainly be put to death."

This is background information to explain to the reader the promise that the Israelites had made at Mizpah before they attacked the Benjamites. (See: Background Information)

He would certainly be put to death

Here "He" refers to anyone who did not go to Mizpah. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "We will certainly kill that person" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Israel
- Israel
- at Mizpah
- with the assembly
- the tribes of

Translation Words - UST

- of the tribes of
- Yahweh
- did...meet with them...to help fight the men of the tribe of Benjamin
- Israel
- to meet with us
- at Mizpah
- to meet with us
- to meet with us

ULT

5 The sons of Israel said, "Who is it that did not go up with the assembly out of all the tribes of Israel to Yahweh?" For the great oath was against whoever did not go up to Yahweh at Mizpah, saying, "Surely he must be put to death."

UST

5 Then, because they had solemnly declared that anyone who did not meet with them at Mizpah to help fight the men of the tribe of Benjamin would be killed, they asked among themselves, "Were there any of the tribes of Israel who did not come to Mizpah to meet with us in the presence of Yahweh?"

Judges 21:6

their brother Benjamin

This speaks of the tribe of Benjamin as if it were Israel's brother to show their closeness to the tribe. Alternate translation: "the surviving Benjamites" (See: Metaphor)

one tribe has been cut off from Israel

The destruction of the tribe of Benjamin is spoken of as if it had been cut off from Israel by a knife. This was an exaggeration because 600 men were still left. However, the women of Benjamin had been killed, so the future of the tribe was in question. Alternate translation: "one tribe has been removed" (See: Metaphor and Hyperbole)

ULT

6 The sons of Israel were moved to pity towards Benjamin, his brother. They said, "Today one tribe has been cut down from Israel.

UST

6 The Israelites felt sorry for their fellow Israelites from the tribe of Benjamin. They said, "Today one of our Israelite tribes has been cut off from Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- his brother
- The sons of
- Israel
- from Israel
- Benjamin
- tribe

Translation Words - UST

- their fellow Israelites
- The Israelites
- The Israelites
- from Israel
- from the tribe of Benjamin
- of our Israelite tribes

Judges 21:7

Who will provide wives for those who are left, since we have made a promise to Yahweh that we will not let any of them marry our daughters?

The Israelites wanted to provide wives for the few surviving Benjamites, but their promise at Mizpah prevented them from doing that.

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- have put ourselves under an oath

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- heard...solemnly declare

ULT

7 What can we do for them, for the ones remaining, for a wife, since we have put ourselves under an oath to Yahweh to not give to them from our daughters for a wife?"

UST

7 What can we do to make certain that the men of the tribe of Benjamin who were not killed will have wives?" Yahweh heard us solemnly declare that we would not allow any of our daughters to marry any man from the tribe of Benjamin.

Judges 21:8

Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel
- at Mizpah
- the assembly
- from the tribes of

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel
- Mizpah
- assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting
- the tribes of

ULT

8 They said, "Who is anyone from the tribes of Israel who did not go up to Yahweh at Mizpah?" Now look, not anyone had gone to the camp, to the assembly, from Jabesh Gilead.

UST

8 Then one of them asked, "Which of the tribes of Israel did not send any men here to Mizpah?"

Judges 21:9

people were set out in an orderly manner

"people that were assembled at Mizpah were accounted for"

none of the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead were there

This refers back to the earlier assembly at Mizpah. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "none of the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead had been present at Mizpah" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- When...inspected themselves
- the people

Translation Words - UST

- They realized that when...were counted
- the soldiers

ULT

9 When the people inspected themselves, look, not anyone was there from the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead.

UST

9 They realized that when the soldiers were counted, there was no one who had come from the city of Jabesh Gilead.

Judges 21:10

twelve thousand

"12,000" (See: Numbers)

strike the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead with the edge of the sword, including the women and children

The next verse will add an exception to this general instruction.

strike...with the edge of the sword

"kill...with their swords"

Translation Words - ULT

- and they instructed
- from the sons of
- the sword
- Go

Translation Words - UST

- send
- very good
- sword, swordsmen
- walk, walked

ULT

10 So the assembly sent twelve thousand men there, from the sons of the army, and they instructed them, saying, "Go, and you must strike down the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead with the edge of the sword, even the women and the children.

UST

10 So all the Israelites decided to send twelve thousand very good soldiers to Jabesh Gilead to kill the people there, even the women and the children.

Judges 21:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- you must ban for destruction
- who has known

Translation Words - UST

- You must kill...You must...kill
- married...But do not kill the unmarried women

ULT

11 "This is the thing that you must do: every male, and every woman who has known the bed of a male, you must ban for destruction."

UST

11 They told this to those men: "This is what you must do: You must kill every man in Jabesh Gilead. You must also kill every married woman. But do not kill the unmarried women."

Judges 21:12

Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in Judges 21:8.

four hundred young women

"400 young women" (See: Numbers)

who had not known a man by lying with him

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "who had not had sexual relations with a man" (See: Euphemism)

Translation Words - ULT

- Canaan
- virgins
- young women
- had...known

Translation Words - UST

- Canaan, across the river from the region of Gilead that belonged to the tribe of Benjamin
- virgin
- young women
- virgin

ULT

12 They found among the inhabitants of Jabesh Gilead four hundred young women, virgins, who had not known a man by lying with a male, and they brought them to the camp at Shiloh which was in the land of Canaan.

UST

12 So those soldiers went to Jabesh Gilead and killed all the men, married women, and the children. But they found four hundred virgin young women there. So they brought them to their camp at Shiloh in Canaan, across the river from the region of Gilead that belonged to the tribe of Benjamin.

Judges 21:13

they were offering them peace

The abstract noun "peace" can be translated with a verb phrase. Alternate translation: "they wanted to stop fighting with them" (See: Abstract Nouns)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Benjamin
- peace
- and they proclaimed

Translation Words - UST

- the six hundred men
- the six hundred men
- to make peace
- They said that they would like

ULT

13 The entire assembly reached out and they spoke to the sons of Benjamin who were at the rock of Rimmon, and they proclaimed peace to them.

UST

13 Then all the Israelites who had gathered sent a message to the six hundred men who were at the rock of Rimmon. They said that they would like to make peace with them.

Judges 21:14

Jabesh Gilead

This is the name of a city. See how you translated this in Judges 21:8.

there were not enough women for all of them

There were six hundred Benjamite men, and only four hundred women from Jabesh Gilead.

Translation Words - ULT

- were alive
- Benjamin
- returned

Translation Words - UST

- life, live, living, alive
- the men
- So…came back from the rock of Rimmon

ULT
14 Benjamin returned at that time and they gave to them the women who were alive from the women of Jabesh Gilead. But they had not found sufficient for them.

UST
14 So the men came back from the rock of Rimmon. The Israelites gave to them the young women from Jabesh Gilead. But there were only four hundred women There were not enough women for those six hundred men.

Judges 21:15

made a division between the tribes of Israel

"had caused the tribes of Israel not to be unified"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Israel
- for Benjamin
- Now the people
- were sorry

Translation Words - UST

- Yahweh
- Israel, Israelites
- for the men of the tribe of Benjamin
- The Israelites
- still felt sorry

ULT

15 Now the people were sorry for Benjamin, because Yahweh had made a breach between the tribes of Israel.

UST

15 The Israelites still felt sorry for the men of the tribe of Benjamin, because Yahweh had set the other tribes against them.

Judges 21:16

Benjamites

This refers to the descendants of Benjamin. See how you translated this in Judges 3:15.

the women of Benjamin have been killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "we killed all the Benjamite women" (See: Active or Passive)

Translation Words - ULT

- the elders of

Translation Words - UST

- leaders

ULT

16 Then the elders of the assembly said, "How can we provide wives for the remaining ones, since women from Benjamin have been exterminated?"

UST

16 The Israelite leaders said, "We have killed all the married women of the tribe of Benjamin. Where can we get women to be wives of the men who are still alive?

Judges 21:17

There must be an inheritance...is not destroyed from Israel

The Israelites are exaggerating. They had already given wives to four hundred of the Benjamites, so the tribe would not be completely destroyed. (See: Hyperbole)

Translation Words - ULT

- There must be an inheritance for
- from Israel
- of Benjamin
- is...blotted out
- the escaped remnant
- a tribe

Translation Words - UST

- These men must have wives to give birth to children, in order that...will continue
- of Israel
- of Benjamin
- will all die out, and...will be destroyed
- their families
- all the people of one of the tribes...the tribe

ULT

17 They said, "There must be an inheritance for the escaped remnant of Benjamin, so that a tribe is not blotted out from Israel.

UST

17 These men must have wives to give birth to children, in order that their families of Benjamin will continue. If that does not happen, all the people of one of the tribes of Israel will all die out, and the tribe will be destroyed.

Judges 21:18

a wife to Benjamin

Here Benjamin refers to the male descendants of Benjamin. Alternate translation: "a wife to the men of Benjamin" (See: Synecdoche)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Cursed is
- Israel
- to Benjamin
- are bound to an oath

Translation Words - UST

- we
- Yahweh will curse
- we
- of any man of the tribe of Benjamin
- solemnly declared

ULT

18 But we are not able to give them wives from our daughters, because the sons of Israel are bound to an oath, saying, 'Cursed is anyone who gives a wife to Benjamin.'"

UST

18 But we cannot allow our daughters to marry these men, because we solemnly declared that Yahweh will curse anyone who gives one of his daughters to become a wife of any man of the tribe of Benjamin."

Judges 21:19

which is north of Bethel, east of the road that goes up from Bethel to Shechem, and south of Lebonah

This is background information to explain to the reader where the city of Shiloh is located. (See: Background Information)

Lebonah

This is the name of a city. (See: How to Translate Names)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- of Bethel
- there is a feast for

Translation Words - UST

- to honor Yahweh
- of Bethel
- there is a festival

ULT

19 So they said, "Look, there is a feast for Yahweh from time to time at Shiloh, which is on the north of Bethel, to the direction of the rising of the sun on the road that goes up from Bethel to Shechem, and on the south of Lebonah."

UST

19 Then they had an idea. They said, "Every year there is a festival to honor Yahweh at Shiloh, which is north of Bethel and east of the road that extends from Bethel to Shechem, and it is south of the city of Lebonah."

Judges 21:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- They instructed
- the sons of
- Benjamin
- Go

Translation Words - UST

- So the Israelite leaders told
- the men of
- the tribe of Benjamin
- When it is the time for that festival, go to Shiloh

ULT

20 They instructed the sons of Benjamin, saying, "Go and wait in hiding in the vineyards.

UST

20 So the Israelite leaders told the men of the tribe of Benjamin, "When it is the time for that festival, go to Shiloh and hide in the vineyards.

Judges 21:21

each one of you should grab a wife...go back to the land of Benjamin

It is understood that the Benjamites would take these women back to their own land with them. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "each one of you should seize one of the girls of Shiloh, and then take her back with you to the land of Benjamin to become your wife" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

Translation Words - ULT

- then you come forth
- of Benjamin
- the land
- are coming forth

Translation Words - UST

- When they come out, run
- your homes with those women
- your homes with those women
- to come out

ULT

21 You must watch, and look when the daughters of Shilo are coming forth to dance in the dances, then you come forth out of the vineyards. You will catch for yourselves, each one his wife from the daughters of Shiloh, and then you can go back to the land of Benjamin.

UST

21 Keep watching for the young women to come out of the city to dance. When they come out, run out of the vineyards. Each of you can seize one of the young women of Shiloh. Then you can all return to your homes with those women.

Judges 21:22

Show us favor

The abstract noun "favor" can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: "Act kindly toward us" (See: Abstract Nouns)

because we did not get wives for each man during the war

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "because we did not get wives for each of them during the war with Jabesh Gilead" (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)

You are innocent...not give your daughters to them

This refers to the men of Shiloh. They did not voluntarily give their daughters to the Benjamites, and therefore did not break their promise not to do that.

Translation Words - ULT

- their...brothers
- fathers...their

Translation Words - UST

- brothers
- their fathers

ULT

22 It will happen, when their <u>fathers</u> or <u>their</u> <u>brothers</u> come out to argue with us, that we will say to them, 'Give them freely to us, because we did not take for each man his wife in the battle. Since you did not give them at that time, you would be guilty.'"

UST

22 If <u>their fathers</u> or <u>brothers</u> come to us and complain about what you have done, we will say to them, 'Act kindly toward the men of the tribe of Benjamin. When we fought them, we did not leave any women alive to become their wives, and you did not give those young women to the men from the tribe of Benjamin. They stole them. So you will not be guilty, even though you said that you would not give any of your daughters to marry one of them.'"

Judges 21:23

the number of wives that they needed

This refers to one wife for each of the two hundred Benjamite men who did not receive wives from Jabesh Gilead (Judges 21:14).

Translation Words - ULT

- their inheritance
- The sons of
- Benjamin
- and they returned

Translation Words - UST

- the land that God had given to them
- the men of
- the tribe of Benjamin
- Then they took their wives back

ULT

23 The sons of Benjamin did so. They carried off wives sufficient for their number from the ones who were dancing, who they snatched away. Then they went and they returned to their inheritance. They rebuilt the cities and they lived in them.

UST

23 So that is what the men of the tribe of Benjamin did. They went to Shiloh at the time of the festival. And when the young women were dancing, each man caught one of them and took her away and married her. Then they took their wives back to the land that God had given to them. They rebuilt their cities that had been burned down, and they lived there.

Judges 21:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Thus they went away
- the sons of
- Israel
- to his tribe

Translation Words - UST

- went
- The other Israelites
- The other Israelites
- to their home in the areas where their tribes

ULT

24 Then the sons of Israel disbursed themselves from there at that time, each one to his tribe and to his family. Thus they went away from there each one to his inheritance.

UST

24 The other Israelites went to their home in the areas where their tribes and clans lived, the areas that God had allotted to them.

Judges 21:25

there was no king in Israel

"Israel did not yet have a king"

what was right in his own eyes

The eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "what he judged to be right" or "what he considered to be right" (See: Metaphor)

Translation Words - ULT

- in Israel
- a king

Translation Words - UST

- the Israelite people
- a king

ULT

25 In those days there was not a king in Israel. Each one would do what was right in his own eyes.

UST

25 At that time, the Israelite people did not have a king. Everyone did what was right according to his own opinion.

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 12

Abstract Nouns

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

> This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. **Abstract Nouns** are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships among these ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. It is a way of giving names to actions or qualities so that people who speak these languages can talk about them as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin." But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, they may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. They would say, for example, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas; instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples from the Bible

> ...from ***childhood*** *you have known the sacred writings...* (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone is a child.

> But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

> Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers how slowly something is done.

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

The abstract noun "purposes" refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

> 1. Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

> **...from** childhood

you have known the sacred writings... (2 Timothy 3:15 ULT)

> Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But godliness

with contentment is great gain. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

> But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**.
> But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**.
> But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today salvation

has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

> Today the people in this house **have been saved**...
> Today God **has saved** the people in this house...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider slowness

to be. (2 Peter 3:9 ULT)

> The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the purposes

of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5 ULT)

> He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:12; 7:2; 7:9; 8:4; 9:11; 9:15; 9:26; 12:1; 21:13; 21:22)

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects underlined:

- ACTIVE: ***My father*** built the house in 2010.
- PASSIVE: ***The house*** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the **ACTIVE** form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the **PASSIVE** form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is *not always* mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have underlined the subject.

- **ACTIVE**: ***My father*** built the house in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: ***The house*** was built by my father in 2010.
- **PASSIVE**: ***The house*** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons this is a translation issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples from the Bible

> And their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants ***were killed***, and your servant Uriah the Hittite ***was killed***, too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

> In the morning when the men of the town got up, the altar of Baal **was broken down**... (Judges 6:28 ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

> It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea (Luke 17:2 ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

1. Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
2. Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
3. Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

> **A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

> **The king's servants gave** Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

(2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

> **It would be better for him if a millstone** were put

around his neck and he were thrown into the sea. (Luke 17:2 ULT)

> It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.
> It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

(3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

> **A loaf of bread** was given

him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

> He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

Apostrophe

Definition

An apostrophe is a figure of speech in which a speaker turns his attention away from his listeners and speaks to someone or something that he knows cannot hear him.

> This page answers the question: *What is the figure of speech called apostrophe?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

Description

He does this to tell his listeners his message or feelings about that person or thing in a very strong way.

Reason this is a translation issue

Many languages do not use apostrophe, and readers could be confused by it. They may wonder who the speaker is talking to, or think that the speaker is crazy to talk to things or people who cannot hear.

Examples from the Bible

> Mountains of Gilboa, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

King Saul was killed on Mount Gilboa, and David sang a sad song about it. By telling these mountains that he wanted them to have no dew or rain, he showed how sad he was.

> Jerusalem, Jerusalem, who kills the prophets and stones those sent to you. (Luke 13:34 ULT)

Jesus was expressing his feelings for the people of Jerusalem in front of his disciples and a group of Pharisees. By speaking directly to Jerusalem as though its people could hear him, Jesus showed how deeply he cared about them.

> He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh: **"Altar**, **altar**! This is what Yahweh says, 'See, …on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

The man of God spoke as if the altar could hear him, but he really wanted the king, who was standing there, to hear him.

Translation Strategies

If apostrophe would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. But if this way of speaking would be confusing to your people, let the speaker continue speaking to the people that are listening to him as he tells **them** his message or feelings about the people or thing that cannot hear him. See the example below.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> **He cried against the altar by the word of Yahweh:** "Altar

, altar! This is what Yahweh says, 'See,…on you they will burn human bones.'" (1 Kings 13:2 ULT)

> He said this about the altar: "This is what Yahweh says **about this altar.** 'See,…they will burn people's bones on **it**.'"

Mountains of Gilboa

, let there not be dew or rain on you (2 Samuel 1:21 ULT)

> **As for these mountains of Gilboa**, let there not be dew or rain on **them**

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:3)

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

- **Assumed knowledge** is whatever **a speaker assumes his audience knows** before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.
- When **the speaker does give the audience information**, he can do so in two ways:
    ◦ **Explicit information** is what the speaker states directly.
    ◦ **Implicit information** is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from what he says.

> This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is **explicit information**.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called **assumed knowledge**.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. **Implicit information** is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this **implicit information** by combining what they already know (**assumed knowledge**) with the **explicit information** that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons this is a translation issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different than the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the **assumed knowledge** or the **implicit information** is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples from the Bible

> Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

> Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in *Tyre and Sidon* which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

> it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the ***day of judgment*** than for you. (Matthew
> 11:21, 22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For ***they do not wash their hands
> when they eat***. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

1. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.
2. If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

> **Jesus said to him, "Foxes** have holes

, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

> Jesus said to him, "Foxes ***have holes to live in***, and the birds of the sky ***have nests to live in***, but
> the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon

at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

> ...it will be more tolerable for ***those cities Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked***, at
> the day of judgment than for you.
> or:
> ...it will be more tolerable for those ***wicked cities Tyre and Sidon*** at the day of judgment than
> for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For they do not wash their hands

when they eat. (Matthew 15:2 ULT) - The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

> Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

> **Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head."** (Matthew 8:19, 20 ULT) - The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, he would have to live like Jesus without a house.

> > Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man**, have **no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live**."

> **it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you** (Matthew 11:22 ULT) - The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you**.
> > or:
> > At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called **background information**. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

> This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Order of Events*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]*

Example - The underlined sentences in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because ***their village was going to have a feast the next day***. ***Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!*** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope ***they had brought with them***, and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter's cousin saw the pig and realized that ***it was his own pig***. ***Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin's pig***.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: "their village was going to have a feast the next day;" "He once killed three wild pigs in one day;" "that they had brought with them;" and "Peter had mistakenly killed his cousins' pig."

Often background information uses "be" verbs like "was" and "were", rather than action verbs. Examples of these are "Peter ***was*** the best hunter in the village" and "it ***was*** his own pig."

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are "because," "once," and "had."

A writer may use background information

- To help their listeners be interested in the story
- To help their listeners understand something in the story
- To help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- To tell the setting of a story
- Setting includes:
    ◦ where the story takes place
    ◦ when the story takes place
    ◦ who is present when the story begins
    ◦ what is happening when the story begins

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples from the Bible

> Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was eighty-six years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

> Now Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about thirty years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story starts up again in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

> Now **it happened on a Sabbath** that Jesus **was going through the grain fields** and his disciples **were picking the heads of grain**, rubbing them between their hands, and eating the grain. But some of the Pharisees said… (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the sentence, "But some of the Pharisees said."

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kind of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

1. Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.
2. Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

> Now

Jesus himself, when he began to teach, was about thirty years of age. He was the son (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "now" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

> **With many other exhortations also, he preached good news to the people. John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch** for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The underlined phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

> **Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.**
> Abram was eighty-six years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram

. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

> "***When Abram was eighty-six years old***, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael."

John also rebuked Herod the tetrarch for marrying his brother's wife, Herodias

, and for all the other evil things that Herod had done. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20)

The translation below reorders John's rebuke and Herod's actions.

> "Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother's wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]
Introduction of a New Event

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man's hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man's hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man's forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **"long" cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as "furlong", which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
"long" cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as ".46 meters" or even as "46 centimeters", readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a meter", "45 centimeters", or "50 centimeters".
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was sixty stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as "about ten kilometers" from Jerusalem.
6. When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

> **They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half.** (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***two and a half kubits*** ; its width will be ***one kubit and a half*** ; and its height will be ***one kubit and a half*.**"

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> > "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter*** ; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter*** ; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter*.**"

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

> > "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter***; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter***; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter*.**"

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***two and a half cubits (one meter)***; its width will be ***one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)*** ; and its height will be ***one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)*.**"

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter*** [1]; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter*** [2]; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter***."

The footnotes would look like:

> "They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be ***one meter*** [1]; its width will be ***two thirds of a meter*** [2]; and its height will be ***two thirds of a meter***."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] two and a half cubits
> [2] one cubit and a half

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:16)

Biblical Money

Description:

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals such as silver and gold and would give a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see Biblical Weight. The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament

1. Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
3. Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
4. Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a note.
5. Use the Bible term and explain it in a note.

Translation Strategies

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

> **The one owed five hundred denarii, and the other owed fifty denarii.** (Luke 7:41 ULT)

(1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "The one owed *five hundred denali*, and the other owed *fifty denali*."

(2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

> > "The one owed *five hundred silver coins*, and the other owed *fifty silver coins*."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

> > "The one owed *five hundred days' wages*, and the other owed *fifty days' wages*."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

> > "The one owed *five hundred denarii* [1], and the other owed *fifty denarii*. [2]"

The footnotes would look like:

> > [1] five hundred days's wages
> > [2] fifty day's wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

> > "The one owed *five hundred denarii* [1], and the other owed *fifty denarii*." (Luke 7:41 ULT)
> >
> > [1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Copy or Borrow Words

Translate Unknowns

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:4)

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	lethek	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as "3.7 liters", readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as "three and a half liters" or "four liters".
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

> **For four hectares of vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah.** (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "For four hektares of vineyard will yield only one *bat*, and one *homer* of seed will yield only an *efa*."

(2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> > "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters* and *220 liters* of seed will yield only *twenty-two liters*."

> > "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *twenty-two liters*, and *ten baskets* of seed will yield only *one basket*."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> > "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only six gallons, and *six and a half bushels* of seed will yield only twenty quarts."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only *one bath (six gallons)*, and *one homer (six and a half bushels)* of seed will yield only *an ephah (twenty quarts)*."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

> > "For four hectares of vineyard will yield only twenty-two liters [1], and 220 liters [2] of seed will yield only twenty-two liters [3]."

The footnotes would look like:

> [1] one bath
> [2] one homer
> [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word "measure".

> **whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
2. Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount".
3. Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.
4. Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

> **whenever anyone came to the grainery for** twenty measures

of grain, there were only ten, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out fifty measures of wine, there were only twenty. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

(1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

> whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(2) Use a generic word like "measure" or "quantity" or "amount".

> whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as "basket" for grain or "jar" for wine.

> whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty jars** of wine, there were only **twenty**.

(4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

> whenever anyone came to the grainery for **twenty liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and whenever someone came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty liters** of wine, there were only **twenty liters**.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]*

Biblical Weight

Description

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the
Bible. The term "shekel" means "weight", and many other weights

are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

1. The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
2. Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
3. Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.
4. If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as ".57 grams" readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say "half a gram".
5. Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word "about" to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath's spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as "3300 grams" or "3.3 kilograms", it can be translated as "about three and one half kilograms".
6. When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say "about" in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

1. Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)
2. Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
3. Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
4. Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
5. Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

> **The bronze from the offering weighed** seventy talents and 2,400 shekels

. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See Copy or Borrow Words.)

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talentes and 2,400 sekeles***."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***2,400 kilograms***."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***5,300 pounds*** ."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talents (2,380 kilograms) and 2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)***."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

> > "The bronze from the offering weighed ***seventy talents and 2,400 shekels***. 1 "

The footnote would look like:

> > [1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]*

(**Go back to:** Judges 8:26)

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and that your language may not have a word for. It also includes people and places that you may not have names for.

When that happens you can "borrow" the word from the Bible into your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to "borrow" words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See Translate Unknowns.)

> This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

Examples from the Bible

> He saw a **fig** tree on the roadside (Matthew 21:19 ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

> Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

> The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter "j" the same way that people pronounce the letter "y" when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft "th" sound in the English word "think," and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like "st" as in "stop."

There are several ways to borrow a word.

1. If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
2. You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
3. You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

> צָפְנַה - A man's name in Hebrew letters.

> "Zephaniah" - The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the other language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

> **Zephaniah** - This is a man's name.
>
> > "Zephaniah" - The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the other language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

> **Zephaniah** - If your language does not have the "z", you could use "s". If your writing system does not use "ph" you could use "f". Depending on how you pronounce the "i" you could spell it with "i" or "ai" or "ay".
>
> > "Sefania"
> >
> > "Sefanaia"
> >
> > "Sefanaya"

(**Go back to:**)

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotation and indirect quotation.

A **direct quotation** occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is

> This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations]]

reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks:"".

- John said, "***I*** do not know at what time ***I*** will arrive."

An **indirect quotation** occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead of from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually features changes in pronouns, and it often features changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would", to replace the future tense indicated by "will".

- John said that ***he*** did not know at what time ***he*** would arrive.

Why this is a translation issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one rather than the other, or there is a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or an indirect quotation.

Examples from the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have underlined the quotations.

> He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He instructed him ***to tell no one***,
- Direct quote: but told him, "***Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest…*** "

> Being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God would come, Jesus answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you." (Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees ***when the kingdom of God would come,***
- Direct quote: Jesus answered them and said, "***The kingdom of God is not something that can be observed. Neither will they say, 'Look here!' or, 'Look there!' because the kingdom of God is among you.*** "
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '***Look here!*** ' or, '***Look there!*** '

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

1. If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
2. If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

> **He instructed him to tell no one, but told him, "**Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.

" (Luke 5:14 ULT)

> He instructed him to tell no one, but ***to go on his way, and to show himself to the priest and to offer a sacrifice for his cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them***."

(2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

> **He instructed him,** to tell no one

, but told him, "Go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them." (Luke 5:14 ULT)

> He instructed him, "***Tell no one***. Just go on your way, and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Quotes within Quotes

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:3; 6:13; 9:2; 9:38)

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of "not." Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

> This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning "not." Examples in English are "no," "not," "none," "no one," "nothing," "nowhere," "never," "nor," "neither," and "without." Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean "not" such as the underlined parts of these words: "***un***happy," "***im***possible," and "use***less***." Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as "lack" or "reject," or even "fight" or "evil."

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

> It is ***not*** that we do ***not*** have authority… (2 Thessalonians 3:9 ULT)
>
> And this better confidence did ***not*** happen ***without*** the taking of an oath,… (Hebrews 7:20 ULT.)
>
> Be sure of this—wicked people will ***not*** go ***un***punished (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The following Spanish sentence *No ví a nadie* is literally, "I did not see no one". It has both the word 'no' next to the verb and 'nadie,' which means "no one". The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, "I did not see anyone".
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, "He is not unintelligent" means "He is intelligent".
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" means, "He is somewhat intelligent".
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, "He is not unintelligent" can mean "He is intelligent" or "He is very intelligent".

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know both what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples from the Bible

> …in order ***not*** to be ***unfruitful***. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

This means "so that they will be fruitful".

> All things were made through him and ***without*** him there was ***not*** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

1. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
2. If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely" or "absolutely."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

> **For we do** not

have a high priest who cannot feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15 ULT)

> "For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses."

...in order not

to be unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14 ULT)

> "...so that they may be fruitful."

(2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as "very" or "surely" or "absolutely."

> **Be sure of this—wicked people will** not

go un punished... (Proverbs 11:21 ULT)

> "Be sure of this—wicked people will ***certainly*** be punished..."

All things were made through him and without

him there was not one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

> "All things were made through him. He made ***absolutely*** everything that has been made."

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]*

(**Go back to:** Judges 18:9; 18:10)

Doublet

Description

We are using the word "doublet" to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word "and." Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

> This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

Reason this is a translation issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples from the Bible

> King David was **old** and **advanced in years**. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

The underlined words mean the same thing. Together they mean that he was "very old."

> ...he attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself... (1 Kings 2:32 ULT)

This means that they were "much more righteous" than he was.

> You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

> ...as of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19 ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect--not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

1. Translate only one of the words or phrases.
2. If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."
3. If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

> **You have decided to prepare** false

and deceptive words (Daniel 2:9 ULT)

> "You have decided to prepare **false** things to say."

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as "very" or "great" or "many."

> **King David was** old

and advanced in years. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

> "King David was **very old**."

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language's ways of doing that.

> **...a lamb** without blemish

and without spot... (1 Peter 1:19 ULT) - English can emphasize this with "any" and "at all."

> "...a lamb **without any blemish at all**..."

(**Go back to:**)

Ellipsis

Description

Ellipsis is what happens when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words from a sentence that it normally should have to be a complete sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

> This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]*

> …the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous**. (Psalm 1:5)

There is ellipsis in the second part because "nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous" is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would be:

> > …nor **will** sinners **stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

There are two types of ellipsis.

1. A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.
2. An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage, or from the nature of the situation.

Reason this is a translation issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples from the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

> > He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

> But if we are afflicted, **for your comfort and salvation**; if we are comforted, **for your comfort**,… (2 Corinthians 1:6)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

> But if we are afflicted, **we are afflicted** for your comfort and salvation; if
> we are comforted, **we are comforted** for your comfort,…

Absolute Ellipsis

> …when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He
> said, "Lord, **that I might receive my sight**." (Luke 18:40-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

> "Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight."

> To Titus…**Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior**. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

> To Titus…**May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ
> Jesus our savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

> 1. Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

> **…the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor** sinners in the assembly

of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5)

> …the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinners will not stand in the assembly** of the
> righteous

…when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He said, "Lord, that I might receive my sight

." (Luke 18:40-41)

> …when the blind man was near, Jesus asked him, "What do you want me to do for you?" He
> said, "Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight."

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and Sirion like a young ox

. (Psalm 29:6)

> He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:1; 3:27; 5:18; 5:19; 5:26; 6:34; 7:3; 7:10; 8:8; 15:1)

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

> This page answers the question: *What is a Euphemism?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

Definition

> ...they found Saul and his sons ***fallen*** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons "were dead". It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples from the Bible

> ...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to relieve himself...(1 Samuel 24:3 ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

> Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Use a euphemism from your own culture.
2. State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

> **...where there was a cave. Saul went inside to** relieve himself

. (1 Samuel 24:3 ULT) - Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

> "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave ***to dig a hole*** "
> "...where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave ***to have some time alone*** "

Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since I have not slept with any man

?" (Luke 1:34 ULT)

> Mary said to the angel, "How will this happen, since ***I do not know a man***?" - (This is the euphemism used in the original Greek)

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

> **they found Saul and his sons** fallen

on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8 ULT)

> "they found Saul and his sons ***dead*** on Mount Gilboa."

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:10; 3:24; 8:9; 8:10; 11:39; 14:1; 14:3; 16:1; 21:12)

Exclamations

Description

Exclamations are words or sentences that show strong feeling such as surprise, joy, fear, or anger. In the ULT and UST, they usually have an exclamation mark (!) at the end. The mark shows that it is an exclamation. The situation and the meaning of what the people say helps us understand what feelings they were expressing. In the example below from Matthew 8, the speakers were terribly afraid. In the example from Matthew 9, the speakers were amazed, because something happened that they had never seen before.

> This page answers the question: *What are ways of translating exclamations?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

> Save us, Lord; we are about to die! (Matthew 8:25 ULT)

> When the demon had been driven out, the mute man spoke. The crowds were astonished and said, "This has never been seen before in Israel!" (Matthew 9:33 ULT)

Reason this is a translation issue

Languages have different ways of showing that a sentence communicates strong emotion.

Examples from the Bible

Some exclamations have a word that shows feeling. The sentences below have "Oh" and "Ah". The word "oh" here shows the speaker's amazement.

> ***Oh***, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

The word "Ah" below shows that Gideon was very frightened.

> Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "***Ah***, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

Some exclamations start with a question word such as "how" or "why", even though they are not questions. The sentence below shows that the speaker is amazed at how unsearchable God's judgments are.

> ***How*** unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

Some exclamations in the Bible do not have a main verb. The exclamation below shows that the speaker is disgusted with the person he is speaking to.

> You worthless person! (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

Translation Strategies

1. If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".
2. Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling.
3. Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.
4. Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.
5. If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If an exclamation in your language needs a verb, add one. Often a good verb is "is" or "are".

> **You worthless person!** (Matthew 5:22 ULT)

> "You **are** such a worthless person!"

Oh, the depth of the riches both of the wisdom and the knowledge of God! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

> "Oh, the riches of the wisdom and the knowledge of God **are** so deep!"

(2) Use an exclamation word from your language that shows the strong feeling. The word "wow" below shows that they were astonished. The expression "Oh no" shows that something terrible or frightening has happened.

They were absolutely astonished, saying, "He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak." (Mark 7:36 ULT)

> "They were absolutely astonished, saying, '**Wow**! He has done everything well. He even makes the deaf to hear and the mute to speak.'"

Ah, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

> "**Oh no**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"

(3) Translate the exclamation word with a sentence that shows the feeling.

> Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face! (Judges 6:22 ULT)

> Lord Yahweh, **what will happen to me**? For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"
> **Help**, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!

(4) Use a word that emphasizes the part of the sentence that brings about the strong feeling.

How unsearchable are his judgments, and his ways beyond discovering! (Romans 11:33 ULT)

> "His judgments are **so** unsearchable and his ways are **far** beyond discovering!"

(5) If the strong feeling is not clear in the target language, then tell how the person felt.

**Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. Gideon said, "Ah

, Lord Yahweh! For I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!"** (Judges 6:22 ULT)

> "Gideon understood that this was the angel of Yahweh. **He was terrified** and said, "**Ah**, Lord Yahweh! I have seen the angel of Yahweh face to face!" (Judges 6:22 ULT)

(**Go back to:**)

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

Some languages have more than one form of "we": an **inclusive** form that means "I and you" and an **exclusive** form that means "I and someone else but **not you**". The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us", "our", "ours", and "ourselves". Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

> This page answers the question: *What is exclusive and inclusive "we"?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.

we/us (inclusive)
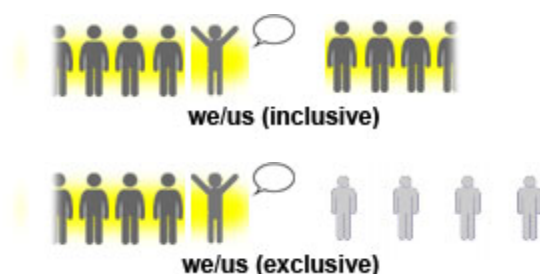
we/us (exclusive)

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we", then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples from the Bible

> They said, "**We** have no more than five loaves of bread and two fish, unless **we** went and bought food for all this crowd of people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the first clause, the disciples are telling Jesus how much food they have among them, so this "we" could be the inclusive form or the exclusive form. In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food, so that "we" would be the exclusive form, since Jesus would not go to buy food.

> **we** have seen, and bear witness, and declare to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested to **us** (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the exclusive forms in this verse.

> ...the shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15 ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us", they were *including* the people they were speaking to - one another.

> Now it happened on one of those days that Jesus and his disciples entered into a boat, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." Then they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us", he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so this would be the inclusive form.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]*

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:1)

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as "I" and the person he is speaking to as "you". Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than "I" or "you".

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*
In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]] *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-pronouns]]*

Description

- **First person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns "I" and "we". (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- **Second person** - This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun "you". (Also: your, yours)
- **Third person** - This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns "he", "she", "it" and "they". (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like "the man" or "the woman" are also third person.

Reason this is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant "I" or "you".

Examples from the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of "I" or "me" to refer to themselves.

> But David said to Saul, "**Your servant** used to keep **his** father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as "your servant" and "his". He was calling himself Saul's servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
> "…Do you have an arm like **God's**? Can you thunder with a voice like **him**? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words "God's" and "him". He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of "you" or "your" to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

> Abraham answered and said, "Look what I have done, taking it upon myself to speak to **my Lord**, even though I am only dust and ashes! (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as "My Lord" rather than as "you". He did this to show his humility before God.

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying "each of you," Jesus used the third person "his" instead of "your".

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean "I" or "you" would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

  1. Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you".
  2. Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun "I" or "you".

> **But David said to Saul, "**Your servant

used to keep his father's sheep." (1 Samuel 17:34)

> But David said to Saul, "***I, your servant***, used to keep ***my*** father's sheep."

(2) Simply use the first person ("I") or second person ("you") instead of the third person.

> **Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like** God's

? Can you thunder with a voice like him? (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

> Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, "… Do you have an arm like ***mine***? Can you thunder with a voice like ***me***?"

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if each of you

does not forgive his brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

> So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if ***each of you*** does not forgive ***your*** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Forms of You

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for "you" based on how many people the word "you" refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

> This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular]]*
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual]]*

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of "you" even though he is speaking to a crowd.

   • Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of "you" based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of "you" when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

   • Forms of "You" - Formal or Informal

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:14; 7:7; 12:2; 12:3; 14:13)

Go and Come

Description

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words

> This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

"take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason this is a translation issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples from the Bible

> Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark" (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

> But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

> When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it… (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land…"

> Joseph and Mary **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 1:22 ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Joseph and Mary **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

> Behold, there came a man named Jairus, and he was one of the leaders of the synagogue. Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet and implored him to **come** to his house, (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

> Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **go** out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that Elizabeth did not **come** out in public.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

> 1. Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

2. Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the word "go," "come," "take," or "bring" that would be natural in your language.

> **But you will be free from my oath if you** come

to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

> But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

> Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **come** out in public for five months.

(2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

> **When you have** come

to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it… (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

> "When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it…"

Yahweh said to Noah, "Come

, you and all your household, into the ark… (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

> "Yahweh said to Noah, "**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark…"

Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not go

out in public for five months. (Luke 1:24 UST)

> Some time after this, his wife Elizabeth became pregnant, but she did not **appear** in public for five months.

(**Go back to:**)

Hendiadys

Description

When a speaker expresses a single idea by using two words that are connected with "and," it is called "hendiadys." In hendiadys, the two words work together. Usually one of the words is the primary idea and the other word further describes the primary one.

> This page answers the question: *What is hendiadys and how can I translate phrases that have it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

> ...his own **kingdom and glory.** (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

Though "kingdom" and "glory" are both nouns, "glory" actually tells what kind of kingdom it is: it is a **kingdom of glory** or **a glorious kingdom**.

Two phrases connected by "and" can also be a hendiadys when they refer to a single person, thing, or event.

> while we look forward to receiving **the blessed hope and appearing of the glory** of **our great God and Savior Jesus Christ**. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

Titus 2:13 contains two hendiadys. "The blessed hope" and "appearing of the glory" refer to the same thing and serve to strengthen the idea that the return of Jesus Christ is greatly anticipated and wonderful. Also, "our great God" and "Savior Jesus Christ" refer to one person, not two.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Often hendiadys contains an abstract noun. Some languages may not have a noun with the same meaning.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that the second word is further describing the first one.
- Many languages do not use hendiadys, so people may not understand that only one person or thing is meant, not two.

Examples from the Bible

> ...for I will give you **words and wisdom...** (Luke 21:15 ULT)

"Words" and "wisdom" are nouns, but in this figure of speech "wisdom" describes "words."

> ...if you are willing and obedient...(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

"Willing" and "obedient" are adjectives, but "willing" describes "obedient."

Translation Strategies

If the hendiadys would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.
2. Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.
3. Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.
4. Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.
5. If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Substitute the describing noun with an adjective that means the same thing.

> **for I will give you** words and wisdom

(Luke 21:15 ULT)

> for I will give you **wise words**

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

> that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own glorious kingdom**.

(2) Substitute the describing noun with a phrase that means the same thing.

> **for I will give you** words and wisdom

. (Luke 21:15 ULT)

> for I will give you **words of wisdom**.

that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to his own kingdom and glory

. (1 Thessalonians 2:12 ULT)

> that you should walk in a manner that is worthy of God, who calls you to **his own kingdom of glory**.

(3) Substitute the describing adjective with an adverb that means the same thing.

> **if you are** willing

and obedient (Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

> if you are **willingly obedient**

(4) Substitute other parts of speech that mean the same thing and show that one word or phrase describes the other.

> **if you are** willing and obedient

(Isaiah 1:19 ULT)

The adjective "obedient" can be substituted with the verb "obey."

> > if you **obey willingly**

(4) and (5) If it is unclear that only one thing is meant, change the phrase so that this is clear.

> **while we look forward to receiving** the blessed hope and appearing of the glory

of our great God and Savior Jesus Christ. (Titus 2:13 ULT)

The noun "glory" can be changed to the adjective "glorious" to make it clear that Jesus' appearing is what we hope for. Also, "Jesus Christ" can be moved to the front of the phrase and "great God and Savior" put into a relative clause that describes the one person, Jesus Christ.

> while we look forward to receiving ***what we are longing for, the blessed and glorious appearing*** of ***Jesus Christ, who is our great God and Savior***.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Doublet

(**Go back to:** Judges 20:6)

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible has names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

> This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to. But sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

> It was this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name "Melchizedek" primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title "king of Salem" tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

> His name "Melchizedek" means "king of righteousness," and also "king of Salem," that is, "king of peace." (Hebrews 7:2 ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek's name and title, because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see Borrow Words.
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples from the Bible

> You went over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the **Amorites** (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that "Jordan" is the name of a river, "Jericho" is the name of a city, and "Amorites" is the name of a group of people.

> she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Beerlahairoi**; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that "Beerlahairoi" means "Well of the Living One who sees me".

> She named him **Moses** and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words "pull out".

> ***Saul*** was in agreement with his death (Acts 8:1 ULT)

> It came about in Iconium that ***Paul*** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

1. If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
2. If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
3. Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
4. If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
5. Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

> **You went over the** Jordan

and came to Jericho. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with the Amorites (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

> You went over the ***Jordan River*** and came to the ***city of Jericho***. The leaders of Jericho fought against you, along with ***the tribe of the Amorites***

Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because Herod

wants to kill you." (Luke 13:31 ULT)

> Shortly after, some Pharisees came and said to him, "Go and leave here because ***King Herod*** wants to kill you.

(2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

> **She named him** Moses

and said, "Because I drew him from the water." (Exodus 2:11 ULT)

> She named him ***Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out'),*** and said, "Because I drew him from the water."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

> **...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called** Beerlahairoi

; (Genesis 16:13-14 ULT)

> ...she said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**;

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

> **...a young man named** Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

> ...a young man named **Paul** [1]

The footnote would look like:

>> [1] Most versions say Saul here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called Paul.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> **But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

> **a young man named** Saul

(Acts 7:58 ULT)

> a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

>> [1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

> **But** Saul

, who is also called Paul, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

> But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

> **It came about in Iconium that** Paul

and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

> It came about in Iconium that **Paul** [1] and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Copy or Borrow Words

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

- It rains here every night.

1. The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.
2. The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.
3. The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

Hyperbole: This is a figure of speech that uses **exaggeration**. A speaker deliberately describes something by an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

> They will not leave **one stone upon another** (Luke 19:44 ULT)

- This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

> Moses was educated in **all the learning of the Egyptians** (Acts 7:22 ULT)

- This hyperbole means that he had learned much of what the Egyptians knew and taught, and thus was as educated as any Egyptian.

Generalization: This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

> The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame,** but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

- These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

> And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)

- This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarliy mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason this is a translation issue

1. Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.
2. If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples from the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

> If your hand causes you to stumble, ***cut it off***. It is better for you to enter into life maimed…
> (Mark 9:43 ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should ***do whatever extreme things*** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops ***as numerous as the sand on the seashore***. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

The underlined phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expression the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were ***many, many*** soldiers in the Philistine army.

> But as his anointing teaches you about ***all things*** and is true and is not a lie, and even as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27 ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about ***all things that we need to know***. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

> They found him, and they said to him, "***Everyone*** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that ***many people*** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

> ***Can anything good come out of Nazareth?*** (John 1:46 ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

> One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "***Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies***." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

> ***A lazy hand causes poverty, but the hand of the diligent makes him rich***. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

> …they saw Jesus ***walking on the sea*** and coming near the boat… (John 6:19 ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

Do not assume that the word "all" is always a generalization that means "most."

> Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
> and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

1. Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
2. For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases."
3. For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
4. For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

> **The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and troops** as numerous as the sand on the seashore

. (1 Samuel 13:5 ULT)

> The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: thirty thousand chariots, six thousand men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

(2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like "in general" or "in most cases".

> **The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame…** (Proverbs 13:18 ULT)
>
> > **In general,** the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

> **And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.** (Matthew 6:7)
>
> > "And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words."

(3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like "many" or "almost" to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

> **The** whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

> **Almost all** the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him."
> or:
> **Many** of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him."

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like "all," always," "none," or "never," consider deleting that word.

> **The** whole

country of Judea and all the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5 ULT)

> The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(**Go back to:**)

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: "If the sun stopped shining…;" "What if the sun stopped shining…;" "Suppose the sun stopped shining…;" and "If only the sun had not stopped shining." We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. These occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen, and that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions are the phrase that start with "if.")

- If he had lived to be one hundred years old, he would have seen his grandson's grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be one hundred years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be one hundred years old, he will see his grandson's grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason this Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language's ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples from the Bible

Hypothetical situations in the past

> "Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes." (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21 Jesus said that *if* the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

> Martha then said to Jesus, "Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died**." (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus had come sooner, so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner, and her brother did die.

Hypothetical situations in the present

> Also, no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **If he did that, the new wine would burst the skins, and the wine would be spilled, and the wineskins would be destroyed**. (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

> Jesus said to them, "What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out**? (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical situation in the future

> **Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved**; but for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show about how bad those days will be––so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble, so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing emotion about a hypothetical situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

> The Israelites said to them, "**If only we had died by Yahweh's hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger." (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

> I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

  • that something could have happened, but did not.

- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:19; 9:20)

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

> This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, "You are telling me a lie.")
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, "Do not take a matter to its extreme.")
- This house is under water. (This means, "The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.")
- We are painting the town red. (This means, "We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.")

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

> he resolutely **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

The words "set his face" is an idiom that means "decided".

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

> I am not worthy that you should **enter under my roof**. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

The phrase "enter under my roof" is an idiom that means "enter my house".

> Let these words **go deeply into your ears**. (Luke 9:44 ULT)

This idiom means "Listen carefully and remember what I say".

Purpose: An idiom is created in a culture probably somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples from the Bible

> Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, "We and you belong to the same race, the same family."

> the children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8 ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

> the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3 ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
2. Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

> **Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your** flesh and bone

." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

> ...Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

he resolutely set his face

to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51 ULT)

> He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

I am not worthy that you should enter under my roof

. (Luke 7:6 ULT)

> I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

(2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

> **Let these words** go deeply into your ears

(Luke 9:44 ULT)

> **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

"My eyes grow dim

from grief (Psalm 6:7 ULT)

> I am crying my **eyes out**

Introduction of a New Event

Description

When people tell a story, they tell about an event or a series of events. Often they put certain information at the beginning of the story, such as who the story is about, when it happened, and where it happened. This information that the writer gives before the events of the story begin is called the setting of the story. Some new events in a story also have a setting because they might involve new people, new times, and new places. In some languages people also tell if they saw the event or heard about it from someone else.

> This page answers the question: *How do we introduce a new event in a story?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]
> *Order of Events*

When your people tell about events, what information do they give at the beginning? Is there a certain order that they put it in? In your translation, you will need to follow the way your language introduces new information at the beginning of a story or a new event rather than the way the source language did that. In this way your translation will sound natural and communicate clearly in your language.

Examples from the Bible

> ***In the days of Herod***, king of Judea, ***there was a certain priest named Zechariah***, from the division of Abijah. ***His wife was*** from the daughters of Aaron, and her name was Elizabeth. (Luke 1:5 ULT)

The verses above introduce a story about Zechariah. The first underlined phrase tells when it happened, and the next two underlined phrases introduce the main people. The next two verses go on to explain that Zechariah and Elizabeth were old and did not have any children. All of this is the setting. Then the phrase "One day" in Luke 1:8 helps to introduce the first event in this story:

> ***One day*** while Zechariah was performing his duties as a priest before God in the order of his division, the priests followed their custom and chose him by lot to enter the temple of the Lord and burn incense. (Luke 1:8-9 ULT)

> ***The birth of Jesus Christ happened in the following way.*** His mother Mary was engaged to marry Joseph, but before they came together, she was found to be pregnant by the Holy Spirit. (Matthew 1:18 ULT)

The underlined sentence above makes it explicit that a story about Jesus is being introduced. The story will tell about how the birth of Jesus happened.

> ***After Jesus was born in Bethlehem of Judea in the days of Herod the king***, learned men from the east arrived in Jerusalem saying,... (Matthew 2:1 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that the events concerning the learned men happened ***after*** Jesus was born.

> ***In those days*** John the Baptist came preaching in the wilderness of Judea saying,... (Matthew 3:1-22 ULT)

The underlined phrase above shows that John the Baptist came preaching around the time of the previous events. It is probably very general and refers to when Jesus lived in Nazareth.

> ***Then*** Jesus came from Galilee to the Jordan River to be baptized by John. (Matthew 3:13 ULT)

The word "then" shows that Jesus came to the Jordan River some time after the events in the previous verses.

> Now there was a ***Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council***. This man came to Jesus at night time (John 3:1-2 ULT)

The author first introduced the new person and then told about what he did and when he did it. In some languages it might be more natural to tell about the time first.

> [6] Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. [7] Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood. (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

Verse 6 is a summary of the events that happen in the rest of chapter 7. Chapter 6 already told about how God told Noah that there would be a flood, and how Noah prepared for it. Chapter 7 verse 6 introduces the part of the story that tells about Noah and his family and the animals going into the ship, the rain starting, and the rain flooding the earth. Some languages might need to make it clear that this verse simply introduces the event, or move this verse after verse 7. Verse 6 is not one of the events of the story. The people went into the ship before the flood came.

Translation Strategies

If the information given at the beginning of a new event is clear and natural to your readers, consider translating it as it is in the ULT or UST. If not, consider one of these strategies.

1. Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.
2. If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase to fill in that information, such as: "another time" or "someone."
3. If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.
4. If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event would actually happen later in the story.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Put the information that introduces the event in the order that your people put it.

> **Now there was a** Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus, a member of the Jewish Council

. This man came to Jesus at night time and said to him… (John 3:1,2)

> There was a ***man whose name was Nicodemus. He was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council***. One night he came to Jesus and said…

> One night ***a man named Nicodemus, who was a Pharisee and a member of the Jewish Council***, came to Jesus and said…

As he passed by, he saw Levi the son of Alpheus, who was sitting

at the tax collecting place, and he said to him… (Mark 2:14 ULT)

> As he passed by, ***Levi the son of Alpheus was sitting*** at the tax collecting place. Jesus saw him and and said to him…

> As he passed by, ***there was a man sitting*** at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him…

> As he passed by, ***there was a tax collector*** sitting at the tax collecting place. His name was Levi, and he was the son of Alpheus. Jesus saw him and said to him…

(2) If readers would expect certain information but it is not in the Bible, consider using an indefinite word or phrase such as: another time, someone.

> **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT) - If people expect to be told something about when the new event happened, the phrase "after that" can help them see that it happened after the events already mentioned.

> *After that*, when Noah was six hundred years old, the flood came upon the earth.

> Again he began

to teach beside the lake. (Mark 4:1 ULT) - In chapter 3 Jesus was teaching at someone's house. Readers may need to be told that this new event happened at another time, or that Jesus actually went to the lake.

> *Another time* Jesus began to teach people again beside the lake.

> Jesus went to the lake and *began to teach people again* there.

(3) If the introduction is a summary of the whole event, use your language's way of showing that it is a summary.

> **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth.** (Genesis 7:6 ULT)

>> *Now this is what happened when* Noah was six hundred years old and the flood came upon the earth.

>> *This part tells about what happened when* the flood came upon the earth. It happened when Noah was six hundred years old.

(4) If it would be strange in the target language to give a summary of the event at the beginning, show that the event will actually happen later in the story.

> **Noah was six hundred years old when the flood came upon the earth. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because of the waters of the flood.** (Genesis 7:6-7 ULT)

>> *Now this is what happened when* Noah was six hundred years old. Noah, his sons, his wife, and his sons' wives went into the ark together because *God had said that the waters of the flood would come*.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Background Information
Introduction of New and Old Participants

Introduction of New and Old Participants

Description

The first time that people or things are mentioned in a story, they are **new participants**. After that, whenever they are mentioned, they are **old participants**.

> Now **there was a Pharisee whose name was Nicodemus**…**This man** came to Jesus at night time… Jesus replied to **him** (John 3:1)

The first underlined phrase introduces Nicodemus as a new participant. He is then referred to as "This man" and "him" when he is an old participant.

Reason this is a translation issue

In order to make your translation clear and natural, it is necessary to refer to the participants in such a way that people will know if they are new participants or participants that they have already read about. Different languages have different ways of doing this. You must follow the way that your language does this, not the way that the source language does this.

Examples from the Bible

New Participants

Often the most important new participant is introduced with a phrase that says that he existed, such as "There was a man" in the example below. The phrase "There was" tells us that this man existed. The word "a" in "a man" tells us that the author is speaking about him for the first time. The rest of the sentence tells where this man was from, who is family was, and what his name was.

> **There was a man** from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

A new participant who is not the most important one is often introduced in relation to the more important person who was already introduced. In the example below, Manoah's wife is simply referred to as "his wife". This phrase shows her relationship to him.

> There was a man from Zorah, of the family of the Danites, whose name was Manoah. **His wife** was not able to become pregnant and so she had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Sometimes a new participant is introduced simply by name because the author assumes that the readers know who the person is. In the first verse of 1 Kings, the author assumes that his readers know who King David is, so there is no need to explain who he is.

> When King David was very old, they covered him with blankets, but he could not keep warm. (1 Kings 1:1 ULT)

Old Participants

A person who has already been brought into the story can be referred to with a pronoun after that. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with the pronoun "his", and his wife is referred to with the pronoun "she".

> **His** wife was not able to become pregnant and so **she** had not given birth. (Judges 13:2 ULT)

Old participants can also be referred to in other ways, depending on what is happening in the story. In the example below, the story is about bearing a son, and Manoah's wife is referred to with the noun phrase "the woman".

> The angel of Yahweh appeared to **the woman** and said to her, (Judges 13:3 ULT)

If the old participant has not been mentioned for a while, or if there could be confusion between participants, the author may use the participant's name again. In the example below, Manoah is referred to with his name, which the author has not used since verse 2.

> Then **Manoah** prayed to Yahweh…(Judges 13:8 ULT)

Some languages place an affix on the verb that tells something about the subject. In some of those languages people do not always use noun phrases or pronouns for old participants when they are the subject of the sentence. The marker on the verb gives enough information for the listener to understand who the subject is. (See Verbs.)

Translation Strategies

1. If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.
2. If it is not clear to whom a pronoun refers, use a noun phrase or name.
3. If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the participant is new, use one of your language's ways of introducing new participants.

> **Joseph, a Levite, a man from Cyprus, was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).** (Acts 4:36-37 ULT) - Starting the sentence with Joseph's name when he has not been introduced yet might be confusing in some languages.
>
>> There was a man from Cyprus who was a Levite. His name was Joseph, and he was given the name Barnabas by the apostles (that is, being interpreted, Son of encouragement).
>> There was a Levite from Cyprus whose name was Joseph. The apostles gave him the name Barnabas, which means Son of encouragement.

(2) If it is not clear who a pronoun refers to, use a noun phrase or name.

> **It happened when** he

finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples." (Luke 11:1 ULT) - Since this is the first verse in a chapter, readers might wonder who "he" refers to.

> It happened when **Jesus** finished praying in a certain place, that one of his disciples said, "Lord, teach us to pray just as John taught his disciples.

(3) If an old participant is referred to by name or a noun phrase, and people wonder if this is another new participant, try using a pronoun instead. If a pronoun is not needed because people would understand it clearly from the context, then leave out the pronoun.

> Joseph's

master took Joseph and put him in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and Joseph stayed there. (Genesis 39:20 ULT) - Since Joseph is the main person in the story, some languages might find it unnatural or confusing to use his name so much. They might prefer a pronoun.

> Joseph's master took **him** and put **him** in prison, in the place where all the king's prisoners were put, and **he** stayed there in the prison.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-pronouns]]

(**Go back to:** Judges 17:1)

Irony

Description

Irony is a figure of speech in which the sense that the speaker intends to communicate is actually the opposite of the literal meaning of the words. Sometimes a person does this by using someone else's words, but in a way that communicates that he does not agree with them. People do this to emphasize how different something is from what it should be, or how someone else's belief about something is wrong or foolish. It is often humorous.

> Jesus answered them, "People who are in good health do not need a physician, only people who are sick need one. I did not come to call righteous people to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance." (Luke 5:31-32 ULT)

When Jesus spoke of "righteous people," he was not referring to people who were truly righteous, but to people who wrongly believed that they were righteous. By using irony, Jesus communicated that they were wrong to think that they were better than others and did not need to repent.

Reason this is a translation issue

- If someone does not realize that a speaker is using irony, he will think that the speaker actually believes what he is saying. He will understand the passage to mean the opposite of what it was intended to mean.

Examples from the Bible

> **How well you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

Here Jesus praises the Pharisees for doing something that is obviously wrong. Through irony, he communicates the opposite of praise: He communicates that the Pharisees, who take great pride in keeping the commandments, are so far from God that they do not even recognize that their traditions are breaking God's commandments. The use of irony makes the Pharisee's sin more obvious and startling.

> "Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. **"Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled**." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

People worshiped idols as if their idols had knowledge or power, and Yahweh was angry at them for doing that. So he used irony and challenged their idols to tell what would happen in the future. He knew that the idols could not do this, but by speaking as if they could, he mocked the idols, making their inability more obvious, and rebuked the people for worshiping them.

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
> Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
> **Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;** "**the number of your days is so large!** " (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

Job thought that he was wise. Yahweh used irony to show Job that he was not so wise. The two underlined phrases above are irony. They emphasize the opposite of what they say, because they are so obviously false. They emphasize that Job could not possibly answer God's questions about the creation of light because Job was not born until many, many years later.

> Already you have all you could want! Already you have become rich! You began to reign—and that quite apart from us! (1 Corinthians 4:8 ULT)

The Corinthians considered themselves to be very wise, self-sufficient, and not in need of any instruction from the Apostle Paul. Paul used irony, speaking as if he agreed with them, to show how proudly they were acting and how far from being wise they really were.

Translation Strategies

If the irony would be understood correctly in your language, translate it as it is stated. If not, here are some other strategies.

1. Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.
2. Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony. The actual meaning of the irony is **not** found in the literal words of the speaker, but instead the true meaning is found in the opposite of the literal meaning of the speaker's words.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate it in a way that shows that the speaker is saying what someone else believes.

> How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

> **You think that you are doing well when you reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!
> **You act like it is good to reject God's commandment** so you may keep your tradition!

I did not come to call righteous people

to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance. (Luke 5:32 ULT)

> I did not come to call **people who think that they are righteous** to repentance, but to call sinners to repentance.

(2) Translate the actual, intended meaning of the statement of irony.

> How well you reject the commandment of God

so you may keep your tradition! (Mark 7:9 ULT)

> **You are doing a terrible thing when you reject the commandment of God** so you may keep your tradition!

"Present your case," says Yahweh; "present your best arguments for your idols," says the King of Jacob. "Let them bring us their own arguments; have them come forward and declare to us what will happen

, so we may know these things well. Have them tell us of earlier predictive declarations, so we can reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled." (Isaiah 41:21-22 ULT)

> 'Present your case,' says Yahweh; 'present your best arguments for your idols,' says the King of Jacob. Your idols **cannot bring us their own arguments or come forward to declare to us what will happen** so we may know these things well. We cannot hear them because **they cannot speak** to tell us their earlier predictive declarations, so we cannot reflect on them and know how they were fulfilled.

Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work?
Can you find the way back to their houses for them?
Undoubtedly you know, for you were born then;

the number of your days is so large!" (Job 38:20, 21 ULT)

> Can you lead light and darkness to their places of work? Can you find the way back to their houses for them? ***You act like you know how light and darkness were created, as if you were there; as if you are as old as creation, but you are not***!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Litotes

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:9)

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are "no", "not", "none", and "never". The opposite of "good" is "bad". Someone could say that something is "not bad" to mean that it is extremely good.

> This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples from the Bible

> For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was ***not useless***, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was ***very*** useful.

> Now when it became day, there was ***no small excitement*** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a ***lot*** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

> And you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
> are ***not the least*** among the leaders of Judah,
> for from you will come a ruler
> who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a ***very important city***.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

1. If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the ***positive*** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the ***positive*** meaning in a strong way.

> **For you yourselves know, brothers, our coming to you was** not useless

. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

> "For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you ***did much good***."

Now when it became day, there was no small excitement

among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

> "Now when it became day, there was ***great excitement*** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter."
> "Now when it became day, the soldiers were ***very concerned*** because of what had happened to Peter."

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:19; 14:6; 19:19; 20:8)

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

> This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

> "I am the Alpha and the Omega," says the Lord God, "the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty." (Revelation 1:8, ULT)

> I am the **Alpha and the Omega**, **the First and the Last**, **the Beginning and the End**. (Revelation 22:13, ULT)

Alpha and Omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth...**, (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples from the Bible

> **From the rising of the sun to its setting**, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This underlined phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means "everywhere".

> He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The underlined phrase is merism because it speaks of, old people and young people and everyone in between. It means "everyone".

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

1. Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
2. Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

> **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

... (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

> I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**...

From the rising of the sun to its setting

, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

> ***In all places***, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

> **I praise you, Father, Lord of** heaven and earth

. (Matthew 11:25 ULT)

> I praise you, Father, Lord of ***everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth***.

He will bless those who honor him, both young and old

. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

> He will bless ***all those*** who honor him, regardless of whether they are ***young or old***.

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:10; 13:7; 20:1)

Metaphor

Description

A **metaphor** is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say:

> • The girl I love is a red rose.

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer's task is to understand in what way they are alike.

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about "the girl I love". This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and "a red rose." The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both *beautiful*. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a **metaphor** is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker's **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison** (**Idea**) between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a "passive" metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being "active." Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these "dead metaphors." Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms "table *leg*", "family *tree*", "book *leaf*" (meaning a page in

a book), or the word "crane" (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word "hand" to represent "power," using the word "face" to represent "presence," and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were "clothing."

Patterned Pairs of Concepts acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction UP (the Image) often represents the concepts of MORE or BETTER (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as "The price of gasoline is going *up*," "A *highly* intelligent man," and also the opposite kind of idea: "The temperature is going *down*," and "I am feeling very *low*."

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world's languages, because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

  • "Turn the heat *up*." MORE is spoken of as UP.
  • "Let us *go ahead* with our debate." DOING WHAT WAS PLANNED is spoken of as WALKING or ADVANCING.
  • "You *defend* your theory well." ARGUMENT is spoken of as WAR.
  • "A *flow* of words" WORDS are spoken of as LIQUIDS.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. They make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

> For you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
> (Malachi 4:2 ULT)

Here God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun's rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

> Jesus said, "Go and tell that fox...," (Luke 13:32 ULT)

Here, "that fox" refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors are the metaphors that need special care to translate correctly. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

> Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who
> believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples from the Bible

> Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1 ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you", the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshipped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay**. **You are our potter**; and we all are the
> work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are "we" and "you," and the Image(s) are "clay" and "potter." The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter's clay and "us" is that **neither the clay nor God's people have a right to complain about what they are becoming**.

> Jesus said to them, "Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees**." The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, "It is because we took no bread." (Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said "yeast," they thought he was talking about bread, but "yeast" was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

1. If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.
2. If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.
3. If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as." See Simile.
4. If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.
5. If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.
6. If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)
7. If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.
8. If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

> **Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him,** fell at his feet

. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

> Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, ***immediately bowed down in front of him***.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally ***if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible***. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

> **It was because of your** hard hearts

that he wrote you this law, (Mark 10:5 ULT)

> It was because of your ***hard hearts*** that he wrote you this law,

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

> **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the** clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

> And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are ***like*** clay. You are ***like*** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see Translate Unknowns for ideas on how to translate that image.

> **Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you** to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to ***kick against a pointed stick***.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

> **And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the** clay

. You are our potter; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

> "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the ***wood***. You are our ***carver***; and we all are the work of your hand."
> "And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the ***string***. You are the ***weaver***; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

> **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> Yahweh lives; ***He is my rock***. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

> **Yahweh lives; may** my rock

be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

> Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock ***under which I can hide from my enemies***. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to kick a goad

. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

> Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You ***fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick***.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

> **I will make you become** fishers of men

. (Mark 1:17 ULT)

> I will make you become ***people who gather men***.
> Now you gather fish. I will make you ***gather people***.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery - Common Patterns.

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A **metonym** is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

> This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

> and ***the blood*** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from all sin. (1 John 1:7 ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

> He took ***the cup*** in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason this is a translation issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not used to metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples from the Bible

> The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

> Immediately his ***mouth*** was opened (Luke 1:64 ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

> ...who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** that is coming? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people, and as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

1. Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
2. Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

> He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***This cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you. (Luke 22:20 ULT)

>> "He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, "***The wine in this cup*** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you."

(2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

> The Lord God will give him ***the throne*** of his father, David. (Luke 1:32 ULT)

>> "The Lord God will give him ***the kingly authority*** of his father, David."
>> or:
>> "The Lord God will ***make him king*** like his ancestor, King David."

> who warned you to flee from ***the wrath*** to come? (Luke 3:7 ULT)

>> "who warned you to flee from God's coming ***punishment***?"

To learn about some common metonymies, see Biblical Imagery - Common Metonymies.

Nominal Adjectives

Description

In some languages an adjective can be used to refer to a class of things that the adjective describes. When it does, it acts like a noun. For example, the word "rich" is an adjective. Here are two sentences that show that "rich" is an adjective.

> This page answers the question: *How do I translate adjectives that act like nouns?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

> …**The rich man** had huge numbers of flocks and herds…(2 Samuel 12:2 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes before the word "man" and describes "man".

> **He will not be rich**; his wealth will not last… (Job 15:29 ULT)

The adjective "rich" comes after the verb "be" and describes "He".

Here is a sentence that shows that "rich" can also function as a noun.

> …**the rich** must not give more than the half shekel, and **the poor** must not give less. (Exodus 30:15 ULT)

In Exodus 30:15, the word "rich" acts as a noun in the phrase "the rich", and it refers to rich people. The word "poor" also acts as a noun and refers to poor people.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Many times in the Bible adjectives are used as nouns to describe a group of people.
- Some languages do not use adjectives in this way.
- Readers of these languages may think that the text is talking about one particular person when it is really talking about the group of people whom the adjective describes.

Examples from the Bible

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of **the righteous**. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

"The righteous" here are people who are righteous, not one particular righteous person.

> Blessed are **the meek** (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

"The meek" here are all people who are meek, not one particular meek person.

Translation Strategies

If your language uses adjectives as nouns to refer to a class of people, consider using the adjectives in this way. If it would sound strange, or if the meaning would be unclear or wrong, here is another option:

1. Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the adjective with a plural form of the noun that the adjective describes.

> **The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of** the righteous

. (Psalms 125:3 ULT)

> The scepter of wickedness must not rule in the land of ***righteous people***.

Blessed are the meek

... (Matthew 5:5 ULT)

> Blessed are ***people who are meek***...

(**Go back to:** Judges 14:14; 16:30)

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words ("five") or as numerals ("5"). Some numbers are very large, such as "two hundred" (200), "twenty-two thousand" (22,000), or "one hundred million" (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

> This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

> Abram was ***eighty-six*** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

> That day about ***three thousand*** men out of the people died. (Exodus 32:28 ULT)

Here the number three thousand is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word "about" shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples from the Bible

> When Jared had lived ***162*** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived ***eight hundred*** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived ***962*** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, eight hundred, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

> Our sister, may you be the mother of ***thousands of ten thousands*** (Genesis 24:60 ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

1. Write numbers using numerals.
2. Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.
3. Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.
4. Combine words for large numbers.
5. Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

> Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14 ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the gateway language words for those numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

> I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents)**, **ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for numbers that have only one or two words (nine, sixteen, three hundred). They use numerals for numbers that have more than two words (the numerals "130" instead of "one hundred thirty").

> When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **eight hundred** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

Ordinal Numbers
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

Order of Events

Description

In the Bible, events are not always told in the order in which they occurred. Sometimes the author wanted to discuss something that happened at an earlier time than the event that he just talked about. This can be confusing to the reader.

Reason this is a translation issue: Readers might think that the events happened in the order that they are told. It is important to help them understand the correct order of events.

> This page answers the question: *Why are the events not listed in the order they happened, and how do I translate them?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Examples from the Bible

> But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized. (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

This could sound like John baptized Jesus after John was locked up in prison, but John baptized Jesus before John was locked up in prison.

> Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets... But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)

This could sound like Joshua gave the order not to shout after the army had already started their march, but he had given that order before they started marching.

> Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals? (Revelation 5:2 ULT)

This sounds like a person must first open the scroll and then break its seals, but the seals that lock the scroll must be broken before the scroll can be unrolled.

Translation Strategies

1. If your language uses phrases or time words to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using one of them.
2. If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that. (See the section on "Aspect" of Verbs.)
3. If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occurred, consider reordering the events so they they are in that order. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6). (See Verse Bridges.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses phrases, time words or tenses to show that an event happened before the one just mentioned, consider using one of them.

> **20 But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. 21 Now it came about, while all the people were being baptized by John, that Jesus also was baptized.** (Luke 3:20-21 ULT)

> > 20 But then Herod...had John locked up in prison. 21 ***Before John was put in prison,*** while all the people were being baptized by John, Jesus also was baptized.

> **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to open the scroll ***after*** breaking its seals?

(2) If your language uses verb tense or aspect to show that an event happened before one that was already mentioned, consider using that.

> **8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets… 10 But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)
>
> > 8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams' horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets… 10 But Joshua ***had commanded*** the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout.

(3) If your language prefers to tell events in the order that they occur, consider reordering the events. This may require putting two or more verses together (like 5-6).

> **8 Just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets… 10 But Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout."** (Joshua 6:8-10 ULT)
>
> > 8-10 Joshua commanded the people, saying, "Do not shout. No sound must leave your mouths until the day I tell you to shout. Only then must you shout." Then just as Joshua had said to the people, the seven priests carried the seven trumpets of rams horns before Yahweh, as they advanced, they gave a blast on the trumpets…

> **Who is worthy to open the scroll and break its seals?** (Revelation 5:2 ULT)
>
> > Who is worthy to break the seals and open the scroll?

You may also want to watch the video at http://ufw.io/figs_events.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Background Information
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]
Introduction of a New Event
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-versebridge]]

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:26)

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

<table>
<tr><td>This page answers the question: What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Numbers</td></tr>
</table>

> He gave to the church **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then those who do powerful deeds (1 Corinthians 12:28 ULT)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have "-th" added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason this is a translation issue:

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples from the Bible

> The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim, … the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

> You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row

> must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

1. Use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.
2. Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell the total number of items, and use "one" with the first item and "another" or "the next" with the rest.

> **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,…the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

>> There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim,…**another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah. There were **twenty-four** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim,…**the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

> **A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became** four

rivers. The name of the first is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of the second river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of the third river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The fourth river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

>> A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. The **last** river is the Euphrates.

(2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

> **The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim,…the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah.** (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

>> They cast **twenty-four** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim,…Delaiah, and Maaziah.

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-fraction]]

Parables

A parable is a short story that teaches something(s) that is true, and teaches in such a way that is easy to understand and hard to forget.

This page answers the question: *What is a parable?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

A parable is a short story that is told to teach something(s) that is true. Though the events in a parable could happen, they did not actually happen. They are told only to teach the lesson(s) that the listener is meant to learn. Parables rarely contain the names of specific people. (This may help you identify what is a parable and what is an account of a real event.) Parables often have figures of speech such as simile and metaphor.

> Then he also told them a parable. "Can a blind person guide another blind person? If he did, they would both fall into a pit, would they not?" (Luke 6:39 ULT)

This parable teaches that if a person does not have spiritual understanding, he cannot help someone else to understand spiritual things.

Examples from the Bible

> Neither do people light a lamp and put it under a basket, but rather, on the lampstand, and it shines for everyone in the house. Let your light shine before people in such a way that they see your good deeds and praise your Father who is in heaven. (Matthew 5:15-16 ULT)

This parable teaches us not to hide the way we live for God from other people.

> Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

This parable teaches that the kingdom of God may seem small at first, but it will grow and spread throughout the world.

Translation Strategies

1. If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same. (See Translate Unknowns.)
2. If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If a parable is hard to understand because it has unknown objects in it, you can replace the unknown objects with objects that people in your culture know. However, be careful to keep the teaching the same.

> **Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a** lampstand

". (Mark 4:21 ULT) - If people do not know what a lampstand is, you could substitute something else that people put a light on so it can give light to the house.

> Jesus said to them, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on **a high shelf**.

Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed

in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT) - To sow seeds means to toss them so that they scatter on the ground. If people are not familiar with sowing, you can substitute planting.

> Then Jesus presented another parable to them. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and **planted** in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(2) If the teaching of the parable is unclear, consider telling a little about what it teaches in the introduction, such as "Jesus told this story about being generous."

> Jesus said to them

, "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand". (Mark 4:21 ULT)

> **Jesus told them a parable about why they should witness openly.** "Do you bring a lamp inside the house to put it under a basket, or under the bed? You bring it in and you put it on a lampstand." (Mark 4:21 ULT)

Then Jesus presented another parable to them.

He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches." (Matthew 13:31-32 ULT)

> **Then Jesus presented another parable to them about how the Kingdom of God grows**. He said, "The kingdom of heaven is like a mustard seed which a man took and sowed in his field. This seed is indeed the smallest of all other seeds. But when it has grown, it is greater than the garden plants and becomes a tree, so that the birds of the air come and nest in its branches."

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:7; 9:8; 9:11; 9:12; 9:15)

Parallelism

Description

In **parallelism** two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. There are different kinds of parallelism. Some of them are the following:

1. The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is also called synonymous parallelism.
2. The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
3. The second completes what is said in the first.
4. The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

Synonymous parallelism (the kind in which the two phrases mean the same thing) in the poetry of the original languages has several effects:

• It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
• It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
• It makes the language more beautiful and above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason this is a translation issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it is confusing, rather than beautiful.

Note: We use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term Doublet for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

Examples from the Bible

(1) The second clause or phrase means the same as the first.

> Your word is a lamp to my feet
> and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live.

> You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
> you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything.

(2) The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.

> The eyes of Yahweh are everywhere,
> keeping watch over the evil and the good. (Proverbs 15:3 ULT)

The second line tells more specifically what Yahweh watches.

(3) The second completes what is said in the first.

> I lift up my voice to Yahweh,
> and he answers me from his holy hill. (Psalm 3:4 ULT)

The second line tells what Yahweh does in response to what the person does in the first clause.

(4) The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

> For Yahweh approves of the way of the righteous,
> but the way of the wicked will perish. (Psalm 1:6 ULT)

This contrasts what happens to righteous people with what happens to wicked people.

> A gentle answer turns away wrath,
> but a harsh word stirs up anger. (Proverbs 15:1 ULT)

This contrasts what happens when someone gives a gentle answer with what happens when someone says something harsh.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

1. Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
2. If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
3. If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

> **Until now you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13, ULT) - Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.
>
> > "Until now you have deceived me with your lies."

> **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT) - The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."
>
> > "Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does."

> **For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel.** (Micah 6:2 ULT) - This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:
>
> > "For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel."

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."

> **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
>
> > "Yahweh truly sees everything a person does."

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could use words like "very," "completely" or "all."

> **you have deceived me and told me lies.** (Judges 16:13 ULT)

>> "All you have done is lie to me."

> **Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes.** (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

>> "Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does."

Next we recommend you learn about:

Personification

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:28; 7:3; 9:28; 10:6; 11:35; 13:23; 14:16; 15:19; 16:10; 16:13; 20:8)

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

> Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

Or sin:

> sin crouches at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT)

People also do this because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things, such as wealth, as if they were relationships between people.

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples from the Bible

> You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24 ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

> Does not Wisdom call out? Does not Understanding raise her voice? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they are a woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

1. Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
2. In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
3. Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

> **...**sin crouches

at the door (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

> ...**sin** is at your door, ***waiting to attack you***

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

> **...sin crouches at the door** (Genesis 4:7 ULT) - This can be translated with the word "as."
>
> > ...sin is crouching at the door, ***just as a wild animal does waiting to attack a person*** .

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

> **...even the** winds and the sea obey him

(Matthew 8:27 ULT) - The men speak of the "wind and the sea" as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

> He even ***controls the winds and the sea***.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of "personification" to include "zoomorphism" (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and "anthropomorphism" (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Apostrophe
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:5; 5:20; 9:8; 9:11; 9:12; 9:15; 16:17; 16:19; 20:42)

Poetry

Description

Poetry is one of the ways that people use the words and sounds of their language to make their speech and writing more beautiful and to express strong emotion. Through poetry, people can communicate deeper emotion than they can through simple non-poetic forms. Poetry gives more weight and elegance to statements of truth, such as proverbs, and is also easier to remember than ordinary speech.

This page answers the question: *What is poetry and how do I translate it into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Some things commonly found in poetry

- Many figures of speech such as Apostrophe
- Parallel lines (See Parallelism and Parallelism with the Same Meaning.)
- Repetition of some or all of a line

> **Praise him, all his angels; praise him, all his angel armies. Praise him, sun and moon; praise him, all you shining stars.** (Psalm 148:2-3 ULT)

- Lines of similar length.

> **Love is patient and kind; love does not envy or boast; it is not arrogant or rude.** (1 Corinthians 13:4 ULT)

- The same sound used at the end or at the beginning of two or more lines

> "Twinkle, twinkle little ***star***. How I wonder what you ***are***." (from an English rhyme)

- The same sound repeated many times > "Peter, Peter, pumpkin eater" (from an English rhyme)
- Old words and expressions
- Dramatic imagery
- Different use of grammar - including:
  - incomplete sentences
  - lack of connective words

Some places to look for poetry in your language

1. Songs, particularly old songs or songs used in children's games
2. Religious ceremony or chants of priests or witch doctors
3. Prayers, blessings, and curses
4. Old legends

Elegant or fancy speech

Elegant or fancy speech is similar to poetry in that it uses beautiful language, but it does not use all of the language's features of poetry, and it does not use them as much as poetry does. Popular speakers in the language often use elegant speech, and this is probably the easiest source of text to study to find out what makes speech elegant in your language.

Reasons this is a translation issue:

- Different languages use poetry for different things. If a poetic form would not communicate the same meaning in your language you may need to write it without the poetry.

• In some languages, using poetry for a particular part of the Bible would make it much more powerful.

Examples from the Bible

The Bible uses poetry for songs, teaching, and prophecy. Almost all of the books of the Old Testament have poetry in them and many of the books are completely poetry.

> for you saw my affliction;
> you knew the distress of my soul. (Psalm 31:7 ULT)

This example of Parallelism with the Same Meaning has two lines that mean the same thing.

> Yahweh, judge the nations;
> vindicate me, Yahweh, because I am righteous and innocent, Most High.

This example of parallelism shows the contrast between what David wants God to do to him and what he wants God to do to the unrighteous nations. (See Parallelism.)

> Keep your servant also from arrogant sins;
> let them not rule over me. (Psalm 19:13 ULT)

This example of personification speaks of sins as if they could rule over a person. (See Personification.)

> Oh, give thanks to Yahweh; for he is good, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
> Oh, give thanks to the God of gods, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever.
> Oh, give thanks to the Lord of lords, for his covenant faithfulness endures forever. (Psalm 136:1-3 ULT)

This example repeats the phrases "give thanks" and "his covenant faithfulness endures forever."

Translation Strategies

If the style of poetry that is used in the source text would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other ways of translating it.

1. Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry.
2. Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.
3. Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

If you use poetry it may be more beautiful.

If you use ordinary speech it may be more clear.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

> **Blessed is the man who does not walk in the advice of the wicked,**
> **or stand in the pathway with sinners,**
> **or sit in the assembly of mockers.**
> **But his delight is in the law of Yahweh,**
> **and on his law he meditates day and night.** (Psalm 1:1,2 ULT)

The following are examples of how people might translate Psalm 1:1,2.

(1) Translate the poetry using one of your styles of poetry. (The style in this example has words that sound similar at the end of each line.)

> "Happy is the person not encouraged *to sin*
> Disrespect for God he will not *begin*
> To those who laugh at God, he is *no kin.*

> God is his constant **delight**
> He does what God says **is right**
> He thinks of it all day **and night**

(2) Translate the poetry using your style of elegant speech.

> This is the kind of person who is truly blessed: the one who does not follow the advice of wicked people, or stop along the road to speak with sinners, or join the gathering of those who mock God. Rather he takes great joy in Yahweh's law, and he meditates on it day and night.

(3) Translate the poetry using your style of ordinary speech.

> The people who do not listen to the advice of bad people are really happy. They do not spend time with people who continually do evil things or with those who do not respect God. They love to obey Yahweh's law, and they think about it all the time.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-symlanguage]]

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:3; 5:5; 5:12)

Possession

Description

In common English, "possession" refers to having something, or to something that a person has. In English that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word **"of"**, by using an apostrophe and the letter **s**, or by using a possessive pronoun.

> This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that have it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather**'s** house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership - Someone owns something.
    - My clothes - The clothes that I own

- Social relationship - Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
    - my mother - the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
    - my teacher - the person who teaches me

- Contents - Something has something in it.
    - a bag of clothes - a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes

- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
    - my head - the head that is part of my body
    - the roof of a house - the roof that is part of a house

Reasons this is a translation issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one possesses the other.
- Some languages do not use possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples from the Bible

Ownership - In the example below, the son owned the money.

> ...the younger son...wasted **his money** with wildly extravagant living. (Luke 15:13)

Social Relationship - In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

> Then **the disciples of John** came to him..., (Matthew 9:14 ULT)

Material - In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

> On their heads were something like **crowns of gold** (Revelation 9:7)

Contents - In the example below, the cup has water in it.

> Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole - In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

> But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace** (2 Samuel 11:9 ULT)

Part of a group - In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

> To **each one of us** has been given a gift (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject - Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

> The baptism

* of John*, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me." (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

> Who will separate us from **the *love** of Christ*? (Romans 3:35)

Object - Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

> For **the *love** of money* is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10 ULT)

Instrument - Sometimes the word after "of" tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

> then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the *punishment** of the sword* (Job 19:29 ULT)

Representation - In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

> As John came, he was baptizing in the wilderness and was preaching **a *baptism** of repentance* for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

1. Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
2. Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
3. See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

1. Use an adjective to show that one describes the other.
2. Use a verb to show how the two are related.
3. If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use an adjective to show that one describes the other. The adjective below is in **bold** print.

> **On their heads were something like** crowns of gold

(Revelation 9:7)

> "On their heads were gold

* crowns*"

(2) Use a verb to show how the two are related. In the example below, the added verb is in bold.

> **...Whoever gives you** a cup of water

to drink...will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

> ...Whoever gives you **a cup that *has** water in it* to drink...will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on the day of wrath

(Proverbs 11:4 ULT)

> Wealth is worthless on ***the day when God *shows** his wrath.* Wealth is worthless on the** day when God **punishes** people because of his wrath

**.

(3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. In the example below, that verb is in bold.

> **Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen** the punishment of Yahweh your God

, (Deuteronomy 11:2 ULT)

> Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh your God *punished** the people of Egypt.*

You will only observe and see the punishment of the wicked

. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

> You will only observe and see **how Yahweh *punishes** the wicked*.

...you will receive the gift of the Holy Spirit

. (Acts 2:38 ULT)

> ...you will receive **the Holy Spirit, whom God will *give** to you*.

(**Go back to:**)

Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

> This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
> [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

> Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding;
> their leaders go hungry, and their masses have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason this is a translation issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples from the Bible

> Now all the entrances to Jericho were closed because of the army of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have handed over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

> For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given;
> and the rule will be on his shoulder; (Isaiah 9:6 ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

> And about these people also Enoch, the seventh in line from Adam, foretold, saying, "Look, the Lord came with tens of thousands of his holy ones, (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

1. Use the future tense to refer to future events.
2. If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
3. Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

> **For to us a child** has been born

, to us a son has been given; (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

> "For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**;

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

> **Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I** have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I ***am about to hand*** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

> **Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I** have handed

over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

> Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I ***am handing*** over to you Jericho, its king, and its trained soldiers."

(**Go back to:**)

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are "layers" of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

> This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Direct and Indirect Quotations*

Reasons this is a translation issue

1. When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word "I", the listener needs to know whether "I" refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.
2. Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes. They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.
3. Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples from the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

> But Paul said, "I was born a Roman citizen." (Acts 22:28 ULT)

Quotations with two layers

> Jesus answered and said to them, "Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, 'I am the Christ,' and will lead many astray." Matthew 24:4-5 ULT

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

> Jesus answered, "You say that I am a king." (John 18:37 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

> Abraham said, "…I said to her, 'You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, *"He is my brother."* ' " (Genesis 20:10-13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham said to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have underlined the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

> They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: *'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'* " ' " (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have underlined the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

1. Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
2. Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See Direct and Indirect Quotations.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have underlined the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

> **Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner.…I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him** if he would go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things

. But when Paul called to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision, I ordered him to be kept until I send him to Caesar." (Acts 25:14-21 ULT)

> Festus presented Paul's case to the king; he said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner.…I was puzzled about how to investigate this matter, and I asked him, *'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there about these things?'* But when Paul said, *'I want to be kept under guard for the Emperor's decision,'* I told the guard, *'Keep him under guard until I send him to Caesar.'*"

(2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is underlined in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also underlined.

> **Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them, 'At twilight you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be filled with bread. Then you will know that I am Yahweh your God.' "** (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

>> Then Yahweh spoke to Moses and said, "I have heard the grumbling of the Israelites. Tell them *that* at twilight *they* will eat meat, and in the morning *they* will be filled with bread. Then *they* will know that I am Yahweh *their* God."

> **They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"'"** (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

>> They told him *that* a man had come to meet *them* who said to *them*, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him *that* Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

> Next we recommend you learn about:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks]]*

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:3; 9:2)

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes]]

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

> Those who stood by said, "**Is this how you insult God's high priest?**" (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking about his way of insulting God's high priest. Rather they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purpose of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples from the Bible

> Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

> **Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him, who is so much greater than those things.

> Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11 ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

> And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

> Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father from heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

> ***What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?*** It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden…(Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

1. Add the answer after the question.
2. Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
3. Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
4. Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the answer after the question.

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils?

Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

> Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? ***Of course not!*** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> Or what man among you is there who, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? ***None of you would do that!***

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

> What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to?

It is like a mustard seed... (Luke 13:18-19 ULT)

> ***This is what the kingdom of God is like.*** It is like a mustard seed..."

Is this how you insult God's high priest?

(Acts 23:4 ULT)

> ***You should not insult God's high priest!***

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb?

(Job 3:11 ULT)

> ***I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!***

And why has it happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me?

(Luke 1:43 ULT)

> ***How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!***

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

> Do you not still rule

the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7 ULT)

> You still rule the kingdom of Israel, ***do you not?***

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the orignal speaker communicated in his.

> **Or** what man among you is there who

, if his son asks him for a loaf of bread, will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

> If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, ***would you give him a stone***?

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils

? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

> ***What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils***? Yet my poeple have forgotten me for days without number

Simile

A simile is an explicit comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. One is said to be "like" the other. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as", or "than".

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. It focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words "like," "as", or "than".

> When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were worried and confused, because they were **like sheep without a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

> See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as serpents** and harmless **as doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep. Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

> For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with the item that something is compared to.

Examples from the Bible

> Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier of Christ Jesus**. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

> for **as the lightning appears when it flashes from one part of the sky to another part of the sky**, so will the Son of Man be in his day. (Luke 17:24 ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But from the context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

1. If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
2. If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
3. Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

> **See, I send you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

(Matthew 10:16 ULT) - This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

> See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper than any two-edged sword

. (Hebrews 4:12 ULT)

> For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**

(2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

> **See, I send you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT) - If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

> See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**,

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

> How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith even as small as a grain of mustard

, (Matthew 17:20)

> If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

(3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

> **See, I send you out** as sheep in the midst of wolves

, (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

> See, I send you out among ***people who will want to harm you***.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings

, but you did not agree! (Matthew 23:37 ULT)

> How often I wanted to ***protect you***, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metaphor
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:17; 5:31; 6:5; 7:12; 13:6; 15:10; 15:14; 16:9; 16:12; 17:11; 20:1; 20:8)

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their head up and down to mean "Yes" or turn their head from side to side to mean "No". Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

> This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *Translate Unknowns*

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason this is a translation issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture, and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means "I am surprised" or "What did you say?" In others cultures it means "Yes".

In the Bible people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples from the Bible

> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

> Look, I stand at the door and ***knock***. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come in to his home, and have a meal with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

1. Tell what the person did and why he did it.
2. Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.
3. Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

> **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

>> Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

> **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

>> Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

> **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41)

>> Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

> **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20)

>> Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

> **Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet.** (Luke 8:41 ULT) - Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

> **Look, I stand at the door and knock.** (Revelation 3:20 ULT) - Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

>> Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(**Go back to:**)

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

> **My soul** exalts the Lord. (Luke 1:46 ULT)

> This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*
>
> In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:
>
> *[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]*

Mary was was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said "my soul," which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

> **the Pharisees** said to him, "Look, why are they doing something that is not lawful…?" (Mark 2:24 ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons this is a translation issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example from the Bible

> I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

"My hands" is a synecdoche for the whole person, because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person's accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

1. State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

> **"**My soul

exalts the Lord." (Luke 1:46 ULT)

> "**I** exalt the Lord."

…the Pharisees

said to him (Mark 2:24 ULT)

> …**a representative of the Pharisees** said to him…

…I looked on all the deeds that my hands

had accomplished… (Ecclesiastes 2:11 ULT)

> I looked on all the deeds that *I* had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metonymy
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part2]]

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:2; 1:5; 1:8; 1:20; 1:25; 2:23; 3:3; 3:8; 3:10; 3:12; 4:7; 4:16; 4:24; 5:8; 5:11; 5:19; 5:20; 5:21; 5:30; 7:3; 8:6; 8:8; 8:9; 8:11; 8:16; 8:17; 9:43; 9:45; 11:12; 11:17; 11:19; 11:20; 11:27; 11:32; 11:33; 12:2; 12:3; 12:4; 15:8; 16:24; 18:20; 18:27; 19:5; 19:18; 19:21; 21:18)

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: "How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?"

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

> We have here only five loaves of **bread** and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason this is a translation issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God's commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples from the Bible

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

> to him who made **great lights** (Psalm 136:7 ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

> your sins…will be white like **snow** (Isaiah 1:18 ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

1. Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
2. Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
3. Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
4. Use a word that is more general in meaning.
5. Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

> **Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but are truly**
> ravenous wolves

. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

> Beware of false prophets, those who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **are truly hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See Translating Metaphors.)

> **We have here only five** loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> We have here only five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish

(2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

> **your sins…will be white like** snow

(Isaiah 1:18 ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

> your sins…will be white like **milk** your sins…will be white like **the moon**

(3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

> **Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with** myrrh

. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) - People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word "medicine."

> Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT) - People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

> We have here only five loaves of ***baked crushed seed bread*** and two fish

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

> **I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for** jackals

(Jeremiah 9:11 ULT)

> I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for ***wild dogs***

We have here only five loaves of bread

and two fish (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

> We have here only five ***loaves of baked food*** and two fish

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

> **to him who made** great lights

(Psalm 136:7 ULT)

> to him who made ***the sun and the moon***

Next we recommend you learn about:

Copy or Borrow Words
How to Translate Names

(**Go back to:** Judges 11:34; 16:13)

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 14

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the priest priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: priest, Moses, Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 07:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 01:05
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:05** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:09** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:07** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H175, G2

(**Go back to:** Judges 20:28)

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An "adversary" is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term "enemy" has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an "adversary" of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an "adversary" and an "enemy."
- The term "adversary" may be translated as "opponent" or "enemy," but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:14
- Isaiah 09:11
- Job 06:23
- Lamentations 04:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G476, G480, G2189, G2190, G5227

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:14; 2:18; 3:28; 5:31; 8:34; 11:7; 11:36; 16:23; 16:24)

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term "afflict" means to cause someone distress or suffering. An "affliction" is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To "be afflicted with" means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "afflict" someone could be translated as "cause someone to experience troubles" or "cause someone to suffer" or "cause suffering to come."
- A phrase like "afflict someone with leprosy" could be translated as "cause someone to be sick with leprosy."
- When a disease or disaster is sent to "afflict" people or animals, this could be translated as "cause suffering to."
- Depending on the context, the term "affliction" could be translated as "calamity" or "sickness" or "suffering" or "great distress."
- The phrase "afflicted with" could also be translated as "suffering from" or "sick with."

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 01:06
- Amos 05:12
- Colossians 01:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G2346, G2347, G3804

(**Go back to:** Judges 19:23)

alarm, alarmed

Facts:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To "be alarmed" is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression "sound an alarm" means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

Translation Suggestions

- To "alarm someone" means to "cause someone to worry" or to "worry someone."
- To "be alarmed" could be translated as "be worried" or "be frightened" or "be very concerned."
- The expression "sound an alarm" could be translated by "publicly warn" or "announce that danger is coming" or "blow a trumpet to warn about danger."

(See also: Jehoshaphat, Moab)

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 04:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7321, H8643

(**Go back to:** Judges 7:21)

alien, foreign, foreigner

Definition:

The term "foreigner" refers to a person living in a country that is not his own. Another name for a foreigner is an "alien."

- In the Old Testament, this term especially refers to anyone who came from a different people group than the people he was living among.
- A foreigner is also a person whose language and culture is different from those of a particular region.
- For example, when Naomi and her family moved to Moab, they were foreigners there. When Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth later moved to Israel, Ruth was called a "foreigner" there because she was not originally from Israel.
- The apostle Paul told the Ephesians that before they knew Christ, they were "foreigners" to God's covenant.
- Sometimes "foreigner" is translated as "stranger," but it should not refer only to someone who is unfamiliar or unknown.

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 02:17
- Acts 07:29-30
- Deuteronomy 01:15-16
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 17:27
- Luke 17:18
- Matthew 17:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H312, H628, H776, H1471, H1481, H1616, H2114, H3937, H4033, H5236, H5237, H6154, H8453, G241, G245, G526, G915, G1854, G3581, G3927, G3941

(**Go back to:** Judges 19:12)

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, false god, grain offering, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:09
- James 02:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 05:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:09** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:06** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G1041, G2379

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who were descended from Noah's grandson Canaan.

- Their name means "high one," which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The Amorites lived in regions on both sides of the Jordan River. The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the "sin of the Amorites," which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 02:09
- Ezekiel 16:03
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 09:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:07** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:08** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:09** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H567,

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:34; 1:35; 1:36; 3:5; 6:10; 10:8; 10:11; 11:19; 11:21; 11:22; 11:23)

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term "father" refers to a person's male parent.

- The terms "father" and "forefather" are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a "ancestor" or "ancestral father."
- The expression "the father of" can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 "the father of all who live in tents" could mean, "the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents."
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the "father" of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- "God the Father" should also be translated using the usual, common word for "father."
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as "ancestors" or "ancestral fathers."
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as "spiritual father" or "father in Christ."
- Sometimes the word "father" can be translated as "clan leader," depending on the context.
- The phrase "father of all lies" could be translated as "source of all lies" or "the one from whom all lies come."

(See also: God the Father, son, Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:02
- Acts 07:32
- Acts 07:45
- Acts 22:03
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 07:4-6
- John 04:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 03:07
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 01:07
- Matthew 03:09
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 04:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H2, H25, H369, H539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G540, G1080, G3737, G3962, G3964, G3966, G3967, G3970, G3971, G3995, G4245, G4269, G4613

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:14; 2:1; 2:10; 2:12; 2:17; 2:20; 2:22; 3:4; 6:13; 6:15; 6:25; 6:27; 8:32; 9:1; 9:5; 9:17; 9:18; 9:28; 9:56; 11:2; 11:7; 11:36; 11:37; 11:39; 14:2; 14:3; 14:4; 14:5; 14:6; 14:9; 14:10; 14:15; 14:16; 14:19; 15:1; 15:2; 15:6; 16:31; 17:10; 18:19; 18:29; 19:2; 19:3; 19:4; 19:5; 19:6; 19:8; 19:9; 21:22)

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms "appoint" and "appointed" refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To "be appointed" can also refer to being "chosen" to receive something, as in "appointed to eternal life." That people were "appointed to eternal life" means they were chosen to receive eterna life.
- The phrase "appointed time" refers to God's "chosen time" or "planned time" for something to happen.
- The word "appoint" may also mean to "command" or "assign" someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "appoint" could include "choose" or "assign" or "formally choose" or "designate."
- The term "appointed" could be translated as "assigned" or "planned" or "specifically chose."
- The phrase "be appointed" could also be translated as "be chosen."

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 08:11
- Acts 03:20
- Acts 06:02
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 03:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H561, H977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G322, G606, G1299, G1303, G1935, G2525, G2749, G4287, G4296, G4384, G4929, G5021, G5087

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting

Definition:

The term "assembly" usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a "sacred assembly" in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term "assembly" referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the "Sanhedrin" or the "Council."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "assembly" could also be translated as "special gathering" or "congregation" or "council" or "army" or "large group."
- When the term "assembly" refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as "community" or "people of Israel."
- The phrase, "all the assembly" could be translated as "all the people" or "the whole group of Israelites" or "everyone." (See: hyperbole)
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an "assembly." This could be translated as "army."

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:14
- Acts 07:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 04:20-21
- Nehemiah 08:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G1577, G3831, G4863, G4864, G4871, G4905

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:10; 6:33; 16:23; 19:15; 19:18; 20:2; 21:5; 21:8)

banquet

Definition:

A banquet is large, formal meal that usually includes several food courses.

- In ancient times, kings often served banquet meals to entertain political leaders and other important guests.
- This could also be translated as, "elaborate meal" or "important feast" or "multi-course meal."

Bible References:

- Daniel 05:10
- Isaiah 05:11-12
- Jeremiah 16:08
- Luke 05:29-32
- Song of Solomon 02:3-4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4960, H4961, H8354, G1173, G1403

(**Go back to:** Judges 14:12; 14:17)

barley

Definition:

The term "barley" refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as "grain called barley" or "barley grain."

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: grain, thresh, wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 07:14
- Numbers 05:15
- Revelation 06:06

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8184, G2915, G2916

(**Go back to:** Judges 7:13)

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term "beast" is often just another way of saying "animal."

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term "livestock" is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: Metaphor)
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include "creature" or "created thing" or "animal" or "wild animal," depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, livestock, nation, power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 07:21
- Psalms 049:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H338, H929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G2226, G2341, G2342, G2934, G4968, G5074

(**Go back to:** Judges 20:48)

Benjamin, Benjamite

Facts:

Benjamin was the youngest son born to Jacob and his wife Rachel. His name means, "son of my right hand."

- He and his older brother Joseph were the only children of Rachel, who died after Benjamin was born.
- The descendants of Benjamin became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- King Saul was from the Israelite tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was also from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Israel, Jacob, Joseph (OT), Paul, Rachel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 02:08
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:04
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 03:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G958

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:21; 3:15; 5:14; 19:14; 19:16; 20:3; 20:4; 20:10; 20:12; 20:13; 20:14; 20:15; 20:18; 20:20; 20:21; 20:23; 20:24; 20:25; 20:28; 20:30; 20:31; 20:32; 20:35; 20:36; 20:39; 20:40; 20:41; 20:43; 20:48; 21:1; 21:6; 21:13; 21:14; 21:15; 21:17; 21:18; 21:20; 21:21; 21:23)

Bethel

Facts:

Bethel was a city located just north of Jerusalem in the land of Canaan. It was formerly called "Luz."

- After receiving God's promises for the first time, Abram (Abraham) built an altar to God near Bethel. The actual name of the city was not yet Bethel at that time, but it was usually referred to as "Bethel," which was better known.
- When fleeing from his brother Esau, Jacob stayed overnight near this city and slept outdoors on the ground there. While he was sleeping, he had a dream showing angels going up and down a ladder to heaven.
- This city did not have the name "Bethel" until after Jacob named it that. To make this clear, some translations may translate it as "Luz (later called Bethel)" in the passages about Abraham, as well as when Jacob first arrives there (before he changed the name).
- Bethel is mentioned often in the Old Testament and was a place where many important events happened.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, altar, Jacob, Jerusalem)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:8-9
- Genesis 35:01
- Hosea 10:15
- Judges 01:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1008

(**Go back to:** Judges 21:19)

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term "bind" means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a "bond." The term "bound" is the past tense of this term.

- To be "bound" means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be "bound" to a vow, which means he is "required to fulfill" what he promised to do.
- The term "bonds" refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term "bind" can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be "bound" with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term "bond" is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are "bound" or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "bind" could also be translated as "tie" or "tie up" or "wrap (around)."
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to "restrain" or to "prevent" or to "keep from (something)."
- A special use of "bind" in Matthew 16 and 18 means "forbid" or "not permit."
- The term "bonds" could be translated as "chains" or "ropes" or "shackles."
- Figuratively the term "bond" could be translated as "knot" or "connection" or "close relationship."
- The phrase "bond of peace" means "being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other" or "the tying together that peace brings."
- To "bind up" could be translated as "wrap around" or "put a bandage on."
- To "bind" oneself with a vow could be translated as "promise to fulfill a vow" or "commit to fulfill a vow."
- Depending on the context, the term "bound" could also be translated as "tied" or "tied up" or "chained" or "obligated (to fulfill)" or "required to do."

(See also: fulfill, peace, prison, servant, vow)

Bible References:

- Leviticus 08:07

Word Data:

- Strong's: H247, H481, H519, H615, H631, H632, H640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G254, G331, G332, G1195, G1196, G1198, G1199, G1210, G1397, G1398, G1401, G1402, G2611, G2615, G3734, G3784, G3814, G4019, G4029, G4385, G4886, G4887, G5265

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To "bless" someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people "bless" God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term "bless" is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To "bless" could also be translated as to "provide abundantly for" or to "be very kind and favorable toward."
- "God has brought great blessing to" could be translated as "God has given many good things to" or "God has provided abundantly for" or "God has caused many good things to happen to".
- "He is blessed" could be translated as "he will greatly benefit" or "he will experience good things" or "God will cause him to flourish."
- "Blessed is the person who" could be translated as "How good it is for the person who."
- Expressions like "blessed be the Lord" could be translated as "May the Lord be praised" or "Praise the Lord" or "I praise the Lord."
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as "thanked God for the food" or "praised God for giving them food" or "consecrated the food by praising God for it."

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:03
- James 01:25
- Luke 06:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 09:05
- Romans 04:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:07** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **01:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, "Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth."
- **01:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **04:04** "I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you."
- **04:07** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **07:03** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.

• **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H833, H835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G1757, G2127, G2128, G2129, G3106, G3107, G3108, G6050

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:15; 5:2; 5:9; 5:24; 13:24; 17:2)

blot out, wipe out

Definition:

The terms "blot out" and "wipe out" are expressions that mean to completely remove or destroy something or someone.

- These expressions can be used in a positive sense, as when God "blots out" sins by forgiving them and choosing not to remember them.
- It is also often used in a negative sense, as when God "blots out" or "wipes out" a people group, destroying them because of their sin.
- The Bible talks about a person's name being "blotted out" or "wiped out" of God's Book of Life, which means that the person will not receive eternal life.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, these expressions could be translated as "get rid of" or "remove" or "completely destroy" or "completely remove."
- When referring to blotting someone's name out of the Book of Life, this could be translated as "removed from" or "erased."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 29:20
- Exodus 32:30-32
- Genesis 07:23
- Psalm 051:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4229, H8045, G1813

(**Go back to:**)

bow, bow down, knelt, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To "bow down" means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include "bow the knee" (meaning to kneel) and "bow the head" (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is "bowed down" has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "bend forward" or "bend the head" or "kneel."
- The term "bow down" could be translated as "kneel down" or "prostrate oneself."
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: humble, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:18
- Exodus 20:05
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:05
- Matthew 02:11
- Revelation 03:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H86, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G1120, G2578, G2827, G4098

(**Go back to:** Judges 4:16; 5:27; 7:5; 7:6; 7:13; 9:40; 11:35; 12:6; 13:20; 15:18; 16:30; 19:26; 20:44)

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term "loaf" occurs by itself, it means "loaf of bread."
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called "unleavened bread" in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate "unleavened bread" during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: Synecdoche) Many times the term "bread" can be translated more generally as "food."
- The phrase "bread of the presence" refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as "bread showing that God lived among them."
- The term "bread from heaven" refers to the special white food called "manna" that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the "bread that came down from heaven" and the "bread of life."

(See also: Passover, tabernacle, temple, unleavened bread, yeast)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 09:13
- Mark 06:38
- Matthew 04:04
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G106, G740, G4286

(**Go back to:** Judges 7:13; 8:5; 8:6; 8:15; 19:5; 19:19)

bridegroom

Definition:

In a marriage ceremony, the bridegroom is the man who will marry the bride.

- In the Jewish culture during Bible times, the ceremony was centered around the bridegroom coming to get his bride.
- In the Bible, Jesus is figuratively called the "Bridegroom" who will someday come for his "Bride," the Church.
- Jesus compared his disciples to the friends of the bridegroom who celebrate while the bridegroom is with them, but who will be sad when he is gone.

(See also: bride)

Bible References:

- Isaiah 62:5
- Joel 02:15-16
- John 03:30
- Luke 05:35
- Mark 02:19
- Mark 02:20
- Matthew 09:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2860, G3566

(**Go back to:** Judges 15:6; 19:5)

brother

Definition:

The term "brother" refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term "brothers" is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term "brothers" to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term "sister" when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to "a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing."

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when "brothers" is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include "relatives" or "clan members" or "fellow Israelites."
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as "brother in Christ" or "spiritual brother."
- If both males and females are being referred to and "brother" would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be "fellow believers" or "Christian brothers and sisters."
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: apostle, God the Father, sister, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 03:01
- Philippians 04:21
- Revelation 01:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H251, H252, H264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G80, G81, G2385, G2455, G2500, G4613, G5360, G5569

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:3; 1:13; 1:17; 3:9; 8:19; 9:1; 9:3; 9:5; 9:18; 9:21; 9:24; 9:26; 9:31; 9:41; 9:56; 11:3; 14:3; 16:31; 18:8; 18:14; 19:23; 20:13; 20:23; 20:28; 21:6; 21:22)

burden, burdened, burdensome, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term "burden" also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be "bearing" or "carrying" a "heavy burden."
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person's sin is a burden to him.
- The "burden of the Lord" is a figurative way of referring to a "message from God" that a prophet must deliver to God's people.
- The term "burden" can be translated by "responsibility" or "duty" or "heavy load" or "message," depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 03:6-9
- Galatians 06:1-2
- Galatians 06:03
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H6006, G4, G916, G922, G2347, G2599, G2655, G5413

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:9; 20:34)

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A "burnt offering" was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an "offering by fire."

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: altar, atonement, ox, priest, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 08:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 03:05
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G3646

(**Go back to:** Judges 6:26; 11:31; 13:16; 13:23; 20:26; 21:4)

call, call out

Definition:

The terms "call" and "call out" usually mean to speak loudly, but the term "call" can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To "call out" to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, "call" has a meaning of "summon" or "command to come" or "request to come."
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their "calling."
- When God "calls" people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, "His name is called John," means, "He is named John" or "His name is John."
- To be "called by the name of" means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, "I have called you by name" means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "call" could be translated by a word that means "summon," which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression "call out to you" could be translated as "ask you for help" or "pray to you urgently."
- When the Bible says that God has "called" us to be his servants, this could be translated as, "specially chose us" or "appointed us" to be his servants.
- "You must call his name" can also be translated as, "you must name him."
- "His name is called" could also be translated as, "his name is" or "he is named."
- To "call out" could be translated as, "say loudly" or "shout" or "say with a loud voice." Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression "your calling" could be translated as "your purpose" or "God's purpose for you" or "God's special work for you."
- To "call on the name of the Lord" could be translated as "seek the Lord and depend on him" or "trust in the Lord and obey him."
- To "call for" something could be translated by "demand" or "ask for" or "command."
- The expression "you are called by my name" could be translated as, "I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me."
- When God says, "I have called you by name," this could be translated as, "I know you and have chosen you."

(See also: pray, cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- 2 Timothy 01:09
- Ephesians 04:01
- Galatians 01:15
- Matthew 02:15
- Philippians 03:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G154, G363, G1458, G1528, G1941, G1951, G2028, G2046, G2564, G2821, G2822, G2840, G2919, G3004, G3106, G3333, G3343, G3603, G3686, G3687, G4316, G4341, G4377, G4779, G4867, G5455, G5537, G5581

(**Go back to:** Judges 7:3; 8:1; 10:4; 12:1; 14:15; 15:19; 16:25; 18:12)

camel

Definition:

A camel is a large, four legged animal with one or two humps on its back. (See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

- In Bible times, the camel was the largest animal found in Israel and the surrounding regions.
- The camel was used mainly for carrying people and burdens.
- Some people groups also used camels for food but not the Israelites because God said that camels were unclean and were not to be eaten.
- Camels were valuable because they could move swiftly in the sand and could live without food and water for several weeks at a time.

(See also: burden, clean)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 05:21
- 2 Chronicles 09:1-2
- Exodus 09:1-4
- Mark 10:25
- Matthew 03:04
- Matthew 19:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1581, G2574

(**Go back to:** Judges 8:21; 8:26)

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ham, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 09:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:07
- Genesis 47:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:05** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **04:06** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **04:09** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **05:03** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **07:08** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G5478

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:1; 1:4; 1:5; 1:10; 1:17; 1:27; 1:28; 1:29; 1:30; 1:32; 1:33; 3:1; 3:3; 3:5; 4:2; 4:23; 4:24; 5:19; 21:12)

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term "cedar" refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: fir, pure, sacrifice, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 07:1-2
- Isaiah 02:13
- Zechariah 11:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H730

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:15)

chariot, charioteers

Definition:

In ancient times, chariots were lightweight, two-wheeled carts that were pulled by horses.

- People would sit or stand in chariots, using them for war or travel.
- In war, an army that had chariots had a great advantage of speed and mobility over an army that did not have chariots.
- The ancient Egyptians and Romans were well-known for their use of horses and chariots.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Egypt, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:22
- 2 Chronicles 18:28-30
- Acts 08:29
- Acts 08:38
- Daniel 11:40-41
- Exodus 14:25
- Genesis 41:43

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:10** So they followed the Israelites onto the path through the sea, but God caused the Egyptians to panic and caused their **chariots** to get stuck.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2021, H4817, H4818, H7393, H7395, H7398, G716, G4480

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:28)

chief

Definition:

The term "chief" refers to the most powerful or most important leader of a particular group.

- Examples of this include, "chief musician," "chief priest," and "chief tax collector." and "chief ruler."
- It can also be used for the head of a specific family, as in Genesis 36 where certain men are named as "chiefs" of their family clans. In this context, the term "chief" could also be translated as "leader" or "head father."
- When used to describe a noun, this term could be translated as "leading" or "ruling," as in "leading musician" or "ruling priest."

(See also: chief priests, priest, tax collector)

Bible References:

- Daniel 01:11-13
- Ezekiel 26:15-16
- Luke 19:02
- Psalm 004:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H5057, H5387, H5632, H6496, H7218, H7225, H7227, H7229, H7262, H8269, H8334, G749, G750, G754, G4410, G4413, G5506

(**Go back to:** Judges 7:20; 9:44)

clean, wash

Definition:

The term "clean" generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term "wash" refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from something.

- "Cleanse" is the process of making something "clean." It could also be translated as "wash" or "purify."
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually "clean" and which ones were "unclean." Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term "clean" means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared "clean" again.
- Sometimes "clean" is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be "clean" from sin.

In the Bible, the term "unclean" is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were "clean" and which ones were "unclean." The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be "unclean" until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something "unclean," they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God's commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God's service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an "unclean spirit" refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for "clean" or "pure" (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, "ritually clean" or "acceptable to God."
- "Cleanse" could be translated by "wash" or "purify."
- Make sure that the words used for "clean" and "cleanse" can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term "unclean" could also be translated as "not clean" or "unfit in God's eyes" or "physically unclean" or "defiled."
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, "unclean" could be translated as "evil" or "defiled."
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, holy, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- Genesis 07:02
- Genesis 07:08
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 051:07
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27
- Luke 05:13
- Acts 08:07
- Acts 10:27-29

- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 04:07
- James 04:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G167, G169, G2511, G2512, G2513, G2839, G2840, G3394, G3689

(**Go back to:** Judges 19:21)

comfort, comforts, comforter, uncomforted

Definition:

The terms "comfort" and "comforter" refer to helping someone who is suffering physical or emotional pain.

- A person who comforts someone is called a "comforter."
- In the Old Testament, the term "comfort" is used to describe how God is kind and loving to his people and helps them when they are suffering.
- In the New Testament, it says that God will comfort his people through the Holy Spirit. Those who receive the comfort are then enabled to give the same comfort to others who are suffering.
- The expression "comforter of Israel" referred to the Messiah who would come to rescue his people.
- Jesus referred to the Holy Spirit as the "Comforter" who helps believers in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "comfort" could also be translated as, "ease the pain of" or "help (someone) overcome grief" or "encourage" or "console."
- A phrase such as "our comfort" could be translated as "our encouragement" or "our consoling of (someone)" or "our help in times of grieving."
- The term "comforter" could be translated as "person who comforts" or "someone who helps ease pain" or "person who encourages."
- When the Holy Spirit is called "the Comforter" this could also be translated as "the Encourager" or "the Helper" or "the One who helps and guides."
- The phrase "comforter of Israel" could be translated as, "the Messiah, who comforts Israel."
- An expression like, "they have no comforter" could also be translated as, "No one has comforted them" or "There is no one to encourage or help them."

(See also: encourage, Holy Spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:8-11
- 2 Corinthians 01:04
- 2 Samuel 10:1-3
- Acts 20:11-12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2505, H5150, H5162, H5165, H5564, H8575, G302, G3870, G3874, G3875, G3888, G3890, G3931

command, commandment

Definition:

The term "command" means to order someone to do something. The term "commandment" refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term "commandment" sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the "Ten Commandments."
- A command can be positive ("Honor your parents") or negative ("Do not steal").
- To "take command" means to "take control" or "take charge" of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, "law." Also compare with the definitions of "decree" and "statute."
- Some translators may prefer to translate "command" and "commandment" with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, statute, law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 01:06
- Matthew 01:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 01:17-19
- Romans 07:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H560, H565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G1263, G1291, G1296, G1297, G1299, G1690, G1778, G1781, G1785, G2003, G2004, G2008, G2036, G2753, G3056, G3726, G3852, G3853, G4367, G4483, G4487, G5506

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:17; 2:20; 3:4; 3:10; 3:19; 3:22; 3:23; 4:6; 4:18; 4:22; 6:8; 6:18; 6:19; 9:20; 9:27; 9:29; 9:35; 9:39; 9:42; 11:3; 13:14; 15:19; 19:23; 19:25; 19:27; 20:1; 20:15; 20:17; 20:20; 20:21; 20:25; 20:31; 21:10; 21:20; 21:21; 21:24)

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to "sanctify" or to "make holy," but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word "consecrate" has a meaning that is similar to "purify," especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God's service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "consecrate" could include, "set apart for God's service" or "purify for service to God."
- Also consider how the terms "holy" and "sanctify" are translated.

(See also: holy, pure, sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 04:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G1457, G5048

(**Go back to:** Judges 17:3)

consume, devour

Definition:

The term "consume" literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

  • In the Bible, the word "consume" often refers to destroying things or people.
  • A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
  • God is described as a "consuming fire," which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
  • To consume food means to eat or drink something.
  • The phrase, "consume the land" could be translated as "destroy the land."

Translation Suggestions

  • In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as "destroy."
  • When fire is referred to, "consume" could be translated as "burn up."
  • The burning bush that Moses saw "was not consumed" which could be translated as, "did not get burned up" or "did not burn up."
  • When referring to eating, "consume" could be translated as "eat" or "devour."
  • If someone's strength is "consumed," it means his strength is "used up" or "gone."
  • The expression, "God is a consuming fire" could be translated as, "God is like a fire that burns things up" or "God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire."

(See also: devour, wrath)

Bible References:

  • 1 Kings 18:38-40
  • Deuteronomy 07:16
  • Jeremiah 03:23-25
  • Job 07:09
  • Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H398, H402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G355, G2618, G2654, G2719, G5315

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:18)

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "covenant" refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term "new covenant" refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God's "new covenant" was explained in the part of the Bible called the "New Testament."
- This new covenant is in contrast to the "old" or "former" covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people's sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, "binding agreement" or "formal commitment" or "pledge" or "contract."
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as "promise" or "pledge."
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term "new covenant" could be translated as "new formal agreement" or "new pact" or "new contract."
- The word "new" in these expressions has the meaning of "fresh" or "new kind of" or "another."

(See also: covenant, promise)

Bible References:

- Genesis 09:12
- Genesis 17:07
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26
- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12

- Mark 14:24
- Luke 01:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 07:08
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 03:06
- Galatians 03:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:09** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **05:04** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **06:04** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **07:10** The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:02** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:04** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:05** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G802, G1242, G4934

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:1; 2:2; 2:20; 20:27)

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as "covenant faithfulness" was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms "covenant" and "faithfulness" are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: "faithful love;" "loyal, committed love;" or "loving dependability."

(See also: covenant, faithful, grace, Israel, people of God, promise)

Bible References:

- Ezra 03:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2617

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:24; Notes; 8:35)

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms "cow," "bull," "heifer," "ox," and "cattle" all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a "cow," the male is a "bull," and their offspring is a "calf."
- In the Bible, cattle were among the "clean" animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A "heifer" is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An "ox" is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is "oxen." Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to "be under a yoke" became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 01:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:03
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 01:09
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:05
- Hebrews 09:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H441, H504, H929, H1165, H1241, H1241, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H5697, H6499, H6499, H6510, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8377, H8450, H8450, G1016, G1151, G2353, G2934, G3447, G3448, G4165, G5022, G5022

(**Go back to:** Judges 6:25)

cry, cry out, outcry

Definition:

The terms "cry" or "cry out" usually mean to say something loudly or urgently. Someone can "cry out" in pain, distress, anger, or fear, often with the intent of asking for help.

- The phrase "cry out" can also mean to shout or to call out with the intent of asking for help.
- This term could also be translated as "exclaim loudly" or "urgently ask for help," depending on the context.
- An expression such as, "I cry out to you" could be translated as, "I call to you for help" or "I urgently ask you for help."

(See also: call, plead)

Bible References:

- Job 27:09
- Mark 05:5-6
- Mark 06:48-50
- Psalm 022:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1058, H2199, H2201, H6030, H6463, H6670, H6682, H6817, H6818, H6873, H6963, H7121, H7123, H7321, H7440, H7442, H7723, H7737, H7768, H7771, H7775, H8663, G310, G349, G863, G994, G995, G1916, G2019, G2799, G2805, G2896, G2905, G2906, G2929, G4377, G5455

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term "curse" means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as "cause bad things to happen to" or "declare that something bad will happen to" or "swear to cause evil things to happen to."
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as, "punish by allowing bad things to happen."
- The term "cursed" when used to describe people could be translated as, "(this person) will experience much trouble."
- The phrase "cursed be" could be translated as, "May (this person) experience great difficulties."
- The phrase, "Cursed is the ground" could be translated as, "The soil will not be very fertile."
- However, if the target language has the phrase "cursed be" and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: bless)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Galatians 03:10
- Galatians 03:14
- Genesis 03:14
- Genesis 03:17
- James 03:10
- Numbers 22:06
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:09** God said to the snake, "You are **cursed**!"
- **02:11** "Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food."
- **04:04** "I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you."
- **39:07** Then Peter vowed, saying, "May God **curse** me if I know this man!"
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G331, G332, G685, G1944, G2551, G2652, G2653, G2671, G2672, G6035

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:23; Notes; 9:27; 21:18)

cut off

Definition:

The expression "be cut off" is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God's commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God's people and from his presence.
- God also said he would "cut off" or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression "cut off" is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression "be cut off" could be translated as "be banished" or "be sent away" or "be separated from" or "be killed" or "be destroyed."
- Depending on the context, to "cut off" could be translated as, to "destroy" or to "send away" or to "separate from" or to "destroy."
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as "were stopped" or "were caused to stop flowing" or "were divided."
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:06
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G609, G851, G1581

(**Go back to:**)

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms "declare" and "declaration" refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include "proclaim," "proclamation," "announce," and "announcement."

- A "declaration" not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by "the declaration of Yahweh" or "this is what Yahweh declares." This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "declare" could also be translated as "proclaim" or "publicly state" or "strongly say" or "emphatically state."
- The term "declaration" could also be translated as "statement" or "proclamation."
- The phrase "this is Yahweh's declaration" could be translated as "this is what Yahweh declares" or "this is what Yahweh says."

(See also: preach, decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 02:16
- Ezekiel 05:11-12
- Matthew 07:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H262, H559, H816, H874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G312, G518, G669, G1229, G1344, G1555, G1718, G1834, G2097, G2511, G2605, G2607, G3140, G3670, G3724, G3822, G3870, G3955, G4296

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:17; 1:26; 2:5; 4:6; 6:24; 6:32; 7:20; 9:7; 9:54; 13:24; 15:17; 15:18; 16:18; 16:19; 16:25; 16:28; 18:23; 18:29; 21:13)

delight

Definition:

The term "delight" means great pleasure or great joy.

- To "delight in" something means to "to take pleasure in" or "take joy in" or "be happy about" it. If a person "delights in" something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called "delightful."
- The expression "my delight is in the law of Yahweh" could be translated as "the law of Yahweh gives me great joy" or "I love to obey the laws of Yahweh" or "I am happy when I obey Yahweh's commands."
- The phrases "take no delight in" and "have no delight in" could be translated as "not at all pleased by" or "not happy about."
- The phrase "delight himself in" means "he enjoys doing" something or "he is very happy about" something or someone.
- The term "delights" refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as "pleasures" or "things that give joy."
- An expression such as "I delight to do your will" could also be translated as "I enjoy doing your will" or "I am very happy when I obey you."

Bible References:

- Proverbs 08:30
- Psalm 001:02
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Solomon 01:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(**Go back to:** Judges 13:23)

deliver, deliverer, deliverance, hand over, turn over, released, rescue

Definition:

To "deliver" someone means to rescue that person. The term "deliverer" refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term "deliverance" refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called "judges" and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a "deliverer." Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term "deliver over to" or "deliver up to" has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term "deliver" can be translated as "rescue" or "liberate" or "save."
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, "deliver over" can be translated as "betray to" or "hand over" or "give over."
- The word "deliverer" can also be translated as "rescuer" or "liberator."
- When the term "deliverer" refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as "governor" or "judge" or "leader."

(See also: judge, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:10
- Acts 07:35
- Galatians 01:04
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:03** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G325, G525, G629, G1080, G1325, G1560, G1659, G1807, G1929, G2673, G3086, G3860, G4506, G4991, G5088, G5483

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:16; 2:18; 3:9; 3:15; 3:31; 6:9; 6:14; 6:15; 6:31; 6:36; 6:37; 7:2; 7:7; 8:22; 9:17; 10:12; 10:14; 12:2; 12:3; 21:17)

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as "wilderness."
- "Wilderness" conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as "deserted place" or "remote place" or "uninhabited place."

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 04:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 03:14
- Luke 01:80
- Luke 09:12-14
- Mark 01:03
- Matthew 04:01
- Matthew 11:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G2047, G2048

(**Go back to:** Judges 11:16; 11:18)

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term "destroy" means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term "destroyer" means, "a person who destroys."
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as "the destroyer of the firstborn." This could be translated as "the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males."
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called "the Destroyer." He is the "one who destroys" because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: angel, Egypt, firstborn, Passover)

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 06:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H622, H398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G355, G396, G622, G853, G1311, G1842, G2049, G2506, G2507, G2647, G2673, G2704, G3089, G3645, G4199, G5351, G5356

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:17; 21:11)

devour

Definition:

The term "devour" means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term "devour" is often used with a meaning of "completely destroy" as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as "completely consume" or "totally destroy."

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:08
- Amos 01:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 021:09

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H399, H400, H402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G2068, G2666, G2719, G5315

(**Go back to:** Judges 6:21; 9:15; 9:20; 9:27; 13:4; 13:7; 13:14; 13:16; 14:9; 19:4; 19:6; 19:8; 19:21)

die, dead, deadly, death,

Definition:

The term "death" refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To "die" means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression "put to death" refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to "die" may be expressed as to "not live." The term "dead" may be translated as "not alive" or "not having any life" or "not living."
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to "pass away" in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say "eternal death" when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say "physical death" in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression "the dead" is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as "dead people" or "people who have died." (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression "put to death" could also be translated as "kill" or "murder" or "execute."

(See also: believe, faith, life)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 02:15
- Colossians 02:20
- Genesis 02:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 05:10
- Romans 05:12
- Romans 06:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **02:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **07:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:05** "Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:08** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:07** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:02** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G336, G337, G520, G599, G615, G622, G1634, G1935, G2079, G2253, G2286, G2287, G2288, G2289, G2348, G2837, G2966, G3498, G3499, G3500, G4430, G4880, G4881, G5053, G5054

dominion

Definition:

The term "dominion" refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan's dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ's death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "authority" or "power" or "control."
- The phrase "have dominion over" could be translated as "rule over" or "manage."

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 05:10-11
- Colossians 01:13
- Jude 01:25

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G2634, G2904, G2961, G2963

(**Go back to:** Judges 8:22; 8:23; 9:2; 14:4; 15:11)

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:32-34
- 1 Samuel 09:04
- 2 Kings 04:21-22
- Deuteronomy 05:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G3678, G3688, G5268

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:14; 6:4; 15:15; 15:16; 19:3; 19:10; 19:28)

dream

Definition:

A dream is something that people see or experience in their minds while they are sleeping.

- Dreams often seem like they are really happening, but they are not.
- Sometimes God causes people to dream about something so they can learn from it. He may also speak directly to people in their dreams.
- In the Bible, God gave special dreams to certain people to give them a message, often about something that would happen in the future.
- A dream is different from a vision. Dreams happen while a person is asleep, but visions usually happen when a person is awake.

(See also: vision)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:16-17
- Daniel 01:17-18
- Daniel 02:01
- Genesis 37:06
- Genesis 40:4-5
- Matthew 02:13
- Matthew 02:19-21

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02** Joseph's brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had **dreamed** that he would be their ruler.
- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two **dreams** that disturbed him greatly. None of his advisors could tell him the meaning of the **dreams**.
- **08:07** God had given Joseph the ability to interpret **dreams**, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison. Joseph interpreted the **dreams** for him and said, "God is going to send seven years of plentiful harvests followed by seven years of famine."
- **16:11** So that night, Gideon went down to the camp and heard a Midianite soldier telling his friend about something he had **dreamed**. The man's friend said, "This **dream** means that Gideon's army will defeat the Midianite army!"
- **23:01** He (Joseph) did not want to shame her (Mary), so he planned to quietly divorce her. Before he could do that, an angel came and spoke to him in a **dream**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1957, H2472, H2492, H2493, G1797, G1798, G3677

(**Go back to:** Judges 7:13)

earth, earthen, earthly

Definition:

The term "earth" refers to the world that human beings live on, along with all other forms of life.

- "Earth" can also refer to the ground or soil that covers the land.
- This term is often used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth. (See: metonymy)
- The expressions "let the earth be glad" and "he will judge the earth" are examples of figurative uses of this term.
- The term "earthly" usually refers to physical things in contrast to spiritual things.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, "earth" could also be translated as "world" or "land" or "dirt" or "soil."
- When used figuratively, "earth" could be translated as "people on the earth" or "people living on earth" or "everything on earth."
- Ways to translate "earthly" could include "physical" or "things of this earth" or "visible."

(See also: spirit, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 01:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 02:11-12
- Daniel 04:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 06:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 06:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H127, H772, H776, H778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G1093, G1919, G2709, G2886, G3625, G4578, G5517

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as "Egypt" and "Pathros" in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel's patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 04:7-9
- Acts 07:10
- Exodus 03:07
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 02:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:04** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **08:08** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **08:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to _Egypt_ to buy food.
- **08:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **09:01** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4713, H4714, G124, G125

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:1; 2:12; 6:8; 6:13; 10:11; 11:13; 11:16; 19:30)

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term "elder" or "older" refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term "elder" came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of social justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish "elders" continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian "elders" gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as "older men" or "spiritually mature men leading the church."

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 03:1-3
- 1 Timothy 04:14
- Acts 05:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1419, H2205, H7868, G1087, G3187, G4244, G4245, G4850

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:7; 8:14; 8:16; 11:5; 11:7; 11:8; 11:9; 11:10; 11:11; 19:16; 19:17; 19:20; 19:22; 21:16)

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the second son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes that were located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel. (See: synecdoche)
- Ephraim was apparently a very mountainous or hilly area, based on references to "the hill country of Ephraim" or "the mountains of Ephraim."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H669, H673, G2187

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:9; 3:27; 4:5; 5:14; 7:24; 8:1; 8:2; 10:1; 10:9; 12:1; 12:4; 12:5; 12:15; 17:1; 17:8; 18:2; 18:13; 19:1; 19:16; 19:18)

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "evil" can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While "evil" may describe a person's character, "wicked" may refer more to a person's behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term "wickedness" refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms "evil" and "wicked" can be translated as "bad" or "sinful" or "immoral."
- Other ways to translate these could include "not good" or "not righteous" or "not moral."
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, sin, good, righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 06:10
- 3 John 01:10
- Genesis 02:17
- Genesis 06:5-6
- Job 01:01
- Job 08:20
- Judges 09:57
- Luke 06:22-23
- Matthew 07:11-12
- Proverbs 03:07
- Psalms 022:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does."
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **04:02** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **08:12** "You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!"
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:01** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:08** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.
- **45:02** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G92, G113, G459, G932, G987, G988, G1426, G2549, G2551, G2554, G2555, G2556, G2557, G2559, G2560, G2635, G2636, G4151, G4189, G4190, G4191, G5337

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A "sheep" is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a "ram." A female sheep is called a "ewe." The plural of "sheep" is also "sheep."

- A baby sheep is called a "lamb."
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: Israel, lamb, sacrifice, shepherd)

Bible References:

- Acts 08:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 02:14
- Luke 15:05
- Mark 06:34
- Matthew 09:36
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:02** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father's **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:03** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:08** Jesus said, "All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, 'I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.'"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G4165, G4262, G4263

(**Go back to:** Judges 6:4)

exile, exiled

Definition:

The term "exile" refers to people being forced to live somewhere away from their home country.

- People are usually sent into exile for punishment or for political reasons.
- A conquered people may be taken into exile to the country of the conquering army, in order to work for them.
- The "Babylonian exile" (or "the exile") is a period in Bible history when many Jewish citizens of the region of Judah were taken from their homes and forced to live in Babylon. It lasted 70 years.
- The phrase "the exiles" refers to people who are living in exile, away from their home country.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "exile" could also be translated as to "send away" or to "force out" or to "banish."
- The term "the exile" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the sent away time" or "the time of banishment" or "the time of forced absence" or "banishment."
- Ways to translate "the exiles" could include "the exiled people" or "the people who were banished" or "the people exiled to Babylon."

(See also: Babylon, Judah)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 24:14
- Daniel 02:25-26
- Ezekiel 01:1-3
- Isaiah 20:04
- Jeremiah 29:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1541, H1546, H1547, H3212, H3318, H5080, H6808, H7617, H7622, H8689, G3927

(**Go back to:** Judges 18:30)

face, facial

Definition:

The word "face" literally refers to the front part of a person's head. This term also has several figurative meanings.

- The expression "your face" is often a figurative way of saying "you." Similarly, the expression "my face" often means "I" or "me."
- In a physical sense, to "face" someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To "face each other" means to "look directly at each other."
- Being "face to face" means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus "steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem," it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To "set one's face against" people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression "face of the land" refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a "famine covering the face of the earth" refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression "do not hide your face from your people" means "do not reject your people" or "do not desert your people" or "do not stop taking care of your people."

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to "face" could be translated as to "turn toward" or to "look at directly" or to "look at the face of."
- The expression "face to face" could be translated as "up close" or "right in front of" or "in the presence of."
- Depending on the context, the expression "before his face" could be translated as "ahead of him" or "in front of him" or "before him" or "in his presence."
- The expression "set his face toward" could be translated as "began traveling toward" or "firmly made up his mind to go to."
- The expression "hide his face from" could be translated as "turn away from" or "stop helping or protecting" or "reject."
- To "set his face against" a city or people could be translated as "look at with anger and condemn" or "refuse to accept" or "decide to reject" or "condemn and reject" or "pass judgment on."
- The expression "say it to their face" could be translated as "say it to them directly" or "say it to them in their presence" or "say it to them in person."
- The expression "on the face of the land" could also be translated as "throughout the land" or "over the whole earth" or "living throughout the earth."

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 05:04
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H600, H639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G3799, G4383, G4750

(**Go back to:** Judges 6:22; 13:20; 16:3; 18:23)

faith

Definition:

In general, the term "faith" refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To "have faith" in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To "have faith in Jesus" means to believe all of God's teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes "faith" refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression "the truths of the faith."
- In contexts such as "keep the faith" or "abandon the faith," the term "faith" refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, "faith" can be translated as "belief" or "conviction" or "confidence" or "trust."
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb "believe." (See: abstractnouns)
- The expression "keep the faith" could be translated by "keep believing in Jesus" or "continue to believe in Jesus."
- The sentence "they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith" could be translated by "they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught."
- The expression "my true son in the faith" could be translated by something like "who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus" or "my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus."

(See also: believe, faithful)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:07
- Acts 06:7
- Galatians 02:20-21
- James 02:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **05:06** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham's **faith** by saying, "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me."
- **31:07** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, "You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?"
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, "Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace."
- **38:09** Then Jesus said to Peter, "Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, G1680, G3640, G4102, G6066

(**Go back to:** Judges 18 General Notes)

faithful, faithfulness, unfaithful, unfaithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be "faithful" to God means to consistently live according to God's teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him.The state or condition of being faithful is "faithfulness."

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

The term "unfaithful" describes people who do not do what God has commanded them to do. The condition or practice of being unfaithful is "unfaithfulness."

- The people of Israel were called "unfaithful" when they began to worship idols and when they disobeyed God in other ways.
- In marriage, someone who commits adultery is "unfaithful" to his or her spouse.
- God used the term "unfaithfulness" to describe Israel's disobedient behavior. They were not obeying God or honoring him.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, "faithful" can be translated as "loyal" or "dedicated" or "dependable."
- In other contexts, "faithful" can be translated by a word or phrase that means "continuing to believe" or "persevering in believing and obeying God."
- Ways that "faithfulness" could be translated could include "persevering in believing" or "loyalty" or "trustworthiness" or "believing and obeying God."
- Depending on the context, "unfaithful" could be translated as "not faithful" or "unbelieving" or "not obedient" or "not loyal."
- The phrase "the unfaithful" could be translated as "people who are not faithful (to God)" or "unfaithful people" or "those who disobey God" or "people who rebel against God."
- The term "unfaithfulness" could be translated as "disobedience" or "disloyalty" or "not believing or obeying."
- In some languages, the term "unfaithful" is related to the word for "unbelief."

(See also: adultery, believe, disobey, faith, believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:07
- Joshua 02:14
- Judges 02:16-17
- 1 Samuel 02:9
- Psalm 012:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 01:26
- Jeremiah 09:7-9
- Hosea 05:07
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 01:07
- 1 Thessalonians 05:24
- 3 John 01:05

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:05** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:09** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **18:04** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon's **unfaithfulness**, he promised to divide the nation of Israel into two kingdoms after Solomon's death.
- **35:12** "The older son said to his father, 'All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!"
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:04** If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H529, H530, H539, H540, H571, H898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G569, G571, G4103

(**Go back to:** Introduction to Judges; Judges 11:20)

family, household

Definition:

The term "family" refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as "clan" or "household" that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of "family" to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: clan, ancestor, house)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 01:21
- Joshua 02:12-13
- Luke 02:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H251, H272, H504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G1085, G3614, G3624, G3965

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:25; 9:1; 13:2; 17:7; 18:2; 18:11)

fast, fasting

Definition:

The term to "fast" means to stop eating food for a period of time, such as for a day or more. Sometimes it also includes not drinking.

- Fasting can help people to focus on God and pray without being distracted by preparing food and eating.
- Jesus condemned the Jewish religious leaders for fasting for the wrong reasons. They fasted so that others would think they were righteous.
- Sometimes people fast because they are very sad or grieved about something.
- The verb to "fast" can also be translated as to "refrain from eating" or to "not eat."
- The noun "fast" could be translated as "time of not eating" or "time of abstaining from food."

(See also: Jewish leaders)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 20:03
- Acts 13:1-3
- Jonah 03:4-5
- Luke 05:34
- Mark 02:19
- Matthew 06:18
- Matthew 09:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:01** Immediately after Jesus was baptized, the Holy Spirit led him out into the wilderness, where he **fasted** for forty days and forty nights.
- **34:08** "'For example, I **fast** two times every week and I give you ten percent of all the money and goods that I receive.'"
- **46:10** One day, while the Christians at Antioch were **fasting** and praying, the Holy Spirit said to them, "Set apart for me Barnabas and Saul to do the work I have called them to do."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2908, H5144, H6684, H6685, G3521, G3522

(**Go back to:** Judges 20:26)

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term "favor" generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up "in favor with" God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression "find favor"with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person's request and grants it.
- A "favor" can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term "favoritism" means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term "favor" could include "approval" or "blessing" or "benefit."
- The "favorable year of Yahweh" could be translated as "the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing."
- The term "favoritism" could be translated as "partiality" or "being prejudiced" or "unjust treatment." This word is related to the word "favorite," which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 02:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:07
- 2 Corinthians 01:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G1184, G3685, G4380, G4382, G5485, G5486

fear, afraid, dread

Definition:

The terms "fear" refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term "fear" can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king. The term "dread" refers to extreme or intense fear.

Translation Suggestions:

• Depending on the context, the term "fear" can be translated in various ways, depending on the context. Some possibilities include: "be afraid;" "deeply respect," or "deep respect;" "revere," or "reverence;" or perhaps "be in awe of."
• The phrase "fear not" could also be translated as "do not be afraid" or "stop being afraid."
• The sentence "The fear of God fell on all of them" might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: "Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;" or, "Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;" or, "Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power)."

(See also: marvel, awe, Lord, power, Yahweh)

Bible References:

• 1 John 04:18
• Acts 02:43
• Acts 19:15-17
• Genesis 50:21
• Isaiah 11:3-5
• Job 06:14
• Jonah 01:09
• Luke 12:05
• Matthew 10:28
• Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

• Strong's: H367, H926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G870, G1167, G1168, G1169, G1630, G1719, G2124, G2125, G2962, G5398, G5399, G5400, G5401

(**Go back to:** Judges 4:18; 6:10; 6:23; 6:27; 8:20; 13:6)

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term "feast" is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called "feasts."
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to "feast" could also be translated as to "eat lavishly" or to "celebrate by eating lots of food" or to "eat a special, large meal."
- Depending on the context, "feast" could be translated as "celebrating together with a large meal" or "a meal with a lot of food" or "a celebration meal."

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 02:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 01:12-13
- Luke 02:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G26, G1062, G1173, G1859, G2165, G4910

(**Go back to:** Judges 14:10; 21:19)

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- The term "fire" is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase "baptize with fire" could also be translated as "cause to experience suffering in order to be purified."

(See also: pure)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 01:10
- 2 Thessalonians 01:08
- Acts 07:29-30
- John 15:06
- Luke 03:16
- Matthew 03:12
- Nehemiah 01:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H215, H217, H398, H784, H800, H801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G439, G440, G1067, G2741, G4442, G4443, G4447, G4448, G4451, G5394, G5457

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:8; 6:21; 9:15; 9:20; 9:49; 9:52; 12:1; 14:15; 15:5; 15:6; 15:14; 16:9; 18:27; 20:48)

firstborn

Definition:

The term "firstborn" refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, "firstborn" usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God's firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God's firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When "first-born" occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as "firstborn male" or "firstborn son," since that is what is implied. (See: Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information)
- Other ways to translate this term could include "the son who was born first" or "the eldest son" or "the number one son."
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means "the son who has authority over everything" or "the Son who is first in honor."
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: inherit, sacrifice, son)

Bible References:

- Colossians 01:15
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 02:6-7
- Revelation 01:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G4416, G5207

(**Go back to:** Judges 8:20)

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "flesh" literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term "flesh" in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term "flesh" is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression "own flesh and blood" refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression "flesh and blood" can also refer to a person's ancestors or descendants.
- The expression "one flesh" refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal's body, "flesh" could be translated as "body" or "skin" or "meat."
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as "living beings" or "everything that is alive."
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as "people" or "human beings" or "everyone who lives."
- The expression "flesh and blood" could also be translated as "relatives" or "family" or "kinfolk" or "family clan." There may be contexts where it could be translated as "ancestors" or "descendants."
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to "flesh and blood."
- The expression "become one flesh" could be translated as "unite sexually" or "become as one body" or "become like one person in body and spirit." The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: euphemism). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who "become one flesh" literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:16
- 2 John 01:07
- Ephesians 06:12
- Galatians 01:16
- Genesis 02:24
- John 01:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 08:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G2907, G4559, G4560, G4561

(**Go back to:** Judges 8:7)

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, "flock" refers to a group of sheep or goats and "herd" refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.
- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both sheep and cattle, then you may need to say "groups of sheep" where the Bible says only "flocks," and "groups of cattle" where the Bible says only "herds."

(See also: goat, cow, pig, sheep)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 02:8-9
- Matthew 08:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G34, G4167, G4168

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:16)

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term "forsake" means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been "forsaken" has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people "forsake" God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God "forsakes" people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God's teachings.
- The term "forsaken" can be used in the past tense, as in "he has forsaken you" or as in referring to someone who has "been forsaken."

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "abandon" or "neglect" or "give up" or "go away from" or "leave behind," depending on the context.
- To "forsake" God's law could be translated "disobey God's law." This could also be translated as "abandon" or "give up on" or "stop obeying" his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase "be forsaken" can be translated as "be abandoned" or "be deserted."
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 06:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 071:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G646, G657, G863, G1459, G2641,

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:21; 10:10; 10:13)

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

A "gate" is a hinged barrier at an access point in a fence or wall that surrounds a house or city. The "gate bar" refers to a wooden or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the gate cannot be opened from the outside.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A city gate was often the news and social center of a village. It was also where business transactions occurred and judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate "gate" could be "door" or "wall opening" or "barrier" or "entranceway."
- The phrase "bars of the gate" could be translated as "gate bolts" or "wooden beams to lock the gate" or "metal locking rods of the gate."

Bible References:

- Acts 09:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:01
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 07:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G2374, G4439, G4440

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:23; 3:24; 3:25; 5:8; 9:35; 9:40; 9:44; 16:2; 16:3; 18:16; 18:17; 19:27)

generation

Definition:

The term "generation" generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term "generation" is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase "this generation" or "people of this generation" could be translated as "the people living now" or "you people."
- "This wicked generation" could also be translated as "these wicked people living now."
- The expression "from generation to generation" or "from one generation to the next" could be translated as "people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren" or "people in every time period" or "people in this time period and future time periods" or "all people and their descendants."
- "A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh" could also be translated as "Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him."

(See also: descendant, evil, ancestor)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 03:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:07
- Mark 08:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1755, H1859, H8435, G1074

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:10; 3:2)

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the "hill country of Gilead" or "Mount Gilead."
- "Gilead" was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Gad, Jephthah, Manasseh, Reuben, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:22
- 1 Samuel 11:01
- Amos 01:03
- Deuteronomy 02:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1568, H1569

(**Go back to:** Judges 7:3; 10:3; 10:4; 11:1; 11:29; 11:40; 12:7; 20:1)

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term "gird" means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, "gird up the loins" refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean "get ready to work" or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression "gird up the loins" could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as "prepare yourself for action" or "get yourself ready."
- The term "girded with" could be translated as "encircled by" or wrapped with" or "belted with."

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:13
- Job 38:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H640, H247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G328, G1241, G4024

glean, gleanings

Definition:

The term "glean" means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God commanded the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain. A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate "glean" can be "pick up" or "gather" or "collect."

(See also: Boaz, grain, harvest, Ruth)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:06
- Ruth 02:02
- Ruth 02:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:7; 11:3)

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term "glory" is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term "glorify" means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term "glory" is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God's character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to "glory in" means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase "the glory of Yahweh" in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh's presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term "glorify" carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate "glory" could include "splendor" or "majesty" or "awesome greatness" or "extreme value."
- The term "glorious" could be translated as "full of glory" or "extremely valuable" or "brightly shining" or "awesomely majestic."
- The expression "give glory to God" could be translated as "honor God's greatness" or "praise God because of his splendor" or "tell others how great God is."
- The expression "glory in" could also be translated as "praise" or "take pride in" or "boast about" or "take pleasure in."
- "Glorify" could also be translated as "give glory to" or "bring glory to" or "cause to appear great."
- The phrase "glorify God" could also be translated as "praise God" or "talk about God's greatness" or "show how great God is" or "honor God (by obeying him)."
- The term "be glorified" could also be translated as, "be shown to be very great" or "be praised" or "be exalted."

(See also: honor, majesty, exalt, obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:02
- Luke 18:43
- Luke 02:09
- John 12:28

- Acts 03:13-14
- Acts 07:1-3
- Romans 08:17
- 1 Corinthians 06:19-20
- Philippians 02:14-16
- Philippians 04:19
- Colossians 03:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 02:05
- James 02:1-4
- 1 Peter 04:15-16
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **25:06** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, "I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me."
- **37:01** When Jesus heard this news, he said, "This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God."
- **37:08** Jesus responded, "Did I not tell you that you would see God's **glory** if you believe in me?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H142, H155, H215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G1391, G1392, G1740, G1741, G2744, G4888

(**Go back to:** Judges 7 General Notes)

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "God" refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God's personal name is "Yahweh."

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as "Yahweh," which means "he is" or "I am" or "the One who (always) exists."
- The Bible also teaches about false "gods," which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "God" could include "Deity" or "Creator" or "Supreme Being" or "Supreme Creator" or "Infinite Sovereign Lord" or "Eternal Supreme Being."
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for "God" in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for "God" and "god." NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word "god," it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase "I will be their God and they will be my people" could also be translated as "I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: create, false god, God the Father, Holy Spirit, false god, Son of God, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 04:10
- Colossians 01:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 03:1-2
- Genesis 01:02
- Hosea 04:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 02:20
- Jeremiah 05:05
- John 01:03
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Lamentations 03:43
- Micah 04:05
- Philippians 02:06
- Proverbs 24:12
- Psalms 047:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **01:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **05:03** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **09:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:02** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:07** You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:09** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:07** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:01** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:09** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H136, H305, H410, H426, H430, H433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G112, G516, G932, G935, G1096, G1140, G2098, G2124, G2128, G2150, G2152, G2153, G2299, G2304, G2305, G2312, G2313, G2314, G2315, G2316, G2317, G2318, G2319, G2320, G3361, G3785, G4151, G5207, G5377, G5463, G5537, G5538

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term "goddess" refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God's people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as "idolatrous" if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An "idolatrous kingdom" means a "kingdom of people who worship idols" or a "kingdom of people who worship earthly things."
- The term "idolatrous figure" is another word for a "carved image" or an "idol."

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for "god" or "false god" in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term "idol" could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case "g" is used to refer to false gods, and upper case "G" is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: God, Asherah, Baal, Molech, demon, image, kingdom, worship)

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:02
- Exodus 32:01
- Psalms 031:06
- Psalms 081:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 07:41
- Acts 07:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 02:22
- Galatians 04:8-9
- Galatians 05:19-21
- Colossians 03:05
- 1 Thessalonians 01:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:02** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:02** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H367, H410, H426, H430, H457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G1493, G1494, G1495, G1496, G1497, G2299, G2712

(**Go back to:** Judges 3 General Notes)

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term "golden" or "gold-covered" or "gold-overlaid" could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as "gold-colored," which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: altar, ark of the covenant, false god, silver, tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:07
- 1 Timothy 02:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 01:15
- Acts 03:06
- Daniel 02:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G5552, G5553, G5554, G5557

(**Go back to:** Judges 8:24; 8:26)

good, right, pleasant, pleasing, better, best

Definition:

The word "good" has different meanings depending on the context. Many languages will use different words to translate these different meanings.

- In general, something is good if it fits with God's character, purposes, and will.
- Something that is "good" could be pleasing, excellent, helpful, suitable, profitable, or morally right.
- Land that is "good" could be called "fertile" or "productive."
- A "good" crop could be a "plentiful" crop.
- A person can be "good" at what they do if they are skillful at their task or profession, as in, the expression, "a good farmer."
- In the Bible, the general meaning of "good" is often contrasted with "evil."
- The term "goodness" usually refers to being morally good or righteous in thoughts and actions.
- The goodness of God refers to how he blesses people by giving them good and beneficial things. It also can refer to his moral perfection.

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for "good" in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include "kind" or "excellent" or "pleasing to God" or "righteous" or "morally upright" or "profitable."
- "Good land" could be translated as "fertile land" or "productive land"; a "good crop" could be translated as a "plentiful harvest" or "large amount of crops."
- The phrase "do good to" means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as "be kind to" or "help" or "benefit" someone.
- To "do good on the Sabbath" means to "do things that help others on the Sabbath."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term "goodness" could include "blessing" or "kindness" or "moral perfection" or "righteousness" or "purity."

(See also: evil, holy, profit, righteous)

Bible References:

- Galatians 05:22-24
- Genesis 01:12
- Genesis 02:09
- Genesis 02:17
- James 03:13
- Romans 02:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:04** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **01:11** God planted…the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil."
- **01:12** Then God said, "It is not **good** for man to be alone."
- **02:04** "God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does."
- **08:12** "You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good**!"
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he tTable of Contentsrusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.

- **28:01** "**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?" Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me '**good**?' There is only one who is **good**, and that is God."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H145, H155, H202, H239, H410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G14, G15, G18, G19, G515, G744, G865, G979, G1380, G2095, G2097, G2106, G2107, G2108, G2109, G2114, G2115, G2133, G2140, G2162, G2163, G2174, G2293, G2565, G2567, G2570, G2573, G2887, G2986, G3140, G3617, G3776, G4147, G4632, G4674, G4851, G5223, G5224, G5358, G5542, G5543, G5544

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: burnt offering, guilt offering , sacrifice, sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:15; 3:17; 3:18; 6:18; 13:19; 13:23)

hand

Definition:

The word "hand" refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. In the Bible, this term is associated with a person's power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term "hand" include the following:

- To "lay a hand on" means to "harm."
- To "save from the hand of" means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being "on the right hand" means "on the right side" or "to the right."
- The expression "by the hand of" someone means "by" or "through" the action of that person. For example, the phrase "by the hand of the Lord" means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as "hand over to" or "deliver into the hands of" refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term "laying on of hands" can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God's service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says "written by my hand," it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression "handed him the scroll" could also be translated as "gave him the scroll" or "put the scroll in his hand." It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as "delivered them into the hands of their enemies" or "handed them over to their enemies," could be translated as, "allowed their enemies to conquer them" or "caused them to be captured by their enemies" or "empowered their enemies to gain control over them."
- To "die by the hand of" could be translated as "be killed by."
- The expression "on the right hand of" could be translated as "on the right side of."
- In regard to Jesus being "seated at the right hand of God," if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: "on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority."

(See also: adversary, bless, captive, honor, power)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:25
- Acts 08:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 09:05
- Genesis 14:20
- John 03:35
- Mark 07:32
- Matthew 06:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G710, G1188, G1448, G1451, G2176, G2902, G4084, G4474, G5495, G5496, G5497

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:2; 1:4; 1:6; 1:7; 1:35; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:23; 3:4; 3:8; 3:10; 3:15; 3:21; 3:28; 3:30; 4:2; 4:7; 4:9; 4:14; 4:21; 4:24; 5:26; 6:1; 6:2; 6:9; 6:14; 6:21; 6:36; 6:37; 7:2; 7:6; 7:7; 7:8; 7:9; 7:11; 7:14; 7:15; 7:16; 7:19; 7:20; 8:3; 8:6; 8:7; 8:15; 8:22; 8:34; 9:16; 9:17; 9:24; 9:29; 9:33; 9:48; 10:7; 10:12; 11:21; 11:26; 11:30; 11:32; 12:2; 12:3; 13:1; 13:5; 13:23; 14:6; 14:9; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:15; 15:17; 15:18; 16:18; 16:23; 16:24; 16:26; 17:3; 17:5; 17:12; 18:10; 18:19; 19:27; 20:16; 20:28)

harvest, reap

Definition:

The term "harvest" refers to the gather the ripe fruits, vegetables, seeds, or grains from the plants on which they were growing. The term "reap" means to harvest crops.

- The harvest time normally happens at the end of a growing season.
- The Israelites held a "Festival of Harvest" or "Festival of Ingathering" to celebrate the reaping of the food crops. God commanded them to offer the first fruits of these crops as a sacrifice to him.
- In biblical times, reapers usually harvested crops by hand, either pulling up the plants or cutting them with a sharp cutting tool.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate the concept with the word that is commonly used in the language to refer to the harvesting of crops.
- The event of harvesting could be translated as, "time of gathering in" or "crop gathering time" or "fruit picking time."
- The verb to "harvest" could be translated as, to "gather in" or to "pick up" or to "collect."

(See also: firstfruits, festival, good news)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 09:9-11
- 2 Samuel 21:7-9
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Isaiah 17:11
- James 05:7-8
- Leviticus 19:09
- Matthew 09:38
- Ruth 01:22
- Galatians 06:9-10
- Matthew 06:25-26
- Matthew 13:30
- Matthew 13:36-39
- Matthew 25:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2758, H4395, H4672 H7105, H7114, H7938, G270, G2325, G2326, G2327

head

Definition:

The word "head" refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including "top," "first," "beginning," "source," and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term "head" include:

- The expression "no razor will ever touch his head" means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression "let their blood be on his own head" means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression "heads of grain" refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression "head of a mountain" refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term "head" can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term "head" refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase "You have made me the head over nations" means "You have made me the ruler…" or "You have given me authority over.…"

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "head" could be translated as "authority" or "ruler" or "the one who is responsible for."
- The expression "will be on his own head" could be translated as "will be on him" or "he will be punished for" or "he will be held responsible for" or "he will be considered guilty for."
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include "top" or "beginning" or "source" or "leader."

(See also: grain)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:51-54
- 1 Kings 08:1-2
- 1 Samuel 09:22
- Colossians 02:10
- Colossians 02:19
- Numbers 01:04

Word Data:

- Strong's: H441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G346, G755, G2775, G2776, G4719

heart

Definition:

The term "heart" refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term "heart" is often used figuratively to refer to a person's thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a "hard heart" is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression "take it to heart" means to treat something seriously and apply it to one's life.
- The term "brokenhearted" describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as "stomach" or "liver" to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If "heart" or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as "thoughts" or "emotions" or "desires."
- Depending on the context, "with all my heart" or "with my whole heart" could be translated as "with all my energy" or "with complete dedication" or "completely" or "with total commitment."
- The expression "take it to heart" could be translated as "treat it seriously" or "carefully think about it."
- The expression "hard-hearted" could also be translated as "stubbornly rebellious" or "refusing to obey" or "continually disobeying God."
- Ways to translate "brokenhearted" could include "very sad" or "feeling deeply hurt."

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 03:17
- 1 Thessalonians 02:04
- 2 Thessalonians 03:13-15
- Acts 08:22
- Acts 15:09
- Luke 08:15
- Mark 02:06
- Matthew 05:08
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G674, G1282, G1271, G2133, G2588, G2589, G4641, G4698, G5590

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:9; 5:15; 5:16; 9:3; 16:17; 16:18; 16:25; 18:20; 19:3; 19:5; 19:6; 19:8; 19:9; 19:22)

heaven, sky, heavens, heavenly

Definition:

The term that is translated as "heaven" usually refers to where God lives. The same word can also mean "sky," depending on the context.

- The term "heavens" refers to everything we see above the earth, including the sun, moon, and stars. It also includes the heavenly bodies, such as far-off planets, that we can't directly see from the earth.
- The term "sky" refers to the blue expanse above the earth that has clouds and the air we breathe. Often the sun and moon are also said to be "up in the sky."
- In some contexts in the Bible, the word "heaven" could refer to either the sky or the place where God lives.

Translation Suggestions:

- For "kingdom of heaven" in the book of Matthew, it is best to keep the word "heaven" since this is distinctive to Matthew's gospel.
- The terms "heavens" or "heavenly bodies" could also be translated as, "sun, moon, and stars" or "all the stars in the universe."
- The phrase, "stars of heaven" could be translated as "stars in the sky" or "stars in the galaxy" or "stars in the universe."

(See also: kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:22-24
- 1 Thessalonians 01:8-10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:17
- Deuteronomy 09:01
- Ephesians 06:9
- Genesis 01:01
- Genesis 07:11
- John 03:12
- John 03:27
- Matthew 05:18
- Matthew 05:46-48

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:02** They even began building a tall tower to reach **heaven**.
- **14:11** He (God) gave them bread from **heaven**, called "manna."
- **23:07** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, "Glory to God in **heaven** and peace on earth to the people he favors!"
- **29:09** Then Jesus said, "This is what my **heavenly** Father will do to every one of you if you do not forgive your brother from your heart."
- **37:09** Then Jesus looked up to **heaven** and said, "Father, thank you for hearing me."
- **42:11** Then Jesus went up to **heaven**, and a cloud hid him from their sight.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1534, H6160, H6183, H7834, H8064, H8065, G932, G2032, G3321, G3770, G3771, G3772

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:4; 5:20; 13:20; 20:40)

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: descendant, Esau, foreigner, Ham, mighty, Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 01:4-5
- Nehemiah 09:08
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:26; 3:5)

Holy Spirit, Spirit of God, Spirit of the Lord, Spirit

Facts:

These terms all refer to the Holy Spirit, who is God. The one true God exists eternally as the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit.

- The Holy Spirit is also referred to as "the Spirit" and "Spirit of Yahweh" and "Spirit of truth."
- Because the Holy Spirit is God, he is absolutely holy, infinitely pure, and morally perfect in all his nature and in everything he does.
- Along with the Father and the Son, the Holy Spirit was active in creating the world.
- When God's Son, Jesus, returned to heaven, God sent the Holy Spirit to his people to lead them, teach them, comfort them, and enable them to do God's will.
- The Holy Spirit guided Jesus and he guides those who believe in Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could simply be translated with the words used to translate "holy" and "spirit."
- Ways to translate this term could also include "Pure Spirit" or "Spirit who is Holy" or "God the Spirit."

(See also: holy, spirit, God, Lord, God the Father, Son of God, gift)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:10
- 1 Thessalonians 04:7-8
- Acts 08:17
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 01:1-2
- Isaiah 63:10
- Job 33:04
- Matthew 12:31
- Matthew 28:18-19
- Psalms 051:10-11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:01** But **God's Spirit** was there over the water.
- **24:08** When Jesus came up out of the water after being baptized, **the Spirit of God** appeared in the form of a dove and came down and rested on him.
- **26:01** After overcoming Satan's temptations, Jesus returned in the power of **the Holy Spirit** to the region of Galilee where he lived.
- **26:03** Jesus read, "God has given me **his Spirit** so that I can proclaim good news to the poor, freedom to captives, recovery of sight for the blind, and release to the oppressed."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all people groups by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and **the Holy Spirit** and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **43:03** They were all filled with the **Holy Spirit** and they began to speak in other languages.
- **43:08** "And Jesus has sent the **Holy Spirit** just as he promised he would do. The **Holy Spirit** is causing the things that you are are now seeing and hearing."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your sins. Then he will also give you the gift of the **Holy Spirit**."
- **45:01** He (Stephen) had a good reputation and was full of the **Holy Spirit** and of wisdom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3068, H6944, H7307, G40, G4151

(**Go back to:** Judges 15 General Notes)

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

"Honey" is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God's words and decrees are said to be "sweeter than honey." (See also: Simile, Metaphor)
- Sometimes a person's words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 06:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 05:06
- Proverbs 05:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G3192

(**Go back to:** Judges 14:8)

horse, warhorse, horseback

Definition:

A horse is a large, four-legged animal that in Bible times was mostly used for doing farm work and for transporting people.

- Some horses were used to pull carts or chariots, while others were used to carry individual riders.
- Horses often wear a bit and bridle on their heads so they can be guided.
- In the Bible, horses were considered to be valuable possessions and a measure of wealth, mainly because of their use in war. For example, part of King Solomon's great wealth was the thousands of horses and chariots that he had.
- Animals that are similar to the horse are the donkey and the mule.

(See also: chariot, , donkey, Solomon)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:04
- 2 Kings 02:11
- Exodus 14:23-25
- Ezekiel 23:5-7
- Zechariah 06:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H47, H5483, H5484, H6571, H7409, G2462

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:22)

house

Definition:

The term "house" refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as "household" or "descendants," etc.

- Sometimes the term "house" means "household," referring to the people who live together in one house.
- Sometimes the term "house" means "family" or "descendants," referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase "house of David" refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms "house of God" and "house of Yahweh" refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase "house of Israel" can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, "house" could be translated as "household" or "people" or "family" or "descendants" or "temple" or "dwelling place."
- The phrase "house of David" could be translated as "clan of David" or "family of David" or "descendants of David." Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate "house of Israel" could include "people of Israel" or "Israel's descendants" or "Israelites."
- The phrase "house of Yahweh" could be translated as "Yahweh's temple" or "place where Yahweh is worshiped" or "place where Yahweh meets with his people" or "where Yahweh dwells." The phrase "house of God" could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: David, descendant, house of God, household, kingdom of Israel, tabernacle, temple, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:42
- Acts 07:49
- Genesis 39:04
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 08:39
- Matthew 10:06
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1005, G3609, G3613, G3614, G3624

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:22; 1:23; 1:35; 4:17; 6:8; 6:27; 8:35; 9:1; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:16; 9:18; 9:19; 9:20; 9:27; 9:46; 11:7; 11:31; 11:34; 12:1; 14:15; 14:19; 16:25; 16:26; 16:29; 16:30; 16:31; 17:5; 17:8; 18:2; 18:3; 18:13; 18:15; 18:18; 18:19; 18:22; 18:25; 18:26; 18:31; 19:2; 19:3; 19:15; 19:18; 19:21; 19:22; 19:23; 19:26; 19:27; 19:29; 20:5; 20:8)

household

Definition:

The term "household" refers to all the people who live together in a house, including family members and all their servants.

- Managing a household would involves directing the servants and also taking care of the property.
- Sometimes "household" can refer figuratively to the whole family line of someone, especially his descendants.

(See also: house)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:10
- Galatians 06:10
- Genesis 07:01
- Genesis 34:19
- John 04:53
- Matthew 10:25
- Matthew 10:36
- Philippians 04:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H5657, G2322, G3609, G3614, G3615, G3616, G3623, G3624

(**Go back to:** Judges 16:27)

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term "humble" describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one's weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one's own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one's gifts and abilities.
- The phrase "be humble" could be translated as "don't be prideful."
- "Humble yourself before God" could be translated as "Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness."

(See also: proud)

Bible References:

- James 01:21
- James 03:13
- James 04:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:04
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:02** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** "God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G858, G4236, G4239, G4240, G5011, G5012, G5013, G5391

(**Go back to:** Judges 16:5; 16:6; 16:19)

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term "inherit" refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after the parent(s) die. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An "inheritance" is the thing(s) that is received, and an "heir" is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term "inherit" could be translated might include "receive" or "possess" or "come into possession of."
- Ways to translate "inheritance" could include "promised gift" or "secure possession."
- The term "heir" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "privileged child who receives the father's possessions."
- The term "heritage" could be translated as "inherited blessings."

(See also: heir, Canaan, Promised Land)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- 1 Peter 01:04
- 2 Samuel 21:03
- Acts 07:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 05:21
- Genesis 15:07
- Hebrews 09:15
- Jeremiah 02:07
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 079:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:06** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**."
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?"
- **35:03** "There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, 'Father, I want my **inheritance** now!' So the father divided his property between the two sons."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G2816, G2817, G2819, G2820

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:19; 1:20; 1:28; 2:9; 3:13; 11:2; 11:21; 11:22; Notes; 18:1; 20:6; 21:17; 21:23)

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. The name means "he struggles with God."

- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: Jacob, kingdom of Israel, Judah, nation, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:01
- 1 Kings 08:02
- Acts 02:36
- Acts 07:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 02:06
- Matthew 27:09
- Philippians 03:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **09:03** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **09:05** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:01** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of _Israel_ complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:09** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** _ *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave* _**Israel** peace along all its borders.
- **16:16** So God punished _Israel_ again for worshiping idols.
- **43:06** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G935, G2474, G2475

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:1; 1:28; 2:4; 2:6; 2:7; 2:10; 2:11; 2:14; 2:20; 2:22; 3:1; 3:2; 3:4; 3:5; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:27; 3:30; 3:31; 4:1; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:6; 4:23; 4:24; 5:2; 5:3; 5:5; 5:7; 5:8; 5:9; 5:11; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:4; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:14; 6:15; 6:36; 6:37; 7:2; 7:8; 7:14; 7:15; 7:23; 8:22; 8:27; 8:28; 8:33; 8:34; 8:35; 9:22; 9:55; 10:1; 10:2; 10:3; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:9; 10:10; 10:11; 10:15; 10:16; 10:17; 11:4; 11:5; 11:13; 11:15; 11:16; 11:17; 11:19; 11:20; 11:21; 11:23; 11:25; 11:26; 11:27; 11:33; 11:39; 11:40; 12:7; 12:8; 12:9; 12:11; 12:13; 12:14; 13:1; 13:5; 14:4; 15:20; 16:31; 17:6; 18:1;

18:19; 18:29; 19:1; 19:12; 19:29; 19:30; 20:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:6; 20:7; 20:10; 20:11; 20:12; 20:13; 20:14; 20:17; 20:18; 20:19; 20:20; 20:21; 20:22; 20:23; 20:24; 20:25; 20:26; 20:27; 20:29; 20:30; 20:31; 20:32; 20:33; 20:34; 20:35; 20:36; 20:38; 20:39; 20:41; 20:42; 20:48; 21:1; 21:3; 21:5; 21:6; 21:8; 21:15; 21:17; 21:18; 21:24; 21:25)

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 01:14
- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- Exodus 03:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Judges 01:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:21; 3:5; 19:11)

Jerusalem

Facts:

Jerusalem was originally an ancient Canaanite city that later became the most important city in Israel. It is located about 34 kilometers west of the Salt Sea and just north of Bethlehem. It is still the capital city of Israel today.

  • The name "Jerusalem" is first mentioned in the book of Joshua. Other Old Testament names for this city include "Salem" "city of Jebus," and "Zion." Both "Jerusalem" and "Salem," have the root meaning of "peace."
  • Jerusalem was originally a Jebusite fortress called "Zion" which King David captured and made into his capital city.
  • It was in Jerusalem that David's son Solomon built the first temple in Jerusalem, on Mount Moriah, which was the mountain where Abraham had offered his son Isaac to God. The temple was rebuilt there after it was destroyed by the Babylonians.
  • Because the temple was in Jerusalem, the major Jewish festivals were celebrated there.
  • People normally referred to going "up" to Jerusalem since it is located in the mountains.

(See also: Babylon, Christ, David, Jebusites, Jesus, Solomon, temple, Zion)

Bible References:

  • Galatians 04:26-27
  • John 02:13
  • Luke 04:9-11
  • Luke 13:05
  • Mark 03:7-8
  • Mark 03:20-22
  • Matthew 03:06
  • Matthew 04:23-25
  • Matthew 20:17

Examples from the Bible stories:

  • **17:05** David conquered **Jerusalem** and made it his capital city.
  • **18:02** In **Jerusalem**, Solomon built the Temple for which his father David had planned and gathered materials.
  • **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of **Jerusalem**, destroyed the Temple, and took away all the treasures of the city and the Temple.
  • **20:12** So, after seventy years in exile, a small group of Jews returned to the city of **Jerusalem** in Judah.
  • **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began preaching and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in **Jerusalem**, and that he would be killed there.
  • **38:02** After Jesus and the disciples arrived in **Jerusalem**, Judas went to the Jewish leaders and offered to betray Jesus to them in exchange for money.
  • **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in **Jerusalem**, and then go to all people groups everywhere."
  • **42:11** Forty days after Jesus rose from the dead, he told his disciples, "Stay in **Jerusalem** until you receive power when the Holy Spirit comes on you."

Word Data:

  • Strong's: H3389, H3390, G2414, G2415, G2419

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as "the Jordan."

(See also: Canaan, Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 01:26-28
- John 03:25-26
- Luke 03:3
- Matthew 03:06
- Matthew 03:13-15
- Matthew 04:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:02** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G2446

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:28; 5:17; 7:24; 8:4; 10:8; 10:9; 11:13; 11:22; 12:5; 12:6)

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was the eleventh son of Jacob and the first son of his mother Rachel.

- Joseph was his father's favorite son.
- His brothers were jealous of him and sold him into slavery.
- While in Egypt, Joseph was falsely accused and put into prison.
- In spite of his difficulties, Joseph remained faithful to God.
- God brought him to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save people in a time when there was little food. The people of Egypt, as well as his own family, were kept from starving.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Egypt, Jacob)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 04:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:02 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **08:04** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **08:05** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **08:07** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **08:09 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **09:02** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G2500, G2501

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:22; 1:23; 1:35)

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, Haggai, Jericho, Moses, Promised Land, Zechariah (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 07:25-27
- Deuteronomy 03:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 01:03
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:04** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:06** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:08** Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15 Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:03** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G2424

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:1; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:21; 2:23)

joy, joyful, enjoy, rejoice, gladness, rejoicing

Definition:

joy

The term "joy" refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term "joyful" describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term "rejoice" means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as "be very happy" or "be very glad" or "be full of joy."
- When Mary said "my soul rejoices in God my Savior," she meant "God my Savior has made me very happy" or "I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me."

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "joy" could also be translated as "gladness" or "delight" or "great happiness."
- The phrase, "be joyful" could be translated as "rejoice" or "be very glad" or it could be translated "be very happy in God's goodness."
- A person who is joyful could be described as "very happy" or "delighted" or "deeply glad."
- A phrase such as "make a joyful shout" could be translated as "shout in a way that shows you are very happy."
- A "joyful city" or "joyful house" could be translated as "city where joyful people live" or "house full of joyful people" or "city whose people are very happy." (See: metonymy)

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 08:10
- Psalm 048:02
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 02:9-10
- Luke 15:07
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 03:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 05:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 05:23
- Philippians 04:10-13
- 1 Thessalonians 01:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 05:16
- Philemon 01:4-7

- James 01:02
- 3 John 01:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:04** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:07** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G20, G21, G2165, G2167, G2744, G4640, G4796, G4913, G5463, G5479

(**Go back to:**)

Judah

Facts:

Judah was one of Jacob's older sons. His mother was Leah. His descendants were called the "tribe of Judah." When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah, which includes the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem.

- It was Judah who told his brothers to sell their younger brother Joseph as a slave instead of leaving him to die in a deep pit.
- King David and all the kings after him were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- When Solomon's reign ended and the nation of Israel divided, the kingdom of Judah was the southern kingdom.
- In the New Testament book of Revelation, Jesus is called the "Lion of Judah."
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Jew, Judah, Judea, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 01:09
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:02
- Luke 03:33
- Ruth 01:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(**Go back to:** Judges 10:9; 15:9; 15:11; 18:12)

Judea

Facts:

The term "Judea" refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes "Judea" is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province "Judah."
- Other times "Judea" has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as "Judea Country" and the narrow sense could be translated as "Judea Province," or "Judah Province" since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Galilee, Edom, Judah, Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14
- Acts 02:09
- Acts 09:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 03:22-24
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 04:44
- Luke 05:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 02:01
- Matthew 02:05
- Matthew 02:22-23
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 19:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: G2453

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:2; 1:3; 1:4; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:16; 1:17; 1:18; 1:19; 15:10; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 19:1; 19:2; 19:18; 20:18)

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms "judge" and "judgment" often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right.

- The "judgment of God" often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God's judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term "judge" can also mean "condemn." God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is "arbitrate between" or "judge between," as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God's "judgments" are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- "Judgment" can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks "judgment" does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to "judge" could include to "decide" or to "condemn" or to "punish" or to "decree."
- The term "judgment" could be translated as "punishment" or "decision" or "verdict" or "decree" or "condemnation."
- In some contexts, the phrase "in the judgment" could also be translated as "on judgment day" or "during the time when God judges people."

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, just, law, law)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:17
- 1 Kings 03:09
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 03:14
- James 02:04
- Luke 06:37
- Micah 03:9-11
- Psalm 054:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:08** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, "We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment**?"
- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H148, H430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G144, G350, G968, G1106, G1252, G1341, G1345, G1348, G1349, G2917, G2919, G2920, G2922, G2923, G4232

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:18; 2:19; 3:10; 10:2; 10:3; 11:27; 12:7; 12:8; 12:9; 12:11; 12:13; 12:14; 13:12; Notes; 15:20)

king, kingdom, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "king" refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God is as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: "king of the Jews;" "king of Israel;" and "king of kings."
- Depending on the context, the term "king" might also be translated as "supreme chief" or "sovereign ruler."
- The phrase "king of kings" might be translated as "king who rules over all other kings" or "supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers."

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, kingdom, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 06:15-16
- 2 Kings 05:18
- 2 Samuel 05:03
- Acts 07:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 01:49-51
- Luke 01:05
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 05:35
- Matthew 14:09

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **08:06** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:01** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:05** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:06** God's prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4427, H4428, H4430, G935, G936

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term "know" and "knowledge" means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression "to make known" means to tell information.

- The term "knowledge" refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To "know about" God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To "know" God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God's will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To "know the Law" means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes "knowledge" is used as a synonym for "wisdom," which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The "knowledge of God" is sometimes used as a synonym for the "fear of Yahweh."

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "know" could include "understand" or "be familiar with" or "be aware of" or "be acquainted with" or "be in relationship with."
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as "distinguish." When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition "between."
- Some languages have two different words for "know," one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term "make known" could be translated as "cause people to know" or "reveal" or "tell about" or "explain."
- To "know about" something could be translated as "be aware of" or "be familiar with."
- The expression "know how to" means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as "be able to" or "have the skill to."
- The term "knowledge" could also be translated as "what is known" or "wisdom" or "understanding," depending on the context.

(See also: law, reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 02:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 02:15
- 2 Peter 01:3-4
- Deuteronomy 04:39-40
- Genesis 19:05
- Luke 01:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G50, G56, G1097, G1107, G1108, G1492, G1921, G1922, G1987, G2467, G2589, G4267, G4894

law of Moses, God's law, law of Yahweh, the law

Definition:

All these terms refer to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey. The terms "law" and "God's law" are also used more generally to refer to everything God wants his people to obey.

- Depending on the context, the "law" can refer to:
  - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
  - all the laws given to Moses
  - the first five books of the Old Testament
  - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as "scriptures" in the New Testament).
  - all of God's instructions and will
- The phrase "the law and the prophets" is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or "Old Testament")

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, "laws," since they refer to many instructions.
- The "law of Moses" could be translated as "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Depending on the context, "the law of Moses" could also be translated as "the law that God told to Moses" or "God's laws that Moses wrote down" or "the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites."
- Ways to translate "the law" or "law of God" or "God's laws" could include "laws from God" or "God's commands" or "laws that God gave" or "everything that God commands" or "all of God's instructions."
- The phrase "law of Yahweh" could also be translated as "Yahweh's laws" or "laws that Yahweh said to obey" or "laws from Yahweh" or "things Yahweh commanded."

(See also: instruct, Moses, Ten Commandments, lawful, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Acts 15:06
- Daniel 09:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 07:25-26
- Galatians 02:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 05:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 03:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:07** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.\
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed **God's law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.\
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.\
- **16:01** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God's laws**.\
- **21:05** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.\
- **27:01** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"\

- **28:01** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G2316, G3551, G3565

(**Go back to:** Judges 17 General Notes)

Lebanon

Facts:

Lebanon is a beautiful mountainous region located along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea, north of Israel. In Bible times this region was thickly wooded with fir trees, such as cedar and cypress.

- King Solomon sent workers to Lebanon to harvest cedar trees for use in building God's temple.
- Ancient Lebanon was inhabited by Phoenician people, who were skilled builders of ships that were used for a successful trading industry.
- The cities of Tyre and Sidon were located in Lebanon. It was in these cities that a valuable purple dye was first used.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: cedar, cypress, fir, Phoenicia)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 04:32-34
- 2 Chronicles 02:8-10
- Deuteronomy 01:7-8
- Psalms 029:3-5
- Zechariah 10:8-10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3844

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:3; 9:15)

Levi, Levite, Levitical

Definition:

Levi was one of the twelve sons of Jacob, or Israel. The term "Levite" refers to a person who is a member of the Israelite tribe whose ancestor was Levi.

- The Levites were responsible for taking care of the temple and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers.
- All Jewish priests were Levites, descended from Levi and part of the tribe of Levi. (Not all Levites were priests, however.)
- The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus, and their names are in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: Matthew, priest, sacrifice, temple, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 02:1-2
- 1 Kings 08:3-5
- Acts 04:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G3017, G3018, G3019, G3020

(**Go back to:** Judges 17:7; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:12; 17:13; 18:3; 18:15; 19:1; 20:4)

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term "life" refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A "life" can also refer to an individual person as in "a life was saved".
- Sometimes the word "life" refers to the experience of living as in, "his life was enjoyable."
- It can also refer to a person's lifespan, as in the expression, "the end of his life."
- The term "living" may refer to being physically alive, as in "my mother is still living." It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, "they were living in the city."
- In the Bible, the concept of "life" is often contrasted with the concept of "death."

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "life" can be translated as "existence" or "person" or "soul" or "being" or "experience."
- The term "live" could be translated by "dwell" or "reside" or "exist."
- The expression "end of his life" could be translated as "when he stopped living."
- The expression "spared their lives' could be translated as "allowed them to live" or "did not kill them."
- The expression "they risked their lives" could be translated as "they put themselves in danger" or "they did something that could have killed them."
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term "life" could be translated in the following ways: "eternal life" or "God making us alive in our spirits" or "new life by God's Spirit" or "being made alive in our inner self."
- Depending on the context, the expression "give life" could also be translated as "cause to live" or "give eternal life" or "cause to live eternally."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 01:03
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 02:07
- Genesis 07:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:02
- John 01:04
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 07:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **01:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **03:01** After a long time, many people were _living_ in the world.
- **08:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:09** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:01** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:05** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:05** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G198, G222, G227, G806, G590

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "lord" generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as "master" when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as "sir" in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When "Lord" is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of "sir" or "master.")

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as "Lord God Almighty" or "Lord Yahweh" or "Yahweh our Lord."
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as "Lord Jesus" and "Lord Jesus Christ," which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term "Lord" in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh" and the New Testament text has "Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord."
- In the ULT and UST, the title "Lord" is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean "Lord." It is never used as a translation of God's name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate "Lord" as "Master" or "Ruler" or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term "Lord God" could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of "master" when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as "master."
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, "lord" could be translated with a respectful form of address such as "sir." This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as "Lord" (capitalized) in English.

(See also: God, Jesus, ruler, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:02
- Joshua 03:9-11
- Psalms 086:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:04
- Lamentations 02:02
- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 09:09

- Daniel 09:17-19
- Malachi 03:01
- Matthew 07:21-23
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 06:23
- Ephesians 06:9
- Philippians 02:9-11
- Colossians 03:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 02:01
- 1 Peter 01:03
- Jude 01:05
- Revelation 15:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:05** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:03** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:05** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:09** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:03** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H113, H136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G203, G634, G962, G1203, G2962

love, beloved

Definition:

To love another person is to care for that person and do things that will benefit him. There are different meanings for "love" some languages may express using different words:

1. The kind of love that comes from God is focused on the good of others even when it doesn't benefit oneself. This kind of love cares for others, no matter what they do. God himself is love and is the source of true love.

   • Jesus showed this kind of love by sacrificing his life in order to rescue us from sin and death. He also taught his followers to love others sacrificially.
   • When people love others with this kind of love, they act in ways that show they are thinking of what will cause the others to thrive. This kind of love especially includes forgiving others.
   • In the ULT, the word "love" refers to this kind of sacrificial love, unless a Translation Note indicates a different meaning.

2. Another word in the New Testament refers to brotherly love, or love for a friend or family member.

   • This term refers to natural human love between friends or relatives.
   • The term can also be used in such contexts as, "They love to sit in the most important seats at a banquet." This means that they "like very much" or "greatly desire" to do that.

3. The word "love" can also refer to romantic love between a man and a woman.

Translation Suggestions:

   • Unless indicated otherwise in a Translation Note, the word "love" in the ULT refers to the kind of sacrificial love that comes from God.
   • Some languages may have a special word for the kind of unselfish, sacrificial love that God has. Ways to translate this might include, "devoted, faithful caring" or "care for unselfishly" or "love from God." Make sure that the word used to translate God's love can include giving up one's own interests to benefit others and loving others no matter what they do.
   • Sometimes the English word "love" describes the deep caring that people have for friends and family members. Some languages might translate this with a word or phrase that means, "like very much" or "care for" or "have strong affection for."
   • In contexts where the word "love" is used to express a strong preference for something, this could be translated by "strongly prefer" or "like very much" or "greatly desire."
   • Some languages may also have a separate word that refers to romantic or sexual love between a husband and wife.
   • Many languages must express "love" as an action. So for example, they might translate "love is patient, love is kind" as, "when a person loves someone, he is patient with him and kind to him."

(See also: covenant, death, sacrifice, save, sin)

Bible References:

   • 1 Corinthians 13:07
   • 1 John 03:02
   • 1 Thessalonians 04:10
   • Galatians 05:23
   • Genesis 29:18
   • Isaiah 56:06
   • Jeremiah 02:02
   • John 03:16

• Matthew 10:37
• Nehemiah 09:32-34
• Philippians 01:09
• Song of Solomon 01:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

• **27:02** The law expert replied that God's law says, "**Love** the Lord your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind. And **love** your neighbor as yourself."
• **33:08** "The thorny ground is a person who hears God's word, but, as time passes, the cares, riches, and pleasures of life choke out his **love** for God."
• **36:05** As Peter was talking, a bright cloud came down on top of them and a voice from the cloud said, "This is my Son whom I **love**."
• **39:10** "Everyone who **loves** the truth listens to me."
• **47:01** She (Lydia) **loved** and worshiped God.
• **48:01** When God created the world, everything was perfect. There was no sin. Adam and Eve **loved** each other, and they **loved** God.
• **49:03** He (Jesus) taught that you need to **love** other people the same way you love yourself.
• **49:04** He (Jesus) also taught that you need to **love** God more than you **love** anything else, including your wealth.
• **49:07** Jesus taught that God **loves** sinners very much.
• **49:09** But God **loved** everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with God forever.
• **49:13** God **loves** you and wants you to believe in Jesus so he can have a close relationship with you.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H157, H158, H159, H160, H2245, H2617, H2836, H3039, H4261, H5689, H5690, H5691, H7355, H7356, H7453, H7474, G25, G26, G5360, G5361, G5362, G5363, G5365, G5367, G5368, G5369, G5377, G5381, G5382, G5383, G5388

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:31; 14:16; 16:4; 16:15)

messenger

Facts:

The term "messenger" refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate "angel" as "messenger."
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah's coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus' apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 06:21
- 2 Kings 01:1-2
- Luke 07:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G32, G652

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:1; 2:4; 5:23; 6:11; 6:12; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 9:31; 11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:17; 11:19; 13:3; 13:6; 13:9; 13:13; 13:15; 13:16; 13:17; 13:18; 13:20; 13:21)

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms "mighty" and "might" refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word "might" is another word for "strength." When talking about God, it can mean "power."
- The phrase "mighty men" often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David's band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called "mighty men."
- God is also referred to as the "mighty one."
- The phrase "mighty works" usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term "almighty," which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "mighty" could be translated as "powerful" or "amazing" or "very strong."
- The phrase "his might" could be translated as "his strength" or "his power."
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was "mighty in word and deed." This could be translated as "Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things" or "Moses spoke God's word powerfully and did many amazing things."
- Depending on the context, "mighty works" could be translated as "amazing things that God does" or "miracles" or "God doing things with power."
- The term "might" could also be translated as "power" or "great strength."
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in "It might rain."

(See also: Almighty, miracle, power, strength)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:22
- Genesis 06:4
- Mark 09:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H46, H47, H117, H202, H386, H410, H430, H533, H650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G1411, G1415, G1498, G2478, G2479, G2900, G2904, G3167, G3173

(**Go back to:** Judges 6:12; 11:1; 14:18)

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A "miracle" is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called "wonders" because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term "wonder" can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God's power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called "signs" because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God's acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God's acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah's time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God's miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God's power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God's power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of "miracles" or "wonders" could include "impossible things that God does" or "powerful works of God" or "amazing acts of God."
- The frequent expression "signs and wonders" could be translated as "proofs and miracles" or "miraculous works that prove God's power" or "amazing miracles that show how great God is."
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, prophet, apostle, sign)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 02:8-10
- Acts 04:17
- Acts 04:22
- Daniel 04:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:01
- Exodus 03:19-22
- John 02:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:08** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:06** "Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

- **49:02** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540,, G880, G1213, G1229, G1411, G1569, G1718, G1770, G1839, G2285, G2296, G2297, G3167, G3902, G4591, G4592, G5059

(**Go back to:**)

Mizpah

Facts:

Mizpah is the name of several towns mentioned in the Old Testament. It means, "look-out point" or "watchtower."

- When David was being pursued by Saul, he left his parents in Mizpah, under the protection of the king of Moab.
- One city called Mizpah was located on the border between the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. It was a major military center.

(Translation suggestions: Translate Names)

(See also: David, Judah, kingdom of Israel, Moab, Saul (OT))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 15:20-22
- 1 Samuel 07:5-6
- 1 Samuel 07:10-11
- Jeremiah 40:5-6
- Judges 10:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4708, H4709

(**Go back to:** Judges 11:34; 20:1; 20:3; 21:5; 21:8)

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term "Moab" refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named "Moab," who was the son of Lot's elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a "Moabite woman" because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Bethlehem, Judea, Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 01:1-2
- Ruth 01:22

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4124, H4125

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:12; 3:14; 3:15; 3:17; 3:28; 3:29; 3:30; 10:6; 11:15; 11:17; 11:18; 11:25)

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Miriam, Promised Land, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:21
- Acts 07:30
- Exodus 02:10
- Exodus 09:01
- Matthew 17:04
- Romans 05:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:05 Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:07** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:07** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

\

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G3475

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:16; 1:20; 3:4; 4:11)

name

Definition:

The term "name" refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term "name" is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, "name" could refer to a person's reputation, as in "let us make a name for ourselves."
- The term "name" could also refer to the memory of something. For example, "cut off the names of the idols" means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking "in the name of God" meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The "name" of someone could refer to the entire person, as in "there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved." (See: metonymy)

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like "his good name" could be translated as "his good reputation."
- Doing something "in the name of" could be translated as "with the authority of" or "with the permission of" or "as the representative of" that person.
- The expression "make a name for ourselves" could be translated "cause many people to know about us" or "make people think we are very important."
- The expression "call his name" could be translated as "name him" or "give him the name."
- The expression "those who love your name" could be translated as "those who love you."
- The expression "cut off the names of idols" could be translated as "get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered" or "cause people to stop worshiping false gods" or "completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them."

(See also: call)

Bible References:

- 1 John 02:12
- 2 Timothy 02:19
- Acts 04:07
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 09:27
- Genesis 12:02
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:05

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G2564, G3686, G3687, G5122

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A "nation" usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a "nation" could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word "nation" was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were "nations" that would fight against each other. This could be translated as "the founders of two nations" or the "ancestors of two people groups."
- The word translated as "nation" was also sometimes used to refer to "Gentiles" or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word "nation" could also be translated as "people group" or "people" or "country."
- If a language has a term for "nation" that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term "nations" can often be translated as "people groups."
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as "Gentiles" or "nonJews."

(See also: Assyria, Babylon, Canaan, Gentile, Greek, people group, Philistines, Rome)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:06
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 02:05
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:04
- Daniel 03:04
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 07:05
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 04:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H524, H776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G246, G1074, G1085, G1484

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:20; 2:21; 2:23; 3:1; 4:2; 4:13; 4:16)

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means "the South," and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the "South" is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, Israel, Judah, Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:09
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 03:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:15)

noble, nobleman, royal official

Definition:

The term "noble" refers to something that is excellent and of high quality. A "nobleman" is a person who belongs to a high political or social class. A man "of noble birth" is one who was born a nobleman.

- A nobleman was often an officer of the state, a close servant to the king.
- The term "nobleman" could also be translated by, "king's official" or "government officer."

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 23:20-21
- Daniel 04:36
- Ecclesiastes 10:17
- Luke 19:12
- Psalm 016:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H117, H1419, H2715, H3358, H3513, H5057, H5081, H6440, H6579, H7261, H8282, H8269, G937, G2104

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:25)

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term "oath" in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term "swear" means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word "swear" is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term "swear by" means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham's relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "an oath" could also be translated as "a pledge" or "a solemn promise."
- To "swear" could be translated as to "formally promise" or to "pledge" or to "commit to do something."
- Other ways to translate "swear by my name" could include "make a promise using my name to confirm it."
- To "swear by heaven and earth" could be translated as to, "promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it."
- Make sure the translation of "swear" or "oath" does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, covenant, vow)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:03
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 01:73
- Mark 06:26
- Matthew 05:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong's: H422, H423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G332, G3660, G3727, G3728

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 06:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 08:11
- James 03:12
- Luke 16:06
- Psalms 052:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G65, G1636, G1637, G2565

(**Go back to:** Judges 15:5)

oppress, oppressed, oppression, oppressor

Definition:

The terms "oppress" and "oppression" refer to treating people harshly. An "oppressor" is a person who oppresses people.

- The term "oppression" especially refers to a situation where people of greater strength mistreat or enslave people who are under their power or rule.
- The term "oppressed" describes the people who are being harshly treated.
- Often enemy nations and their rulers were oppressors to the people of Israel.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, "oppress" could be translated as, "severely mistreat" or "cause to be heavily burdened" or "put under miserable bondage" or "rule harshly."
- Ways to translate "oppression" could include "heavy suppression and bondage" or "burdensome control."
- The phrase "the oppressed" could be translated as "oppressed people" or "people in terrible bondage" or "those who are treated harshly."
- The term "oppressor" could be translated as "person who oppresses" or "nation who controls and rules harshly" or "persecutor."

(See also: bind, enslave, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:17-19
- Deuteronomy 26:07
- Ecclesiastes 04:1
- Job 10:03
- Judges 02:18-19
- Nehemiah 05:14-15
- Psalms 119:134

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1790, H1792, H2541, H2555, H3238, H3905, H3906, H4642, H5065, H6125, H6184, H6206, H6216, H6217, H6231, H6233, H6234, H6693, H7429, H7533, H7701, G2616, G2669

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:15; Notes; Notes; 10:9)

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term "ordain."

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term "ordinance" could be translated as "public decree" or "regulation" or "law," depending on the context.

(See also: command, decree, law, ordain, statute)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 04:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 08:31-33
- Malachi 03:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(**Go back to:** Judges 18:7)

oversee, overseer

Definition:

The term "overseer" refers to a person who is in charge of the work and welfare of other people.

- In the Old Testament, an overseer had the job of making sure the workers under him did their work well.
- In the New Testament, this term is used to describe leaders of the early Christian church. Their work was to take care of the spiritual needs of the church, making sure the believers received accurate biblical teaching.
- Paul refers to an overseer as being like a shepherd who takes care of the believers in a local church, who are his "flock."
- The overseer, like a shepherd, keeps watch over the flock. He guards and protects the believers from false spiritual teaching and other evil influences.
- In the New Testament, the terms "overseers," "elders," and "shepherds/pastors" are different ways of referring to the same spiritual leaders.

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could be "supervisor" or "caretaker" or "manager."
- When referring to a leader of a local group of God's people, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means "spiritual supervisor" or "someone who takes care of the spiritual needs of a group of believers" or "person who oversees the spiritual needs of the Church."

(See also: church, elder, pastor, shepherd)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 26:31-32
- 1 Timothy 03:02
- Acts 20:28
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Philippians 01:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5329, H6485, H6496, H7860, H8104, G1983, G1984, G1985

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:28)

patient, patience, impatient

Definition:

The terms "patient" and "patience" refer to persevering through difficult circumstances. Often patience involves waiting.

- When people are patient with someone, it means they are loving that person and forgiving whatever faults that person has.
- The Bible teaches God's people to be patient when facing difficulties and to be patient with each other.
- Because of his mercy, God is patient with people, even though they are sinners who deserve to be punished.

(See also: endure, forgive, persevere)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:20
- 2 Peter 03:8-9
- Hebrews 06:11-12
- Matthew 18:28-29
- Psalms 037:7
- Revelation 02:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H750, H753, H2342, H3811, H6960, H7114, G420, G463, G1933, G3114, G3115, G3116, G5278, G5281

(**Go back to:** Judges 4:6; 4:7; 20:37)

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term "peace" refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is "peaceful" feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- "Peace" can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have "peaceful relations."
- To "make peace" with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A "peacemaker" is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be "at peace" with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having "peace with God."
- The greeting "grace and peace" was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term "peace" can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:1-3
- Acts 07:26
- Colossians 01:18-20
- Colossians 03:15
- Galatians 05:23
- Luke 07:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 04:39
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:06** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:03** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people's sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G269, G1514, G1515, G1516, G1517, G1518, G2272

(**Go back to:** Judges 4:17; 6:23; 6:24; 19:20; 21:13)

people, people group,

Definition:

The terms "people" and "people group" refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term "the people" often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term "people" can can refer to a "people group" or "family" or "relatives" or "army."
- In plural form, the term "peoples" often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term "nations" is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "people group" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "large family group" or "clan" or "ethnic group."
- A phrase such as "my people" could be translated as "my relatives" or "my fellow Israelites" or "my family" or "my people group," depending on the context.
- The expression "scatter you among the peoples" could also be translated as "cause you to go live with many different people groups" or "cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world."
- The term "the peoples" or "the people" could also be translated as "the people in the world" or "people groups," depending on the context.
- The phrase "the people of" could be translated as "the people living in" or "the people descended from" or "the family of," depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- "All the peoples of the earth" could be translated as "everyone living on earth" or "every person in the world" or "all people."
- The phrase "a people" could also be translated as "a group of people" or "certain people" or "a community of people" or "a family of people."

(See also: descendant, nation, tribe, world)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 08:51-53
- 1 Samuel 08:07
- Deuteronomy 28:09
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 01:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:02** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there. what follows is
- **21:02** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."

- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:03** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups**!" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H249, H523, H524, H776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G1074, G1085, G1218, G1484, G2560, G2992, G3793

perish

Definition:

The term "perish" means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of "Perish:"

- People who are "perishing" are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who "perish" will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God's punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When "perish" is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include "be lost from God's people," "die eternally," "be punished in hell," or "be destroyed."
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean "die physically" or "cease to exist."

(See also: death, everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 01:23
- 2 Corinthians 02:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 049:18-20
- Zechariah 09:5-7
- Zechariah 13:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6, H7, H8, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G599, G622, G684, G853, G1311, G2704, G4881, G5356

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:31)

Perizzite

Facts:

The Perizzites were one of several people groups in the land of Canaan. Little is known about this group as to who their ancestors were or what part of Canaan they lived in.

- The Perizzites are mentioned most frequently in the Old Testament Book of Judges, where it is recorded that the Perizzites intermarried with the Israelites and influenced them to worship false gods.
- Note that the clan of Perez, called the "Perezites," was a different people group from the Perizzites. It may be necessary to spell the names very differently to make this clear.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Canaan, false god)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 09:20-21
- 2 Chronicles 08:7-8
- Exodus 03:16-18
- Genesis 13:07
- Joshua 03:9-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6522

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:4; 1:5; 3:5)

persecute, persecuted, persecution, persecutor, chase, pursue

Definition:

The terms "persecute" and "persecution" refer to continually treating a person or a certain group of people in a harsh way that causes harm to them.

- Persecution can be against one person or many people and usually involves repeated, persistent attacks.
- The Israelites were persecuted by many different people groups Who attacked them, captured them, and stole things from them.
- People often persecute other people who have different religious beliefs or who are weaker.
- The Jewish religious leaders persecuted Jesus because they did not like what he was teaching.
- After Jesus went back to heaven, the Jewish religious leaders and the Roman government persecuted his followers.
- The term "persecute" could also be translated as "keep oppressing" or "treat harshly" or "continually mistreat."
- Ways to translate "persecution" could include, "harsh mistreatment" or "oppression" or "persistent hurtful treatment"

(See also: Christian, church, oppress, Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 07:52
- Acts 13:50
- Galatians 01:13-14
- John 05:16-18
- Mark 10:30
- Matthew 05:10
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 10:22
- Matthew 13:20-21
- Philippians 03:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:07** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with joy. But when he experiences hardship or **persecution**, he falls away."
- **45:06** That day many people in Jerusalem started **persecuting** the followers of Jesus, so the believers fled to other places.
- **46:02** Saul heard someone say, "Saul! Saul! Why do you **persecute** me?" Saul asked, "Who are you, Master?" Jesus replied to him, "I am Jesus. You are **persecuting** me!"
- **46:04** But Ananias said, "Master, I have heard how this man has **persecuted** the believers."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1814, H7291, H7852, G1375, G1376, G1377, G1559, G2347

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:28; 4:16; 4:22; 8:5; 20:43)

Philistines

Facts:

The Philistines were a people group who occupied a region known as Philistia along the coast of the Mediterranean Sea. Their name means "people of the sea."

- There were five main Philistine cities: Ashdod, Ashkelon, Ekron, Gath, and Gaza.
- The city of Ashdod was in the northern part of Philistia, and the city of Gaza was in the southern part.
- The Philistines are probably best known for the many years they were at war against the Israelites.
- The judge Samson was a famous warrior against the Philistines, using supernatural strength from God.
- King David often led battles against the Philistines, including the time as a youth when he defeated the Philistine warrior, Goliath.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Ashdod, Ashkelon, David, Ekron, Gath, Gaza, Goliath, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 13:04
- 2 Chronicles 09:25-26
- Genesis 10:11-14
- Psalm 056:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6429, H6430

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms "possess" and "possession" usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of "possessing" or "taking possession of" an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to "possess" the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as "their possession." This could also be translated as "their rightful place to live."
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh's "special possession." This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "possess" could also be translated as "own" or "have" or "have charge over."
- The phrase "take possession of" could be translated as "take control of" or "occupy' or "live on," depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, "possessions" could be translated as "belongings" or "property" or "owned things" or "things they owned."
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, "my special possession" this could also be translated as "my special people" or "people who belong to me" or "my people whom I love and rule."
- The sentence, "they will become their possession" when referring to land, means "they will occupy the land" or "the land will belong to them."
- The expression, "found in his possession" could be translated as, "that he was holding" or "that he had with him."
- The phrase "as your possession" could also be translated as, "as something that belongs to you" or "as a place where your people will live."
- The phrase, "in his possession" could be translated as "that he owned" or "which belonged to him."

(See also: Canaan, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 06:70
- 1 Kings 09:17-19
- Acts 02:45
- Deuteronomy 04:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong's: H270, H272, H834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G1139, G2192, G2697, G2722, G2932, G2933, G2935, G4047, G5224, G5564

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:19; 2:6; 2:21; 18:9)

praise, praised, praiseworthy

Definition:

To praise someone is to express admiration and honor for that person.

- People praise God because of how great he is and because of all the amazing things he has done as the Creator and Savior of the world.
- Praise for God often includes being thankful for what he has done.
- Music and singing is often used as a way to praise God.
- Praising God is part of what it means to worship him.
- The term to "praise" could also be translated as to "speak well of" or to "highly honor with words" or to "say good things about."
- The noun "praise" could be translated as "spoken honor" or "speech that honors" or "speaking good things about."

(See also: worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 01:03
- Acts 02:47
- Acts 13:48
- Daniel 03:28
- Ephesians 01:03
- Genesis 49:8
- James 03:9-10
- John 05:41-42
- Luke 01:46
- Luke 01:64-66
- Luke 19:37-38
- Matthew 11:25-27
- Matthew 15:29-31

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to **praise** God because he saved them from the Egyptian army.
- **17:08** When David heard these words, he immediately thanked and **praised** God because he had promised David this great honor and many blessings.
- **22:07** Zechariah said, "**Praise** God, because he has remembered his people!
- **43:13** They (disciples) enjoyed **praising** God together and they shared everything they had with each other.
- **47:08** They put Paul and Silas in the most secure part of the prison and even locked up their feet. Yet in the middle of the night, they were singing songs of **praise** to God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1319, H7121, G2980, G3853

(**Go back to:** Judges 16:24)

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms "pray" and "prayer" refer to talking with God. These terms are used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called "communing" with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as "talking to God" or "communicating with God." The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: false god, forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 03:09
- Acts 08:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 04:04
- John 17:09
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 05:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:05** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:08** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, "Hear us, O Baal!"
- **21:07** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H559, H577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G154, G1162, G1189, G1783, G2065, G2171, G2172, G3870, G4335, G4336

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:3; 6:8; 6:18; 6:37; 7:17; 7:18; 11:9; 11:37; 17:9; 19:18)

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To "preach" means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To "proclaim" means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- "Preaching" and "teaching" are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- "Preaching" mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. "Teaching" is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term "preach" is usually used with the word "gospel."
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his "teachings."
- Often in the Bible, "proclaim" means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term "proclaim" can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate "proclaim" could include "announce" or "openly preach" or "publicly declare."
- The term "proclamation" could also be translated as "announcement" or "public preaching."

(See also: good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:1-2
- Acts 08:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 04:42
- Matthew 03:1-3
- Matthew 04:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 09:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 03:1-3
- Luke 04:18-19
- Mark 01:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:02** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, "Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!"
- **30:01** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:01** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:06** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:07** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:06** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, "Jesus is the Son of God!"
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:02** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's:
  - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
  - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: Aaron, chief priests, high priest, mediator, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 01:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 01:44
- Mark 02:25-26
- Matthew 08:4
- Matthew 12:04
- Micah 03:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 01:06

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:07** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"
- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was

　　sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:07** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:07** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G748, G749, G2405, G2406, G2407, G2409, G2420

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as, "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as, "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, lord, power, ruler, Satan, Savior, spirit)

Bible References:

- Acts 05:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 01:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1, H117, H324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G747, G758, G1413, G3175

(**Go back to:** Judges 4:2; 4:7; 5:15; 7:25; 8:3; 8:6; 8:14; 9:30; 10:18)

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to "profane" could be translated as to "treat as unholy" or to "be irreverent toward" or to "dishonor."
- God told the Israelites that they "profaned" themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves "unclean" or "dishonored" by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective "profane" could be translated as "dishonoring" or "godless" or "unholy."

(See also: defile, holy, clean)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:09
- Malachi 01:10-12
- Matthew 12:05
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G952, G953

(**Go back to:** Judges 13:25; 16:19; 16:22; 20:31)

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A "prophet" is a man who speaks God's messages to people. A woman who does this is called a "prophetess."

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A "prophecy" is the message that the prophet speaks. To "prophesy" means to speak God's messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as "the prophets."
- For example the phrase, "the law and the prophets" is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the "Old Testament."
- An older term for a prophet was "seer" or "someone who sees."
- Sometimes the term "seer" refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "prophet" could be translated as "God's spokesman" or "man who speaks for God" or "man who speaks God's messages."
- A "seer" could be translated as, "person who sees visions" or "man who sees the future from God."
- The term "prophetess" could be translated as, "spokeswoman for God" or "woman who speaks for God" or "woman who speaks God's messages."
- Ways to translate "prophecy" could include, "message from God" or "prophet message."
- The term "prophesy" could be translated as "speak words from God" or "tell God's message."
- The figurative expression, "law and the prophets" could also be translated as, "the books of the law and of the prophets" or "everything written about God and his people, including God's laws and what his prophets preached." (See: synecdoche)
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as "false prophet (seer)" or "prophet (seer) of a false god" or "prophet of Baal," for example.

(See also: Baal, divination, false god, false prophet, fulfill, law, vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 02:14-16
- Acts 03:25
- John 01:43-45
- Malachi 04:4-6
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 02:18
- Matthew 05:17
- Psalm 051:01

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:01** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God's messages.
- **19:06** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.

- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:09** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:05** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:07** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G2495, G4394, G4395, G4396, G4397, G4398, G5578

(**Go back to:**)

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term "prosper" generally refers to living well and can refer to prospering physically or spiritually. When people or a country are "prosperous," it means they are wealthy and have all that they need to be successful. They are experiencing "prosperity."

- The term "prosperous" often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term "prosperous" also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A "prosperous" city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God's teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term "prosper" could also be translated as "succeed spiritually" or "be blessed by God" or "experience good things" or "live well."
- The term "prosperous" could also be translated as "successful" or "wealthy" or "spiritually fruitful."
- "Prosperity" could also be translated as "well-being" or "wealth" or "success" or "abundant blessings."

(See also: bless, fruit, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:06
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 001:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:29; 11:1; 18:2; 20:44; 20:46)

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms "prostitute" and "harlot" both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word "prostitute" is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression "play the harlot" means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To "prostitute oneself" to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: euphemism)

(See also: adultery, false god, sexual immorality, false god)

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G4204

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:17; 11:1; 16:1)

prostrate, worship

Definition:

To "prostrate" oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to "worship," referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally "bow down" or "prostrate oneself" to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "worship" could be translated as "bow down to" or "honor and serve" or "honor and obey."
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as "humbly praise" or "give honor and praise."

(See also: sacrifice, praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 02:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 03:11-12
- Luke 04:07
- Matthew 02:02
- Matthew 02:08

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods."
- **14:02** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:07** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, '**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:02** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:01** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G1391, G1479, G2151, G2318, G2323, G2356, G3000, G3511, G4352, G4353, G4573, G4574, G4576

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:12; 2:17; 7:15)

raise, raised, risen, arise, arose, got up, stir up, stirred up

Definition:

raise, raise up

In general, the word "raise" means to "lift up" or "make higher."

- The phrase "raise up" sometimes means to cause something to come into being or to appear. It can also mean to appoint someone to do something.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "restore" or "rebuild."
- "Raise" has a specialized meaning in the phrase "raise from the dead." It means to cause a dead person to become alive again.
- Sometimes "raise up" means to "exalt" someone or something.

rise, arise

To "rise" or "arise" means to "go up" or "get up." The terms "risen," "rose," and "arose" express past action.

- When a person gets up to go somewhere, this is sometimes expressed as "he arose and went" or "he rose up and went."
- If something "arises" it means it "happens" or "begins to happen."
- Jesus predicted that he would "rise from the dead." Three days after Jesus died, the angel said, "He has risen!"

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "raise" or "raise up" could be translated as "lift up" or "make higher."
- To "raise up" could also be translated as to "cause to appear" or to "appoint" or to "bring into existence."
- To "raise up the strength of your enemies" could be translated as, "cause your enemies to be very strong."
- The phrase "raise someone from the dead" could be translated as "cause someone to return from death to life" or "cause someone to come back to life."
- Depending on the context, "raise up" could also be translated as "provide" or to "appoint" or to "cause to have" or "build up" or "rebuild" or "repair."
- The phrase "arose and went" could be translated as "got up and went" or "went."
- Depending on the context, the term "arose" could also be translated as "began" or "started up" or "got up" or "stood up."

(See also: resurrection, appoint, exalt)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- 2 Samuel 07:12
- Acts 10:40
- Colossians 03:01
- Deuteronomy 13:1-3
- Jeremiah 06:01
- Judges 02:18
- Luke 07:22
- Matthew 20:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:14** The prophets foretold that the Messiah would die and that God would also **raise** him from the dead.

- **41:05** "Jesus is not here. He has **risen** from the dead, just like he said he would!"
- **43:07** "Although Jesus died, God **raised** him from the dead. This fulfills the prophecy which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.' We are witnesses to the fact that God **raised** Jesus to life again."
- **44:05** " You killed the author of life, but God **raised** him from the dead. "
- **44:08** Peter answered them, "This man stands before you healed by the power of Jesus the Messiah. You crucified Jesus, but God **raised** him to life again!"
- **48:04** This meant that Satan would kill the Messiah, but God would **raise** him to life again, and then the Messiah will crush the power of Satan forever.
- **49:02** He (Jesus) walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, **raised** the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.
- **49:12** You must believe that Jesus is the Son of God, that he died on the cross instead of you, and that God **raised** him to life again.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2210, H2224, H5549, H5782, H5927, H5975, H6965, H6966, H6974, H7613, G305, G386, G393, G450, G1096, G1326, G1453, G1525, G1817, G1825, G1892, G1999, G4891

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:12)

Ramah

Facts:

Ramah was an ancient Israelite city located about 8 km from Jerusalem. It was in the region where the tribe of Benjamin lived.

- Ramah was where Rachel died after giving birth to Benjamin.
- When the Israelites were taken captive to Babylon, they were first brought to Ramah before being moved to Babylon.
- Ramah was the home of Samuel's mother and father.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Benjamin, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:27
- 1 Samuel 02:11
- 2 Chronicles 16:1
- Jeremiah 31:15
- Joshua 18:25-28
- Matthew 02:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7414, G4471

(**Go back to:** Judges 4:5)

rebuke

Definition:

The term "rebuke" refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by "sternly correct" or "admonish."
- The phrase "a rebuke" could be translated by "a stern correction" or "a strong criticism."
- "Without rebuke" could be translated as "without admonishing" or "without criticism."

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Mark 01:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 08:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G1649, G1651, G1969, G2008, G3679

(**Go back to:** Judges 8:1)

reign, rule

Definition:

The term to "reign" means to rule over the people of a particular country or kingdom. The reign of a king is the time period during which he is ruling.

- The term "reign" is also used to refer to God reigning as king over the entire world.
- God allowed human kings to reign over Israel after the people rejected him as their king.
- When Jesus Christ returns, he will openly reign as king over the whole world, and Christians will reign with Him.
- This term could also be translated as "absolute rule" or "rule as king."

(See also: kingdom)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 02:11-13
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Luke 01:30-33
- Luke 19:26-27
- Matthew 02:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3427, H4427, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4475, H4791, H4910, H6113, H7287, H7786, G757, G936, G2231, G4821

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:6; 9:16; 9:18)

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term "rest" generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be "resting" somewhere, which means it is "standing" or "sitting" there.
- A boat that "comes to rest" somewhere has "stopped" or "landed" there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the "Sabbath" day.
- To rest an object on something means to "place" or "put" it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to "rest (oneself)" could also be translated as to "stop working" or to "refresh himself" or to "stop carrying burdens."
- To "rest" an object on something could be translated as to "place" or "put" or "set" that object on something.
- When Jesus said, "I will give you rest," this could also be translated as " I will cause you to stop carrying your burden" or "I will help you be at peace" or "I will empower you to relax and trust in me."
- God said, "they will not enter my rest," and this statement could be translated as "they will not experience my blessings of rest" or "they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me."
- The term "the rest" could be translated as "those that remain" or "all the other people" or "everything that is left."

(See also: remnant, Sabbath)

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 06:41
- Genesis 02:03
- Jeremiah 06:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H14, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G372, G373, G425, G1515, G1879, G1954, G1981, G2270, G2663, G2664, G2681, G2838, G3062, G4520

(**Go back to:** Judges 20:43)

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms "restore" and "restoration" refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been "healed."
- A broken relationship that is restored has been "reconciled." God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been "brought back" or "returned" to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate "restore" could include "renew" or "repay" or "return" or "heal" or "bring back."
- Other expressions for this term could be "make new" or "make like new again."
- When property is "restored," it has been "repaired" or "replaced" or "given back" to its owner.
- Depending on the context, "restoration" could be translated as "renewal" or "healing" or "reconciliation."

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 05:10
- Acts 03:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 05:22
- Leviticus 06:5-7
- Luke 19:08
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 080:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7725, H7999, H8421, G600, G2675

return

Definition:

The term "return" means to go back or to give something back.

- To "return to" something means to start doing that activity again. To "return to" a place or person means to bo back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G344, G360, G390, G1877, G1880, G1994, G5290

(**Go back to:** Judges 7:3; 7:15; 8:13; 8:33; 9:56; 11:39; 14:8; 15:19; 17:3; 17:4; 18:26; 19:7; 21:14; 21:23)

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was the firstborn son of Jacob. His mother was Leah.

- When his brothers were planning to kill their younger brother Joseph, Reuben spared Joseph's life by telling them to put him into a pit instead.
- Reuben came back later to rescue Joseph, but the other brothers had sold him as a slave to merchants passing by.
- Reuben's descendants became one of the twelve tribes of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: Jacob, Joseph (OT), Leah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G4502

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:15; 5:16)

righteous, righteousness, unrighteous, unrighteousness, upright, uprightness

Definition:

The term "righteousness" refers to God's absolute goodness, justice, faithfulness, and love. Having these qualities makes God "righteous." Because God is righteous, he must condemn sin.

- These terms are also often used to describe a person who obeys God and is morally good. However, because all people have sinned, no one except God is completely righteous.
- Examples of people the Bible who were called "righteous" include Noah, Job, Abraham, Zachariah, and Elisabeth.
- When people trust in Jesus to save them, God cleanses them from their sins and declares them to be righteous because of Jesus' righteousness.

The term "unrighteous" means to be sinful and morally corrupt. "Unrighteousness" refers to sin or the condition of being sinful.

- These terms especially refer to living in a way that disobeys God's teachings and commands.
- Unrighteous people are immoral in their thoughts and actions.
- Sometimes "the unrighteous" refers specifically to people who do not believe in Jesus.

The terms "upright" and "uprightness" refer to acting in a way that follows God's laws.

- The meaning of these words includes the idea of standing up straight and looking directly ahead.
- A person who is "upright" is someone who obeys God's rules and does not do things that are against his will.
- Terms such as "integrity" and "righteous" have similar meanings and are sometimes used in parallelism constructions, such as "integrity and uprightness." (See: parallelism)

Translation Suggestions:

- When it describes God, the term "righteous" could be translated as "perfectly good and just" or "always acting rightly."
- God's "righteousness" could also be translated as "perfect faithfulness and goodness."
- When it describes people who are obedient to God, the term "righteous" could also be translated as "morally good" or "just" or "living a God-pleasing life."
- The phrase "the righteous" could also be translated as "righteous people" or "God-fearing people."
- Depending on the context, "righteousness" could also be translated with a word or phrase that means "goodness" or "being perfect before God" or "acting in a right way by obeying God" or "doing perfectly good
- The term "unrighteous" could simply be translated as "not righteous."
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this could include "wicked" or "immoral" or "people who rebel against God" or "sinful."
- The phrase "the unrighteous" could be translated as "unrighteous people."
- The term "unrighteousness" could be translated as "sin" or "evil thoughts and actions" or "wickedness."
- If possible, it is best to translate this in a way that shows its relationship to "righteous, righteousness."
- Ways to translate "upright" could include "acting rightly" or "one who acts rightly" or "following God's laws" or "obedient to God" or "behaving in a way that is right."
- The term "uprightness" could be translated as "moral purity" or "good moral conduct" or "rightness."
- The phrase "the upright" could be translated as "people who are upright" or "upright people."

(See also: evil, faithful, good, holy, integrity, just, law, law, obey, pure, righteous, sin, unlawful)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 19:16
- Job 01:08
- Psalms 037:30
- Psalms 049:14
- Psalms 107:42
- Ecclesiastes 12:10-11
- Isaiah 48:1-2
- Ezekiel 33:13
- Malachi 02:06
- Matthew 06:01
- Acts 03:13-14
- Romans 01:29-31
- 1 Corinthians 06:09
- Galatians 03:07
- Colossians 03:25
- 2 Thessalonians 02:10
- 2 Timothy 03:16
- 1 Peter 03:18-20
- 1 John 01:09
- 1 John 05:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:02** But Noah found favor with God. He was a **righteous** man, living among wicked people.
- **04:08** God declared that Abram was **righteous** because he believed in God's promise.
- **17:02** David was a humble and **righteous** man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **23:01** Joseph, the man Mary was engaged to, was a **righteous** man.
- **50:10** Then the **righteous** ones will shine like the sun in the kingdom of God their Father."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H1368, H2555, H3072, H3474, H3476, H3477, H3483, H4334, H4339, H4749, H5228, H5229, H5324, H5765, H5766, H5767, H5977, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6665, H6666, H6968, H8535, H8537, H8549, H8552, G93, G94, G458, G1341, G1342, G1343, G1344, G1345, G1346, G2118, G3716, G3717

(**Go back to:** Judges 21 General Notes)

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms "sacrifice" and "offering" refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God's perfect, sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word "offering" generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term "sacrifice" refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as "burnt offering" and "peace offering," indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "offering" could also be translated as "a gift to God" or "something given to God" or "something valuable that is presented to God."
- Depending on the context, the term "sacrifice" could also be translated as "something valuable given in worship" or "a special animal killed and presented to God."
- The action to "sacrifice" could be translated as to "give up something valuable" or to "kill an animal and give it to God."
- Another way to translate "present yourself as a living sacrifice" could be "as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar."

(See also: altar, burnt offering, drink offering, false god, fellowship offering, freewill offering peace offering, priest, sin offering, worship)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 04:06
- Acts 07:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 04:3-5
- James 02:21-24
- Mark 01:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 05:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **05:06** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **05:09** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.

- **13:09** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:06** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:06** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:08** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H801, H817, H819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G266, G334, G1049, G1435, G1494, G2378, G2380, G3646, G4376, G5485

save, saved, safe, salvation

Definition:

The term "save" refers to keeping someone from experiencing something bad or harmful. To "be safe" means to be protected from harm or danger.

- In a physical sense, people can be saved or rescued from harm, danger, or death.
- In a spiritual sense, if a person has been "saved," then God, through Jesus' death on the cross, has forgiven him and rescued him from being punished in hell for his sin.
- People can save or rescue people from danger, but only God can save people from being punished eternally for their sins.

The term "salvation" refers to being saved or rescued from evil and danger.

- In the Bible, "salvation" usually refers to the spiritual and eternal deliverance granted by God to those who repent of their sins and believe in Jesus.
- The Bible also talks about God saving or delivering his people from their physical enemies.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "save" could include "deliver" or "keep from harm" or "take out of harm's way" or "keep from dying."
- In the expression "whoever would save his life," the term "save" could also be translated as "preserve" or "protect."
- The term "safe" could be translated as "protected from danger" or "in a place where nothing can harm."
- The term "salvation" could also be translated using words related to "save" or "rescue," as in "God's saving people (from being punished for their sins)" or "God's rescuing his people (from their enemies)."
- "God is my salvation" could be translated as "God is the one who saves me."
- "You will draw water from the wells of salvation" could be translated as "You will be refreshed as with water because God is rescuing you."

(See also: cross, deliver, punish, sin, Savior)

Bible References:

- Genesis 49:18
- Genesis 47:25-26
- Psalms 080:03
- Jeremiah 16:19-21
- Micah 06:3-5
- Luke 02:30
- Luke 08:36-37
- Acts 04:12
- Acts 28:28
- Acts 02:21
- Romans 01:16
- Romans 10:10
- Ephesians 06:17
- Philippians 01:28
- 1 Timothy 01:15-17
- Revelation 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:08** Moses tried to **save** his fellow Israelite.
- **11:02** God provided a way to **save** the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him.
- **12:05** Moses told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and **save** you."
- **12:13** The Israelites sang many songs to celebrate their new freedom and to praise God because he **saved** them from the Egyptian army.
- **16:17** This pattern repeated many times: the Israelites would sin, God would punish them, they would repent, and God would send a deliverer to **save** them.
- **44:08** "You crucified Jesus, but God raised him to life again! You rejected him, but there is no other way to be **saved** except through the power of Jesus!"
- **47:11** The jailer trembled as he came to Paul and Silas and asked, "What must I do to be **saved**?" Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the Master, and you and your family will be **saved**."
- **49:12** Good works cannot **save** you.
- **49:13** God will **save** everyone who believes in Jesus and receives him as their Master. But he will not **save** anyone who does not believe in him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H983, H2421, H2502, H3444, H3467, H3468, H4190, H4422, H4931, H5338, H6308, H6403, H7682, H7951, H7965, H8104, H8199, H8668, G803, G804, G806, G1295, G1508, G4982, G4991, G4992, G5198

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:26; 3:29)

scribe

Definition:

Scribes were officials who were responsible for writing or copying important government or religious documents by hand. Another name for a Jewish scribe was "expert in Jewish law."

- Scribes were responsible for copying and preserving the books of the Old Testament.
- They also copied, preserved, and interpreted religious opinions and commentary on the law of God.
- At times, scribes were important government officials.
- Important biblical scribes include Baruch and Ezra.
- In the New Testament, the term translated "scribes" was also translated as "teachers of the Law."
- In the New Testament, scribes were usually part of the religious group called the "Pharisees," and the two groups were frequently mentioned together.

(See also: law, Pharisee)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:05
- Luke 07:29-30
- Luke 20:47
- Mark 01:22
- Mark 02:16
- Matthew 05:19-20
- Matthew 07:28
- Matthew 12:38
- Matthew 13:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5608, H5613, H7083, G1122

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:14)

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term "seek" means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is "sought." This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to "attempt" or "make an effort" to do something or to ask for something.

- To "seek" or "look for" an opportunity to do something can mean to "try to find a time" to do it.
- To "seek Yahweh" means to "spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him."
- To "seek protection" means to "try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger."
- To "seek justice" means to "make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly."
- To "seek the truth" means to "make an effort to find out what the truth is."
- To "seek favor" means to "urgently ask for favor" or to "do things to cause someone to help you."

(See also: just, true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:06
- Luke 11:09
- Psalms 027:08

Word Data:

- Strong's: H579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G327, G1567, G1934, G2052, G2212

(**Go back to:** Judges 4:22; 6:29; 14:4; 18:1)

servant, serve, slave, worker, young man, young women

Definition:

The term "serve" generally means to do work, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts. The term refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. In the Bible, any of the following people might be called a "servant:" a slave, a young female worker, a young male worker, someone who obeys God, and others. In biblical times, there was less of a difference between a "servant" and a "slave" than there is today. Both servants and slaves were an important part of a household, and many servants were treated almost like members of the family. Sometimes a servant would choose to become a lifetime servant to his master.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his "owner" or "master." Some masters treated their slaves very cruelly, while other masters treated their slaves very well, as a servant who was a valued member of the household.
- In ancient times, some people willingly became slaves to a person they owed money to in order to pay off their debt to that person.
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means "care for" or "serve food to" or "provide food for." When Jesus told the disciples to "serve" the fish to the people, this could be translated as, "distribute" or "hand out" or "give."
- In the Bible, the phrase "I am your servant" was used as a sign of respect and service to a person of higher rank, such as a king. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.
- The term "serve" can also be translated as "minister to" or "work for" or "take care of" or "obey," depending on the context.
- In the Old Testament, God's prophets and other people who worshiped God were often referred to as his "servants."
- To "serve God" can be translated as to "worship and obey God" or to "do the work that God has commanded."
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his "servants."
- To "serve tables" means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to "distribute food."
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to "serve" the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they "serve" the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus' sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their "service" to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as "serving" or "obeying" or "devotion to."

(See also: commit, enslave, household, lord, obey, righteous, covenant, law,)

Bible References:

- Acts 04:29-31
- Acts 10:7-8
- Colossians 01:7-8
- Colossians 03:22-25
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Luke 12:47-48
- Mark 09:33-35
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- 2 Timothy 02:3-5
- Acts 06:2-4
- Genesis 25:23
- Luke 04:8

- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 22:26-27
- Mark 08:7-10
- Matthew 04:10-11
- Matthew 06:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **06:01** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **08:04** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **09:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:03** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:06** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:04** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God.
- **50:04** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

- (Servant) Strong's: H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G1249, G1401, G1402, G2324, G3407, G3411, G3610, G3816, G4983, G5257
- (Serve) H327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:8; 3:24; 6:8; 7:10; 7:11; 8:14; 8:20; 9:18; 9:28; 9:38; 9:54; 10:6; 13:5; 13:7; 13:8; 13:12; 13:24; 15:18; 16:26; 17:7; 17:11; 17:12; 18:3; 18:15; 19:3; 19:9; 19:11; 19:13; 19:19; 21:12)

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term "shame" refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is "shameful" is "improper" or "dishonorable."
- The term "ashamed" describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term "humiliate" means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called "humiliation."
- To "reproach" someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person's character or behavior.
- The phrase "put to shame" means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term "disgraceful" can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is "above reproach" or "beyond reproach" or "without reproach" means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate "disgrace" could include "shame" or "dishonor."
- Ways to translate "disgraceful" could include "shameful" or dishonoring."
- To "humiliate" could also be translated as to "shame" or to "cause to feel shame" or to "embarrass."
- Depending on the context, ways to translate "humiliation" could include "shame" or "degrading" or "disgrace."
- The word "reproach" could also be translated as "accusation" or "shame" or "disgrace."
- To "reproach" could also be translated as to "rebuke" or to "accuse" or to "criticize," depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, rebuke, false god, humble, Isaiah, worship)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 03:15-17
- 2 Kings 02:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 08:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 03:07
- Genesis 34:07
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 02:1-2
- Psalms 022:06
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 09:05
- Proverbs 25:7-8

- Psalms 006:8-10
- Psalms 123:03
- 1 Timothy 05:7-8
- 1 Timothy 06:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:03

Word Data:

- Strong's: H937, H954, H955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G149, G152, G153, G410, G422, G423, G808, G818, G819, G821, G1788, G1791, G1870, G2617, G3059, G3679, G3680, G3681, G3856, G5014, G5195, G5196, G5484

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:25; 5:18; 5:28; 8:15; 18:7)

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

A sign is an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- Signs can help people to remember a promise that God has made:
    - The rainbows God creates in the sky are signs to remind people that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
    - God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign of his covenant with them.
    - In the Old Testament, God tells his people that he will "confirm" his covenant with them. This means he is stating that he will keep the promises he made in that covenant.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
    - An angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
    - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
    - The miracles performed by the prophets and apostles were signs that proved they were speaking God's message.
    - The miracles that Jesus performed were signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on its context, "sign" could also be translated as "signal" or "symbol" or "mark" or "evidence" or "proof" or "gesture."
- To "make signs with the hands" could also be translated as "motion with the hands" or "gesture with the hands" or "make gestures."
- In some languages, there may be one word for a "sign" that proves something and a different word for a "sign" that is a miracle.

(See also: miracle, apostle, Christ, covenant, circumcise)

Bible References:

- Acts 02:18-19
- Exodus 04:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 01:14
- Genesis 09:12
- John 02:18
- Luke 02:12
- Mark 08:12
- Psalms 089:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H226, H852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G364, G880, G1213, G1229, G1718, G1730, G1732, G1770, G3902, G4102, G4591, G4592, G4953, G4973, G5280

(**Go back to:** Judges 6:17)

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple.The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: tabernacle, temple)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 02:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 03:06
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G693, G694, G695, G696, G1406

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:19; 9:4; 16:5; 16:18; 17:2; 17:3; 17:4; 17:10)

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term "sin" refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God's will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don't know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God's will are called "sinful."
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a "sinful nature," a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A "sinner" is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word "sinners" was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn't keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term "sinner" was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "sin" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "disobedience to God" or "going against God's will" or "evil behavior and thoughts" or "wrongdoing."
- To "sin" could also be translated as to "disobey God" or to "do wrong."
- Depending on the context "sinful" could be translated as "full of wrongdoing" or "wicked" or "immoral" or "evil" or "rebelling against God."
- Depending on the context the term "sinner" could be translated with a word or phrase that means, "person who sins" or "person who does wrong things" or "person who disobeys God" or "person who disobeys the law."
- The term "sinners" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "very sinful people" or "people considered to be very sinful" or "immoral people."
- Ways to translate "tax collectors and sinners" could include "people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people" or "very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors."
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don't see or know about.
- The term "sin" should be general, and different from the terms for "wickedness" and "evil."

(See also: disobey, evil, flesh, tax collector)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:1-3
- 1 John 01:10
- 1 John 02:02
- 2 Samuel 07:12-14
- Acts 03:19
- Daniel 09:24
- Genesis 04:07
- Hebrews 12:02
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 04:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31
- Romans 06:23

• Romans 08:04

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **03:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:01** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:01** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinners** who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:05** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**.
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:08** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H817, H819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G264, G265, G266, G268, G361, G3781, G3900, G4258

(**Go back to:** Judges 3 General Notes; Notes; Notes; 10:10; 10:15; 11:27; Notes; 20:16; Notes)

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term "slaughter" refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called "slaughter."

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- "Weapons of slaughter" could be translated as "weapons for killing."
- The expression "the slaughter was very great" could be translated as "a large number were killed" or "the number of deaths was very great" or "a terribly high number of people died."
- Other ways to translate "slaughter" could include "kill" or "slay" or "killing."

(See also: angel, cow, disobey, Ezekiel, servant, slay)

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 07:01
- Isaiah 34:02
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G2871, G4967, G4969

(**Go back to:** Judges 12:6)

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their "son" for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An "adopted son" is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- In the Bible, the phrase "son of" can be used to identify a person's father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- Using "son of" to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, "Azariah son of Zadok" and "Azariah son of Nathan" in 1 Kings 4, and "Azariah son of Amaziah" in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate "son" by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term "Son of God," the project language's common term for "son" should be used.
- Sometimes "sons" can be translated as "children," when both males and females are being referred to. For example, "sons of God" could be translated as "children of God" since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: Azariah, descendant, ancestor, firstborn, Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:02
- 1 Thessalonians 05:05
- Galatians 04:07
- Hosea 11:01
- Isaiah 09:06
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 05:09
- Matthew 08:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **04:08** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **04:09** God said, "I will give you a **son** from your own body."
- **05:05** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham's **son**.
- **05:08** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, "Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me."
- **09:07** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:06** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:01** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:04** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?â€š" they said.

Word Data:

• Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G3816, G5043, G5207

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:1; 1:8; 1:9; 1:13; 1:16; 1:20; 1:21; 1:34; 2:4; 2:6; 2:8; 2:11; 3:2; 3:5; 3:6; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:11; 3:12; 3:13; 3:14; 3:15; 3:27; 3:31; 4:1; 4:3; 4:5; 4:6; 4:11; 4:12; 4:23; 4:24; 5:1; 5:6; 5:12; 6:1; 6:2; 6:3; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:11; 6:29; 6:30; 6:33; 7:12; 7:14; 8:10; 8:13; 8:18; 8:19; 8:22; 8:23; 8:28; 8:29; 8:30; 8:31; 8:32; 8:33; 8:34; 9:1; 9:2; 9:5; 9:18; 9:24; 9:26; 9:28; 9:30; 9:31; 9:35; 9:57; 10:1; 10:4; 10:6; 10:7; 10:8; 10:9; 10:10; 10:11; 10:15; 10:17; 10:18; 11:1; 11:2; 11:4; 11:5; 11:6; 11:8; 11:9; 11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:15; 11:25; 11:27; 11:28; 11:29; 11:30; 11:31; 11:32; 11:33; 11:34; 11:36; 12:1; 12:2; 12:3; 12:9; 12:13; 12:14; 12:15; 13:1; 13:3; 13:5; 13:7; 13:24; 14:16; 14:17; 17:2; 17:3; 17:5; 17:11; 18:2; 18:16; 18:22; 18:23; 18:25; 18:26; 18:30; 19:12; 19:22; 19:30; 20:1; 20:3; 20:7; 20:13; 20:14; 20:15; 20:18; 20:19; 20:21; 20:23; 20:24; 20:25; 20:26; 20:27; 20:28; 20:30; 20:31; 20:32; 20:35; 20:36; 20:48; 21:5; 21:6; 21:10; 21:13; 21:18; 21:20; 21:23; 21:24)

spirit, spiritual

Definition:

The term "spirit" refers to the non-physical part of people which cannot be seen. When a person dies, his spirit leaves his body. "Spirit" can also refer to an attitude or emotional state.

- The term "spirit" can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, especially an evil spirit.
- A person's spirit is the part of him that can know God and believe in him.
- In general, the term "spiritual" describes anything in the non-physical world.
- In the Bible, it especially refers to anything that relates to God, specifically to the Holy Spirit.
- For example, "spiritual food" refers to God's teachings, which give nourishment to a person's spirit, and "spiritual wisdom" refers to the knowledge and righteous behavior that come from the power of the Holy Spirit.
- God is a spirit and he created other spirit beings, who do not have physical bodies.
- Angels are spirit beings, including those who rebelled against God and became evil spirits.
- The term "spirit of" can also mean "having the characteristics of," such as in "spirit of wisdom" or "in the spirit of Elijah."
- Examples of "spirit" as an attitude or emotion would include "spirit of fear" and "spirit of jealousy."

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate "spirit" might include "non-physical being" or "inside part" or "inner being."
- In some contexts, the term "spirit" could be translated as "evil spirit" or "evil spirit being."
- Sometimes the term "spirit" is used to express the feelings of a person, as in "my spirit was grieved in my inmost being." This could also be translated as "I felt grieved in my spirit" or "I felt deeply grieved."
- The phrase "spirit of" could be translated as "character of" or "influence of" or "attitude of" or "thinking (that is) characterized by."
- Depending on the context, "spiritual" could be translated as "non-physical" or "from the Holy Spirit" or "God's" or "part of the non-physical world."
- The phrase "spiritual maturity" could be translated as "godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit."
- The term "spiritual gift" could be translated as "special ability that the Holy Spirit gives

(See also: angel, demon, Holy Spirit, soul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:05
- 1 John 04:03
- 1 Thessalonians 05:23
- Acts 05:09
- Colossians 01:09
- Ephesians 04:23
- Genesis 07:21-22
- Isaiah 04:04
- Mark 01:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 01:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:03** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:07** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:05** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:07** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G4151, G4152, G4153, G5326, G5427

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:10; 6:34; 8:3; 9:23; 11:29; 13:25; 14:6; 14:19; 15:14; 15:19)

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term "statute" is similar in meaning to "ordinance" and " command" and "law" and "decree." All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh's statutes.
- The term "statute" could also be translated as "specific command" or "special decree."

(See also: command, decree, law, ordinance, Yahweh)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 06:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2706, H2708, H7010, G1345

(**Go back to:** Judges 11:39)

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term "strength" refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To "strengthen" someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- "Strength" can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has "strength of will" if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his "strength" because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being "strengthened," people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term "strengthen" can be translated as "cause to be strong" or "make more powerful."
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase "strengthen your brothers" could also be translated as "encourage your brothers" or "help your brothers to persevere."
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
    - "puts strength on me like a belt" means "causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist."
    - "in quietness and trust will be your strength" means "acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong."
    - "will renew their strength" means "will become stronger again."
    - "by my strength and by my wisdom I acted" means "I have done all this because I am so strong and wise."
    - "strengthen the wall" means "reinforce the wall" or "rebuild the wall."
    - "I will strengthen you" means "I will cause you to be strong"
    - "in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength" means "Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us."
    - "the rock of your strength" means "the faithful one who makes you strong"
    - "with the saving strength of his right hand" means "he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand."
    - "of little strength" means "not very strong" or "weak."
    - "with all my strength" means "using my best efforts" or "strongly and completely."

(See also: faithful, persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 02:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 021:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H193, H202, H353, H360, H386, H410, H553, H556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633, G461, G950, G1411, G1412, G1743, G1765, G1840, G1991, G2479, G2480, G2901, G2904, G3619, G3756, G4599, G4732, G4733, G4741

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:28; 6:14; 7:8; 7:11; 9:24; 16:5; 16:6; 16:9; 16:15; 16:17; 16:19; 16:30; 18:26)

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: Metaphor)
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: How to Translate Unknowns)

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), tongue, word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:02
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 02:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 01:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H19, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G3162, G4501

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:8; 1:25; 3:16; 4:15; 4:16; 7:14; 7:20; 7:22; 8:10; 8:20; 9:54; 18:27; 20:2; 20:15; 20:17; 20:25; 20:35; 20:37; 20:46; 20:48; 21:10)

temple

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term "temple" referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term "temple of the Holy Spirit" is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were "in the temple," it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as "in the temple courtyards" or "in the temple complex."
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate "temple" as "temple building," to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate "temple" could include, "God's holy house" or "sacred worship place."
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as "the house of Yahweh" or "the house of God."

(See also: sacrifice, Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, tabernacle, courtyard, Zion, house)

Bible References:

- Acts 03:02
- Acts 03:08
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 079:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:06** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:02** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:07** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:04** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, "If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, 'God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.'"
- **40:07** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G1493, G2411, G3485

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term "test" refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person's strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people's sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To "put to the test" can mean, "challenge something or someone to prove its value."
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to "test" could also be translated as, to "challenge" or to "cause to experience difficulties" or to "prove."
- Ways to translate "a test" could be, "a challenge" or "a difficult experience."
- To "put to the test" could be translated as to "test" or to "set up a challenge" or to "force to prove oneself."
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as, "trying to force God to prove his love."
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term "test" can mean "tempt."

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 04:01
- 1 Thessalonians 05:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:01
- Isaiah 07:13
- James 01:12
- Lamentations 03:40-43
- Malachi 03:10
- Philippians 01:10
- Psalm 026:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G1242, G1263, G1303, G1382, G1957, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3984, G4303, G4451, G4828, G6020

(**Go back to:** Judges 2 General Notes)

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness

Definition:

When a person gives "testimony" he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To "testify" is to give "testimony."

- Often a person "testifies" about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives "false testimony" does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term "testimony" refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus' followers testified about the events of Jesus' life, death, and resurrection.

The term "witness" refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term "eyewitness" emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To "witness" something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness "gives witness" or "bears witness." This has the same meaning as "testify."
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a "false witness." He is said to "give false witness" or to "bear false witness."
- The expression "be a witness between" means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term "testify" or "give testimony" could also be translated as, "tell the facts" or "tell what was seen or heard" or "tell from personal experience" or "give evidence" or "tell what happened."
- Ways to translate "testimony" could include, "report of what happened" or "statement of what is true" or "evidence" or "what has been said" or "prophecy."
- The phrase, "as a testimony to them" could be translated as, to "show them what is true" or to "prove to them what is true."
- The phrase, "as a testimony against them" could be translated as, "which will show them their sin" or "exposing their hypocrisy" or "which will prove that they are wrong."
- To "give false testimony" could be translated as "say false things about" or "state things that are not true."
- The term "witness" or "eyewitness" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "person seeing it" or "the one who saw it happen" or "those who saw and heard (those things)."
- Something that is "a witness" could be translated as "guarantee" or "sign of our promise" or "something that testifies that this is true."
- The phrase "you will be my witnesses" could also be translated as "you will tell other people about me" or "you will teach people the truth that I taught you" or "you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach."
- To "witness to" could be translated as to "tell what was seen" or to "testify" or to "state what happened."
- To "witness" something could be translated as to "see something" or to "experience something happen."

(See also: ark of the covenant, guilt, judge, prophet, testimony, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 06:03
- Matthew 26:60
- Mark 01:44
- John 01:07

- John 03:33
- Acts 04:32-33
- Acts 07:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 01:09
- 1 Thessalonians 02:10-12
- 1 Timothy 05:19-20
- 2 Timothy 01:08
- 2 Peter 01:16-18
- 1 John 05:6-8
- 3 John 01:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:02** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:04** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:08** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:07** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G267, G1263, G1957, G2649, G3140, G3141, G3142, G3143, G3144, G4303, G4828, G4901, G5575, G5576, G5577, G6020

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:29; 8:8; 19:28)

threshold, doorway

Definition:

The term "threshold" refers to the bottom part of a doorway or the part of a building that is just inside the door.

- Sometimes a threshold is a strip of wood or stone that must be stepped over in order to enter a room or building.
- Both a gate and the opening to a tent can also have a threshold.
- This term should be translated with a term in the project language that refers to the place at the very entrance to a home that a person steps across.
- If there is no term for this, "threshold" could also be translated as "doorway" or "opening" or "entranceway," depending on the context.

(See also: gate, tent)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 09:17-19
- Ezekiel 09:03
- Isaiah 06:04
- Proverbs 17:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4670, H5592

(**Go back to:** Judges 19:27)

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "ministry" refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would "minister" to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their "ministry" also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of "ministering" to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to "minister" could also be translated as to "serve" or to "care for" or to "meet the needs of."
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term "minister" could be translated as "serve God in the temple" or "offer sacrifices to God for the people."
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to "serve" or to "work for God."
- The phrase "ministered to" could also be translated as "took care of" or "provided for" or "helped."

(See also: serve, sacrifice)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 06:04
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G1247, G1248, G1249, G2023, G2038, G2418, G3008, G3009, G3010, G3011, G3930, G5256, G5257, G5524

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:19)

tongue, language

Definition:

The term "tongue" refers to the organ inside a person's mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean "language" or "speaking." There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is "language" or "speech."
- Sometimes "tongue" may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the "gifts of the Spirit."
- In the book of Acts, the expression "tongues" of fire refers to "flames" of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term "tongue" can be translated as "language" or "supernatural language." If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as "language."
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as "flames."
- The expression "my tongue rejoices" could be translated as "I rejoice and praise God" or "I am joyfully praising God."
- The phrase, "tongue that lies" could be translated as "person who tell lies" or "people who lie."
- Phrases such as "with their tongues" could be translated as "with what they say" or "by their words."

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, joy, praise, rejoice, spirit)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 03:18
- 2 Samuel 23:02
- Acts 02:26
- Ezekiel 36:03
- Philippians 02:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3956, G1100, G1258, G2084

(**Go back to:** Judges 18:19)

tremble, stagger

Definition:

The term "tremble" means to quiver or to shake slightly and repeatedly, usually from fear or distress. The term can also be used figuratively, meaning "to be very afraid."

- Sometimes when the ground shakes it is said to "tremble." It can do this during an earthquake or in response to a very loud noise.
- The Bible says that in the presence of the Lord the earth will tremble. This could mean that the people of the earth will shake out of fear of God or that the earth itself will shake.
- This term could be translated as "be afraid" or "fear God" or "shake," depending on the context.

(See also: earth, fear, Lord)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 07:15
- 2 Samuel 22:44-46
- Acts 16:29-31
- Jeremiah 05:22
- Luke 08:47

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1674, H2111, H2112, H2151, H2342, H2648, H2729, H2730, H2731, H5128, H5568, H6342, H6426, H6427, H7264, H7268, H7269, H7322, H7460, H7461, H7481, H7493, H7578, H8078, H8653, G1790, G5141, G5156, G5425

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:4)

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: clan, nation, people group, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 02:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G1429, G5443

(**Go back to:** Judges 18:1; 18:19; 18:30; 20:2; 20:10; 20:12; 21:3; 21:5; 21:6; 21:8; 21:17; 21:24)

trouble, troublemaker, troublesome, disturbing, stir up, upset, hardship

Definition:

A "trouble" is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To "trouble" someone means to "bother" that person or to cause him distress.To be "troubled" means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of "trouble" also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term "trouble" or "troubles" could also be translated as "danger" or "painful things that happen" or "persecution" or "difficult experiences" or "distress."
- The term "troubled" could be translated with a word or phrase that means "undergoing distress" or "feeling terrible distress" or "worried" or "anxious" or "distressed" or "terrified" or "disturbed."
- "Don't trouble her" could also be translated as "don't bother her" or "don't criticize her."
- The phrase "day of trouble" or "times of trouble" could also be translated as "when you experience distress" or " when difficult things happen to you" or "when God causes distressing things to happen."
- Ways to translate "make trouble" or "bring trouble" could include "cause distressing things to happen" or "cause difficulties" or "make them experience very difficult things."

(See also: afflict, persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:06
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H205, H926, H927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G387, G1613, G1776, G2346, G2347, G2350, G2360, G2873, G3636, G3926, G3930, G3986, G4423, G4660, G5015, G5182

(**Go back to:** Judges 10:14)

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term "trumpet" refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel's public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: angel, assembly, earth, horn, Israel, wrath)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 09:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 06:02
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G4536, G4537, G4538

(**Go back to:** Judges 3:27; 6:34; 7:8; 7:16; 7:18; 7:19; 7:20; 7:22)

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term "unleavened bread" refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, "unleavened bread" represents the removal of sin from a person's life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include "bread with no yeast" or "flat bread that did not rise."
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term "yeast, leaven."
- In some contexts, the term "unleavened bread" refers to the "Feast of Unleavened Bread" and can be translated that way.

(See also: bread, Egypt, feast, Passover, servant, sin, yeast)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 05:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:03
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 06:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 06:21
- Leviticus 08:1-3
- Luke 22:01

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4682, G106

vine

Definition:

The term "vine" refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word "vine" in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word "vine" almost always means "grapevine."
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the "vine" and called his people the "branches." In this context, the word "vine" could also be translated as "grapevine stem" or "grape plant stem." (See: Metaphor)

(See also: grape, vineyard)

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:09
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:01
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:03
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5139, H1612, H8321, G288, G290, G1009, G1092

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:13)

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

> • A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
> • God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: Metaphor)
> • Vineyard could be also translated as "grapevine garden" or "grape plantation."

(See also: grape, Israel, vine)

Bible References:

> • Genesis 09:20-21
> • Luke 13:06
> • Luke 20:15
> • Matthew 20:02
> • Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

> • Strong's: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G290

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:27; 14:5; 15:5)

virgin, virginity

Definition:

A virgin is a woman who has never had sexual relations.

- The prophet Isaiah said that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- Mary was a virgin when she was pregnant with Jesus. He did not have a human father.
- Some languages may have a term that is a polite way of referring to a virgin. (See: Euphemism)

(See also: Christ, Isaiah, Jesus, Mary)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:15-16
- Luke 01:27
- Luke 01:35
- Matthew 01:23
- Matthew 25:02

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **21:09** The prophet Isaiah prophesied that the Messiah would be born from a **virgin**.
- **22:04** She (Mary) was a **virgin** and was engaged to be married to a man named Joseph.
- **22:05** Mary replied, "How can this be, since I am a **virgin**?"
- **49:01** An angel told a **virgin** named Mary that she would give birth to God's Son. So while she was still a **virgin**, she gave birth to a son and named him Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1330, H1331, G3932, G3933

(**Go back to:** Judges 19:24; 21:12)

voice

Definition:

The term "voice" refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can ber used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression "to hear someone's voice" can mean either "to hear someone speaking" or "to heed what someone says."
- The Bible describes God as "speaking" and having a "voice," even though God doesn't have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term "voice" sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: "A voice is heard in the desert saying, 'Prepare the way of the Lord.'" This could be translated as "A person is heard calling out in the desert…." (See: synecdoche)
- However, sometimes the word "voice" is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a "voice" that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: metaphor)

(See also: call, proclaim, splendor.)

Bible References:

- John 05:36-38
- Luke 01:42
- Luke 09:35
- Matthew 03:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G2906, G5456

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:2; 6:10; 13:9; 20:13)

vow

Definition:

A "vow" is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term "vow" can be translated as "solemn promise" or "solemn oath" or "promise made to God."

(See also: promise, oath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 07:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 01:14-16
- Jonah 02:9-10
- Proverbs 07:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G2171

(**Go back to:** Judges 13 General Notes)

walk, walked

Definition:

The term "walk" is often used in a figurative sense to mean "live."

- "Enoch walked with God" means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To "walk by the Spirit" means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To "walk in" God's commands or God's ways means to "live in obedience to" his commands, that is, to "obey his commands" or "do his will."
- When God says he will "walk among" his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To "walk contrary to" means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To "walk after" means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate "walk" literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of"walk" could also be translated by "live" or "act" or "behave."
- The phrase "walk by the Spirit" could be translated by, "live in obedience to the Holy Spirit" or "behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit" or "do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you."
- To "walk in God's commands" could be translated by "live by God's commands" or "obey God's commands."
- The phrase "walked with God" could be translated as, "lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him."

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 01:07
- 1 Kings 02:04
- Colossians 02:07
- Galatians 05:25
- Genesis 17:01
- Isaiah 02:05
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 04:02

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G1704, G4043, G4198, G4748

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:17; 4:6; 4:8; 4:9; 4:22; 4:24; 5:6; 6:14; 6:21; 7:4; 7:7; 8:1; 9:8; 9:10; 9:12; 9:14; 10:14; 11:6; 11:38; 11:40; 14:3; 14:9; 17:9; 18:2; 18:5; 18:6; 19:5; 19:11; 19:13; 19:17; 19:18; 20:8; 21:10; 21:20)

waste, wasted, wasteland, becomes weak

Definition:

To waste something means to carelessly throw it away or to use it unwisely. Something that is a "wasteland" or a "waste" refers to land or a city that has been destroyed so that nothing lives in it anymore.

- The term "waste away" is an expression that means to become more and more sick or ruined. A person who is wasting away usually becomes very thin due to illness or lack of food.
- To "lay waste" to a city or land means to destroy it.
- Another word for a "wasteland" could be "desert" or "wilderness." But a wasteland also implies that people used to live there and the land used to have trees and plants that produced food.

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 06:06
- Leviticus 26:39
- Matthew 26:08
- Revelation 18:15-17
- Zechariah 07:13-14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H535, H1086, H1104, H1326, H2100, H2490, H2522, H2717, H2721, H2723, H3615, H3856, H4127, H4198, H4592, H4743, H5307, H5327, H7334, H7582, H7703, H7736, H7843, H8047, H8074, H8077, H8414, G684, G1287, G2049, G2673

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:27)

watch, watchman, watchful, guard, take heed, beware, watch out

Definition:

The term "watch" means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A "watchman" was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to "watch your life and doctrine closely" means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To "watch out" is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To "watch" or "keep watch" means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to "be ready."
- To "keep watch over" or "keep close watch" can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating "watch" could include "pay close attention to" or "be diligent" or "be very careful" or "be on guard."
- Other words for "watchman" are "sentry" or "guard."

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 05:06
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 08:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G69, G991, G1127, G1492, G2334, G2892, G3525, G3708, G3906, G4337, G4648, G5083, G5438

(**Go back to:** Judges 2:22; 13:4; 13:13; 13:14)

wheat

Definition:

Wheat is a type of grain that people grow for food. When the Bible mentions "grain" or "seeds," it is often talking about wheat grain or seeds.

- The wheat seeds or grains grow at the top of the wheat plant.
- After harvesting the wheat, the grain is separated from the stalk of the plant by threshing it. The stalk of the wheat plant is also called "straw" and is often placed on the ground for animals to sleep on.
- After threshing, the chaff surrounding the grain seed is separated from the grain by winnowing and is thrown away.
- People grind the wheat grain into flour, and use this for making bread.

(See also: barley, chaff, grain, seed, thresh, winnow)

Bible References:

- Acts 27:36-38
- Exodus 34:21-22
- John 12:24
- Luke 03:17
- Matthew 03:12
- Matthew 13:26

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1250, H2406, G4621

(**Go back to:** Judges 6:11; 15:1)

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term "wine" refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in "wineskins," which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term "new wine" referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term "wine" also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as "fermented grape juice" or "fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes" or "fermented fruit juice." (See: How to Translate Unknowns)
- Ways to translate "wineskin" could include "bag for wine" or "animal skin wine bag" or "animal skin container for wine."

(See also: grape, vine, vineyard, winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 05:23
- Genesis 09:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 02:3-5
- John 02:10
- Matthew 09:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G1098, G3631, G3820, G3943

(**Go back to:** Judges 9:13; 13:4; 13:7; 13:14; 19:19)

wise men, advisor

Definition:

The term "wise men" simply means people who are wise. In the Bible, however, the term "wise men" often refers to men with unusual knowledge and abilities who served in a king's royal court as advisors to the king or other high officials.

Old Testament

- Sometimes the term "wise men" is explained in the text as "prudent men" or "men with understanding." This refers to men who act wisely and righteously because they obey God.
- The "wise men" who served pharaohs or other kings were often scholars who studied the stars, especially looking for special meanings for the patterns that the stars made in their positions in the sky. Sometimes "wise men" also practiced divination of performed acts of magic, probably by the power of evil spirits.
- Often wise men were expected to explain the meanings of dreams. For example, King Nebuchadnezzar demanded that his wise men describe his dreams and tell him what they meant, but none of them was able to do this, except Daniel who had received this knowledge from God.

New Testament

- The group of men who came from eastern regions to worship Jesus were called "magi," which is often translated as "wise men," since this probably refers to scholars who served a ruler of an eastern country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "wise men" could be translated using the term "wise" or with a phrase such as "gifted men" or "educated men" or some other term that refers to men who have an important job working for a ruler.
- When the term "wise men" simply means people who are wise, the word "wise" should be translated in the same or similar way to how it is translated elsewhere in the Bible.

(See also: Babylon, Daniel, divination, magic, Nebuchadnezzar, ruler, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:32-34
- Daniel 02:1-2
- Daniel 02:10-11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2445, H2450, H3778, H3779, G4680

(**Go back to:** Judges 5:29)

Yahweh

Facts:

The term "Yahweh" is God's personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, "to be."

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term "LORD" or "the LORD" to represent "Yahweh." This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh's name and started saying "Lord" every time the term "Yahweh" appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write "LORD" with all capital letters to show respect for God's personal name and to distinguish it from "Lord" which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, "Yahweh," in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term "Yahweh" never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for "Lord" is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- "Yahweh" could be translated by a word or phrase that means "I am" or "living one" or "the one who is" or "he who is alive."
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how "Yahweh" is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term "Yahweh" and instead use the traditional rendering, "LORD." An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title "Lord." Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish "LORD" as a name (Yahweh) from "Lord" as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, "This is what Yahweh says."

(Translation suggestions: How to Translate Names)

(See also: God, lord, Lord, Moses, reveal)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:07
- Daniel 09:03
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 02:04
- Genesis 04:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:04
- Isaiah 38:08
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 01:09
- Lamentations 01:05
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 03:04
- Micah 02:05
- Micah 06:05
- Numbers 08:11

- Psalm 124:03
- Ruth 01:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **09:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:04** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:05** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:01** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(**Go back to:** Judges 1:1; 1:2; 1:4; 1:19; 1:22; 2:1; 2:4; 2:5; 2:7; 2:8; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:17; 2:18; 2:20; 2:22; 2:23; 3:1; 3:4; 3:7; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:12; 3:15; 3:28; 4:1; 4:2; 4:3; 4:6; 4:9; 4:14; 4:15; 5:2; 5:3; 5:4; 5:5; 5:9; 5:11; 5:13; 5:23; 5:31; 6:1; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:10; 6:11; 6:12; 6:13; 6:14; 6:16; 6:21; 6:22; 6:23; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 6:27; 6:34; 7:2; 7:4; 7:5; 7:7; 7:9; 7:15; 7:18; 7:20; 7:22; 8:7; 8:19; 8:23; 8:34; 10:6; 10:7; 10:10; 10:11; 10:15; 10:16; 11:9; 11:10; 11:11; 11:21; 11:23; 11:24; 11:27; 11:29; 11:30; 11:31; 11:32; 11:35; 11:36; 12:3; 13:1; 13:3; 13:8; 13:13; 13:15; 13:16; 13:17; 13:18; 13:19; 13:20; 13:21; 13:23; 13:24; 13:25; 14:6; 14:19; 15:14; 15:18; 16:20; 16:28; 17:2; 17:3; 17:13; 18:6; 19:18; 20:1; 20:18; 20:23; 20:26; 20:27; 20:28; 20:35; 21:3; 21:5; 21:7; 21:8; 21:15; 21:19)

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community
Aaron Fenlason
Abner Bauman
Adam Van Goor
Alan Bird
Alan Borkenhagen
Alfred Van Dellen
Alice Wright
Allen Bair
Allyson Presswood Nance
Amanda Adams
Andrew Belcher
Andrew Johnson
Andrew Rice
Angelo Palo
Anita Moreau
April Linton
Aurora Lee
Barbara Summers
Barbara White
Becky Hancock
Beryl Carpenter
Bethany Fenlason
Betty Forbes
Bianca Elliott
Bill Cleveland
Bill Pruett
Bob Britting
Bram van den Heuvel
Brian Metzger
Bruce Bridges
Bruce Collier
Bruce Smith
Caleb Worgess
Carlyle Kilmore
Carol Pace
Carol Heim
Caroline Crawford
Caroline Fleming
Caroline S Wong
Carol Lee
Carol Moyer
Carolyn Lafferty
Catherine C Newton
Charese Jackson
Charlotte Gibson
Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannahi Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Simplified Text Contributors

Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
David Trombold, M. Div.
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D. Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
David Trombold
Dean Ropp
Gene Mullen
James Vigen
Leonard Smith
Nicholas Alsop
Michael Francis
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher
David Book
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages
Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Lizz Carlton
Jan Zanutto
Matthew Latham
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
Richard Joki
Door43 World Missions Community